

IPC-2581B
2013 - September

**Generic Requirements for
Printed Board Assembly Products
Manufacturing Description Data
and Transfer Methodology**

Supersedes IPC-2581A
May 2012

A standard developed by IPC

Association Connecting Electronics Industries



The Principles of Standardization

In May 1995 the IPC's Technical Activities Executive Committee (TAEC) adopted Principles of Standardization as a guiding principle of IPC's standardization efforts.

Standards Should:

- Show relationship to Design for Manufacturability (DFM) and Design for the Environment (DFE)
- Minimize time to market
- Contain simple (simplified) language
- Just include spec information
- Focus on end product performance
- Include a feedback system on use and problems for future improvement

Standards Should Not:

- Inhibit innovation
- Increase time-to-market
- Keep people out
- Increase cycle time
- Tell you how to make something
- Contain anything that cannot be defended with data

Notice

IPC Standards and Publications are designed to serve the public interest through eliminating misunderstandings between manufacturers and purchasers, facilitating interchangeability and improvement of products, and assisting the purchaser in selecting and obtaining with minimum delay the proper product for his particular need. Existence of such Standards and Publications shall not in any respect preclude any member or nonmember of IPC from manufacturing or selling products not conforming to such Standards and Publication, nor shall the existence of such Standards and Publications preclude their voluntary use by those other than IPC members, whether the standard is to be used either domestically or internationally.

Recommended Standards and Publications are adopted by IPC without regard to whether their adoption may involve patents on articles, materials, or processes. By such action, IPC does not assume any liability to any patent owner, nor do they assume any obligation whatever to parties adopting the Recommended Standard or Publication. Users are also wholly responsible for protecting themselves against all claims of liabilities for patent infringement.

IPC Position Statement on Specification Revision Change

It is the position of IPC's Technical Activities Executive Committee that the use and implementation of IPC publications is voluntary and is part of a relationship entered into by customer and supplier. When an IPC publication is updated and a new revision is published, it is the opinion of the TAEC that the use of the new revision as part of an existing relationship is not automatic unless required by the contract. The TAEC recommends the use of the latest revision. Adopted October 6, 1998

Why is there a charge for this document?

Your purchase of this document contributes to the ongoing development of new and updated industry standards and publications. Standards allow manufacturers, customers, and suppliers to understand one another better. Standards allow manufacturers greater efficiencies when they can set up their processes to meet industry standards, allowing them to offer their customers lower costs.

IPC spends hundreds of thousands of dollars annually to support IPC's volunteers in the standards and publications development process. There are many rounds of drafts sent out for review and the committees spend hundreds of hours in review and development. IPC's staff attends and participates in committee activities, typesets and circulates document drafts, and follows all necessary procedures to qualify for ANSI approval.

IPC's membership dues have been kept low to allow as many companies as possible to participate. Therefore, the standards and publications revenue is necessary to complement dues revenue. The price schedule offers a 50% discount to IPC members. If your company buys IPC standards and publications, why not take advantage of this and the many other benefits of IPC membership as well? For more information on membership in IPC, please visit www.ipc.org or call 847/597-2872.

Thank you for your continued support.



IPC-2581B

Generic Requirements for Printed Board Assembly Products Manufacturing Description Data and Transfer Methodology

Developed by Product Data Description (Laminar View) Subcommittee (2-16) of the Electronic Product Data Description Committee (2-10) of IPC

Supersedes:

IPC-2581A - May 2012
IPC-2581 with Amendment 1 -
May 2007
IPC-2581 - March 2004

Contact:

IPC
3000 Lakeside Drive, Suite 309S
Bannockburn, Illinois
60015-1249
Tel 847 615.7100
Fax 847 615.7105

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

Acknowledgment

Any document involving a complex technology draws material from a vast number of sources. While the principal members of the Product Data Description (Laminar View) Subcommittee (2-16) of the Electronic Product Data Description Committee (2-10) are shown below, it is not possible to include all of those who assisted in the evolution of this standard. To each of them, the members of the IPC extend their gratitude.

Electronic Product Data Description Committee	Product Data Description (Laminar View) Subcommittee	Technical Liaison of the IPC Board of Directors
Chair Karen McConnell Northrop Grumman Corporation	Chair Karen McConnell Northrop Grumman Corporation	Bob Neves Microtek Laboratories
Vice Chair Gary Ferrari FTG Circuits		

Product Data Description (Laminar View) Subcommittee

Edward Acheson, Cadence Design Systems Inc.	Larry Frost, Sanmina Corporation	Hemant Shah, Cadence Design Systems Inc.
Abhay Agarwal, Cadence Design Systems Inc.	Paul Gingras, KAW/USA	Chris Shaw, Fujitsu Network Communications
Kjell Asp, Ericsson AB	Terry Hoffman, Cisco Systems	Norwood Sisson, Norwood Sisson & Associates
Richard Attrill, Polar Instruments Inc.	Dana Korf, Huawei Technologies Co., Ltd.	Joe Socha, Sedona International Inc.
Mike Buetow, UPMedia	Humair Mandavia, Zuken USA, Inc.	Karel Tavernier, Ucamco
Tony Calitri, Cisco Systems, Inc.	Karen McConnell, Northrop Grumman Corporation	Steve Watt, Zuken USA, Inc.
Mark Caradonna, PTC	John Milks, Adiva Corporation	Iain Wilson, Iron Atom
Gary Carter, Fujitsu Network Communications	William Newhard, DownStream Technologies, LLC	Jamie Wise, WISE Software Solutions Inc.
Joseph Clark, DownStream Technologies, LLC	James Pierce, Axiom Electronics, LLC	Joe Zaccari, Screaming Circuits
Amy Clements, Zuken USA, Inc.		

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	SCOPE.....	1
1.1	Focus and intent.....	1
1.2	Notation	1
2	APPLICABLE DOCUMENTS.....	2
2.1	Documentation conventions	2
3	REQUIREMENTS	5
3.1	Rules concerning the use of XML and XML Schema.....	7
3.1.1	File readability and uniformity.....	7
3.1.2	File markers.....	7
3.1.3	File extension	7
3.1.4	File remarks.....	7
3.1.5	Character set definition	7
3.2	Data organization and identification rules	7
3.2.1	Naming elements within a 258X File.....	8
3.2.2	The Use of XML elements and types	8
3.2.3	Attribute base types (governing templates).....	8
3.2.4	Coordinate system and transformation rules	10
3.3	Transformation characteristics (Xform)	11
3.3.1	The x and y Offset attributes	12
3.3.2	The rotation attribute.....	12
3.3.3	The mirror attribute	13
3.3.4	The scale attribute	13
3.3.5	The x and y Location attributes	13
3.4	Substitution groups	14
3.4.1	ColorGroup	16
3.4.2	Feature	16
3.4.3	Fiducial	16
3.4.4	FirmwareGroup	17
3.4.5	FontDef.....	18
3.4.6	LineDescGroup	18
3.4.7	FillDescGroup	19
3.4.8	PolyStep	19
3.4.9	Simple	20
3.4.10	StandardPrimitive.....	20
3.4.11	StandardShape	22
3.4.12	UserPrimitive	22
3.4.13	UserShape.....	23
4	CONTENT	24
4.1	Content: FunctionMode	25
4.1.1	USERDEF mode	26
4.1.2	DESIGN mode	26

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	SCOPE.....	1
1.1	Focus and intent.....	1
1.2	Notation	1
2	APPLICABLE DOCUMENTS.....	2
2.1	Documentation conventions	2
3	REQUIREMENTS	5
3.1	Rules concerning the use of XML and XML Schema.....	7
3.1.1	File readability and uniformity.....	7
3.1.2	File markers.....	7
3.1.3	File extension	7
3.1.4	File remarks.....	7
3.1.5	Character set definition	7
3.2	Data organization and identification rules	7
3.2.1	Naming elements within a 258X File.....	8
3.2.2	The Use of XML elements and types	8
3.2.3	Attribute base types (governing templates).....	8
3.2.4	Coordinate system and transformation rules	10
3.3	Transformation characteristics (Xform)	11
3.3.1	The x and y Offset attributes	12
3.3.2	The rotation attribute.....	12
3.3.3	The mirror attribute	13
3.3.4	The scale attribute	13
3.3.5	The x and y Location attributes	13
3.4	Substitution groups	14
3.4.1	ColorGroup	16
3.4.2	Feature	16
3.4.3	Fiducial	16
3.4.4	FirmwareGroup	17
3.4.5	FontDef.....	18
3.4.6	LineDescGroup	18
3.4.7	FillDescGroup	19
3.4.8	PolyStep	19
3.4.9	Simple	20
3.4.10	StandardPrimitive.....	20
3.4.11	StandardShape	22
3.4.12	UserPrimitive	22
3.4.13	UserShape.....	23
4	CONTENT	24
4.1	Content: FunctionMode	25
4.1.1	USERDEF mode	26
4.1.2	DESIGN mode	26

4.1.3	FABRICATION mode	27
4.1.4	ASSEMBLY mode.....	27
4.1.5	TEST mode.....	27
4.2	Function levels	27
4.2.1	USERDEF Mode Level 1	28
4.2.2	Design Levels	29
4.2.3	Fabrication Levels.....	31
4.2.4	Assembly Levels	33
4.2.5	Test Levels	35
4.3	Content: StepRef.....	37
4.4	Content: LayerRef	38
4.5	Content: BomRef.....	38
4.6	Content: AvlRef.....	39
4.7	Content: DictionaryStandard.....	39
4.7.1	StandardPrimitive: Butterfly.....	40
4.7.2	StandardPrimitive: Circle.....	42
4.7.3	StandardPrimitive: Contour	43
4.7.4	StandardPrimitive: Diamond.....	46
4.7.5	StandardPrimitive: Donut	47
4.7.6	StandardPrimitive: Ellipse	49
4.7.7	StandardPrimitive: Hexagon.....	50
4.7.8	StandardPrimitive: Moire.....	52
4.7.9	StandardPrimitive: Octagon	53
4.7.10	StandardPrimitive: Oval	54
4.7.11	StandardPrimitive: RectCenter	56
4.7.12	StandardPrimitive: RectCham	58
4.7.13	StandardPrimitive: RectCorner.....	60
4.7.14	StandardPrimitive: RectRound	62
4.7.15	StandardPrimitive: Thermal.....	64
4.7.16	StandardPrimitive: Triangle	66
4.8	Content: DictionaryUser	68
4.8.1	UserPrimitive, Simple.....	69
4.8.2	UserPrimitive: Text.....	75
4.8.3	UserPrimitive: UserSpecial.....	78
4.9	Content: DictionaryFont.....	79
4.9.1	FontDefEmbedded	80
4.9.2	FontDefExternal	81
4.9.3	FontDef: Glyph.....	81
4.9.4	FontDef: Glyph combination	82
4.10	Content: DictionaryLineDesc	82
4.10.1	LineDesc.....	84
4.10.2	LineDescRef	85
4.11	Content: DictionaryFillDesc	86
4.11.1	FillDesc.....	87

4.11.2	FillDescRef	89
4.12	Content: DictionaryColor	90
4.12.1	Color	91
4.12.2	ColorRef	91
4.13	Content: DictionaryFirmware	92
4.13.1	CachedFirmware	93
4.13.2	FirmwareRef	93
5	LOGISTIC HEADER	94
5.1	LogisticHeader	94
5.2	Role	95
5.3	Enterprise	96
5.4	Person	98
6	HISTORY RECORD	100
6.1	HistoryRecord	100
6.2	FileRevision	101
6.3	SoftwarePackage	102
6.4	ChangeRec	103
7	BOM (Material List)	104
7.1	BOM Header	106
7.2	BomItem	106
7.2.1	BomDes	108
7.2.2	Characteristics	114
8	ELECTRONIC COMPUTER AIDED DESIGN (ECAD)	118
8.1	CadHeader	118
8.1.1	Spec	119
8.1.2	Property	133
8.1.3	ChangeRec	134
8.2	CadData	135
8.2.1	Layer	137
8.2.2	Stackup	143
8.2.3	Step	151
8.2.4	DfxMeasurementList	204
9	APPROVED VENDOR LIST (AVL)	207
9.1	AvlHeader	208
9.2	AvlItem	209
9.2.1	AvlVmpn	209
10	GLOSSARY	212
10.1	Process Flow Descriptions	212
10.2	Terms and Definitions	212
10.3	Enumerated strings of 2581	213
11	REFERENCE INFORMATION	214
11.1	IPC	214
11.2	American National Standards Institute	214

11.3 Department of Defense	215
11.4 Electronic Industries Association	215
11.5 International Organization for Standards (ISO)	215
Appendix A IPC-7351 Naming Convention for Land Patterns	216
Appendix B Panel Instance File	220
Appendix C Potential Reference Designator Assignment for Non Electrical Items	225

Generic Requirements for Printed Board Assembly Products Manufacturing Description Data and Transfer Methodology

1 SCOPE

This standard specifies the XML schema that represents the intelligent data file format used to describe printed board and printed board assembly products with details sufficient for tooling, manufacturing, assembly, and inspection requirements. This format may be used for transmitting information between a printed board designer and a manufacturing or assembly facility. The data is most useful when the manufacturing cycle includes computer-aided processes and numerical control machines.

The data can be defined in either English or International System of Units (SI) units. The format is a convergence of the IPC-2511 “GenCAM” and the Valor Computerized Systems “ODB-X” format structure.

1.1 Focus and intent

The generic format requirements are provided in a series of standards focused on printed board manufacturing, assembly, and inspection testing. This standard series consists of a generic standard (IPC-2581) that contains all the general requirements. There are seven sectional standards that are focused on the XML details necessary to accumulate information in the single file, that addresses the needs of the manufacturing disciplines producing a particular product.

The sectional standards (IPC-2582 through 2588) paraphrase the important requirements and provide suggested usage and examples for the topic covered by the sectional standard.

1.2 Notation

Although the data would be contained in a single file, the file can have different purposes as described in Section 4. The XML schema used for this standard follows the notations set forth by the W3C and is as follows:

element – Element appears exactly one time

element? – Element may appear 0 or 1 times

element* – Element may appear 0 or more times

element+ – Element may appear 1 or more times

Any IPC-258X file is composed of a high level element (IPC-2581) that contains up to six sub-elements:

Content – information about the contents of the 258X file

LogisticHeader – information pertaining to the order and supply data

HistoryRec – change information of the file

Bom – Bill of Materials (Material List) information

Ecad – Computer Aided Design (engineering) information

Avl – Approved Vendors List information

2 APPLICABLE DOCUMENTS

The following documents contain requirements which, when referenced, constitutes provisions of IPC-2581. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All documents are subject to revision and parties entering into agreements based on this standard are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the documents indicated below.

The revision of the document in effect at the time of solicitation **shall** take precedence.

IPC-T-50 Terms and Definitions for Interconnecting and Packaging Electronic Circuits

IPC-2501 Definition for Web-Based Exchange of XML Data

IPC-2524 PWB Fabrication Data Quality Rating System

IPC-2511 Generic Requirements for Implementation of Product Manufacturing Description Data and Transfer XML Schema Methodology

IPC-2571 Generic Requirements for Electronics Manufacturing Supply Chain Communication - Product Data eXchange (PDX)

IPC-2576 Sectional Requirements for Electronics Manufacturing Supply Chain Communication of As-Built Product Data - Product Data eXchange

IPC-2577 Sectional Requirements for Supply Chain Communication of Manufacturing Quality Assessment - Product Data eXchange (PDX)

IPC-2578 Sectional Requirements for Supply Chain Communication of Bill of Material and Product Design Configuration Data - Product Data eXchange

IPC-7351 Generic Requirements for Surface Mount Design and Land Patterns

2.1 Documentation conventions

The XML file format standard and the XML Schema definition language standard, as defined by World Wide Web Consortium (W3C), have been adopted by IPC for use in the IPC-2500 series of standards.

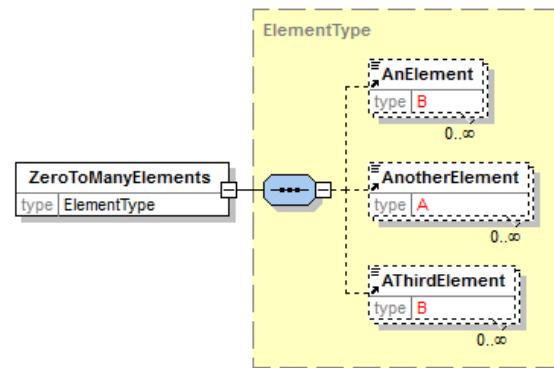
In addition to the text based schema notation, this document provides graphical representation of the structure of the file format. The XML diagrams are designed to effectively illustrate the structure and cardinality of elements and attributes that make up any IPC-258X file. The notation in the graphics does not provide a complete visualization of the schema definition for the file format, but it does provide a good top down overview. Should there be any conflict between the graphical notation and the schema notation, the authoritative definition is the schema notation.

Table 1 provides an overview of the graphical notation used in the document.

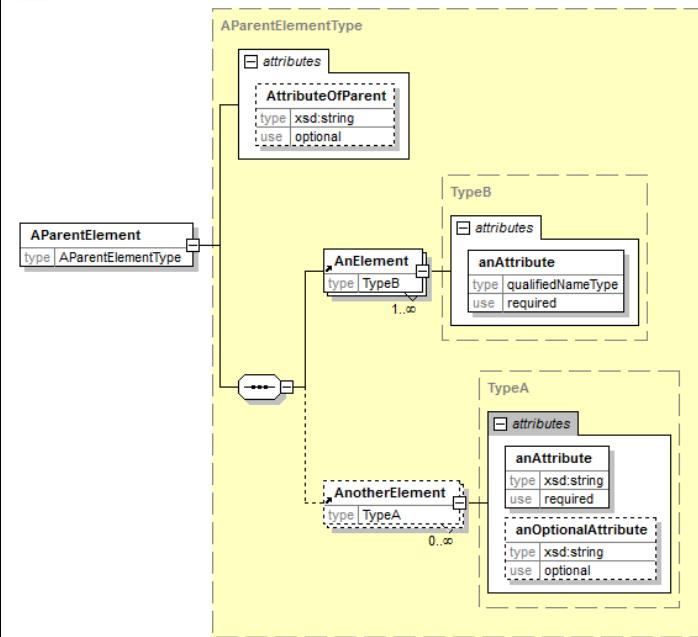
Table 1 Graphical Notation Overview

<p>This diagram depicts an element named AnElement that is of type TypeB. There is one attribute, named anAttribute, that is of type double. The attribute is required.</p>	<pre> classDiagram class AnElement { type TypeB } class TypeB { attribute anAttribute anAttribute.type = double anAttribute.use = required } AnElement "1" -- "1" TypeB : anAttribute </pre>
<p>Example: <AnElement anAttribute="14.44e-3"/> Note that all attribute values must be enclosed in quotes, regardless of type.</p>	
<p>This diagram depicts an element named AnotherElement that is of type TypeA with two attributes. The attribute anAttribute is required. The second attribute, anOptionalAttribute, is optional. Both attributes are of type string.</p>	<pre> classDiagram class AnotherElement { type TypeA } class TypeA { attribute anAttribute anAttribute.type = string anAttribute.use = required attribute anOptionalAttribute anOptionalAttribute.type = string anOptionalAttribute.use = optional } AnotherElement "1" -- "1" TypeA : anAttribute AnotherElement "1" -- "0..1" TypeA : anOptionalAttribute </pre>
<p>Examples: <AnotherElement anAttribute="red" anOptionalAttribute="a string" /> <AnotherElement anAttribute="blue" /></p>	
<p>The ElementType OneToManyOrElements is the parent of an unordered list of one or more instances of the elements AnElement and AnotherElement. The type TypeA occurs only once while TypeB can occur many times.</p>	<pre> classDiagram class OneToManyOrElements { type ElementType } class ElementType { association OneToManyOrElements association AnElement association AnotherElement } OneToManyOrElements "1" -- "1..*" ElementType : OneToManyOrElements "1" -- "1..*" AnElement : OneToManyOrElements "1" -- "1..*" AnotherElement : </pre>
<p>The arrow indicates a substitution of the element named AnOrParentElement. The substitution declares that one and only one occurrence is allowed. The AnOrParentElement can have one of AnElement or AnotherElement as a child element.</p>	<pre> classDiagram class AnOrParentElement { substGrp = true } class AnElement { type B substGrp = AnOrParentElement } class AnotherElement { type A substGrp = AnOrParentElement } AnOrParentElement "1" -- "1" AnElement : AnOrParentElement "1" -- "1" AnotherElement : </pre>

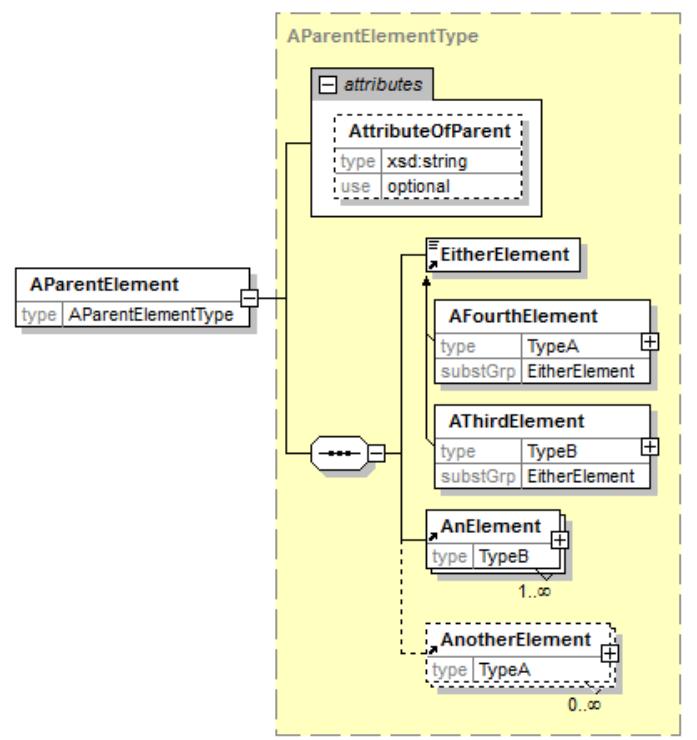
The optional indication for the three element children shows that none may be present or many versions of all three are possible.



This diagram depicts an element, **AParentElement**, of type **AParentElementType**. This element has one attribute, **attributeOfParent**, which is optional. The lines indicate that occurrences of **AnElement** and **AnotherElement** appear in the order with **AnElement** indicated as required while **AnotherElement** is optional. Both elements have a required attribute; however, if **AnotherElement** is instantiated, **anOptionalAttribute** is also possible.



This diagram depicts a type, AParentElementType, that contains a sequence starting with one of AThirdElement or AFourth element followed by 1-n AnElement and an optional final AnotherElement. The AParentElement also has an optional attribute.



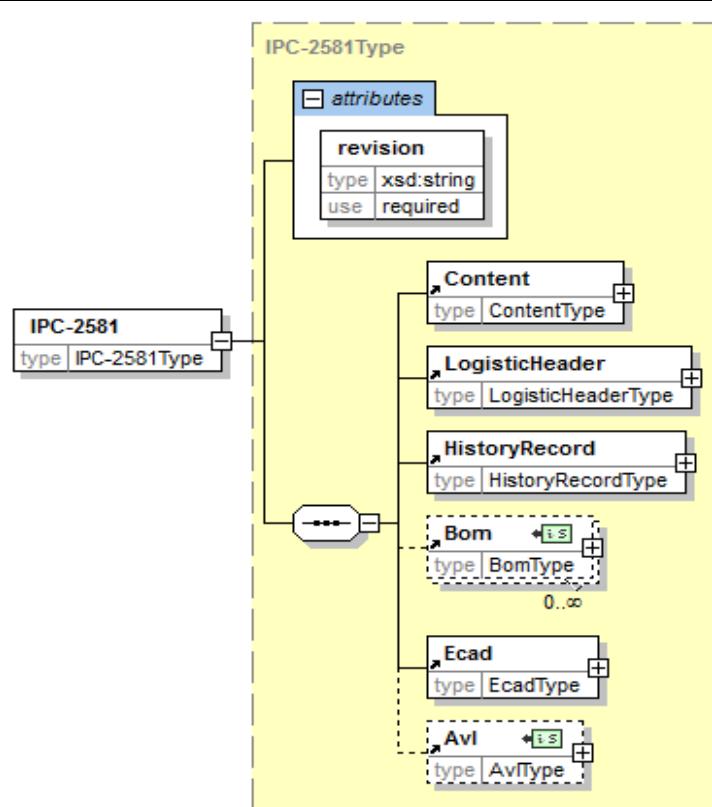
3 REQUIREMENTS

The XML schema contained in this document describes the structure of a generic computer-aided manufacturing 258X exchange format. The document specifies data elements specifically designed to establish the information exchange related to the data needed by printed board manufacturing, and assembly including inspection of those products.

The XML schema defines the configuration of mandatory and optional elements, as well as mandatory and optional attributes. The Top Level (TopElement) of the schema contains six major elements. The schema notation specifies that the 6 top-level elements are required to appear in the order shown in Figure 1. The order of appearance in the file is significant. For instance, the appearance of graphics on a layer is dependent on the order of appearance in the file. The order is also important because elements often reference information that is defined elsewhere in the file in order to eliminate redundancy within the file. The file is structured to allow all references to be resolved in one pass.

An implementation of the XML schema must be able to facilitate the reading and/or writing of all characteristics defined within the requirements stated in the `Mode` function of this standard. Some tools may have only read capability; some may have only write capability. Some tools may have both read/write capability. All schema defined in the standard as mandatory (1-1, 1-n occurrences) **shall** be executed as appropriate. Tool providers **shall** identify their capability by Mode Level (USERDEF 1, Design 1, 2 or 3, Fabrication 1, 2, or 3 etc.) plus 2581R; 2581W; or 2581RW.

Each element has a specific function or task. Accordingly, the information interchange for a specific purpose is possible only if that element is populated. The ability to select those characteristics that are appropriate for a given task makes the schema a robust methodology for defining only those areas and characteristics that are necessary to produce a given product. Figure 1 shows the potential children elements of the Top Element (IPC-2581).



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occur-rence
IPC-2581	IPC-2581Type	The generic name of the file used to describe Design, Fabrication, Assembly, and Test information in accordance with the IPC-2581 standard.	1-1
revision	string	The status of the IPC-2581 file content.	1-1
Content	ContentType	The Content element defines the function of the file, and references the major sections of the product description (i.e., Step, Layer, Bom and Avl). In addition, there are six dictionaries indicated in Content that would contain the pre-described information needed for the file details.	1-1
LogisticHeader	LogisticHeaderType	The LogisticHeader describes information pertaining to ordering and delivery, by identifying individuals and locations responsible for these functions.	1-1
HistoryRecord	HistoryRecordType	The HistoryRecord element provides a sequential change number for the IPC-2581 file. The number is changed every time the controlled version of the IPC-2581 file is modified. Also identified are the change approval conditions.	1-1
Bom	BomType	The Bill of Materials for the board is a list of all the different components to be used for the assembly of the board, arranged by their OEM Design Number (ODN) and the materials used to fabricate the printed board.	0-n
Ecad	EcadType	The Ecad section describes the Computer Aided Design data of the job, including all the graphical description of the layers, component location, panel design, etc.	1-1
Avl	AvlType	The AVL element contains the list of matching manufacturer's part numbers (MPNs) and vendor information of a certain component parts. Approved vendors of printed board materials may also be included.	0-1

Figure 1 IPC-258X Children Element

3.1 Rules concerning the use of XML and XML Schema

The rules required to define syntax and semantics of the 258X file format notation have been simplified by the adoption of the W3C standards for XML Schema and XML file formats. These two standards are well specified by the W3C. The popularity of these standards has lead to the development of many commercial and open source software tools and libraries that conform to the W3C standards.

A 258X file begins with the notation of the revision of the generic standard and the latest revision letter followed by the software revision of the released XML schema. i.e., <IPC-2581A revision = "2.0"> tag and ends with the <IPC-2581A> tag. The content between these tags must match the .xsd definition of the 258X schema as defined by the IPC-2581 through IPC-2588 XML. The latest software release is found at: <http://webstds.ipc.org/standards.htm#x2580>.

3.1.1 File readability and uniformity

A valid 258X file must conform to the W3C Canonical XML format. The format is defined by the <http://www.w3.org/TR/xml-c14n> specification. Software tools exist that will take malformed XML and automatically generate Canonical XML.

3.1.2 File markers

An optional checksum can be appended following the </258X> tag. The checksum is an MD5 message digest algorithm (see Internet RFC 1321: <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1321.txt>) that is base64 encoded. The checksum starts with the "<" character of the <258X> tag and ending with the ">" character of the closing </258X> tag. The checksum follows immediately after the ">" character of the closing </258X> tag.

The digest provides a 128-bit checksum of the 258X file contents. The MD5 signature must be base64 encoded (see IETF RFC 1421 for the base64 algorithm) to convert the MD5 signature to a US-ASCII, base64 string. An end of line character will indicate the end of the base64 encoded MD5 signature.

3.1.3 File extension

The file extension for a 258X file is .xml.

3.1.4 File remarks

The 258X format permits file remarks using the standard XML commenting notation. They are only to be used to support debugging software. A parser may ignore and discard remarks when reading a 258X file. File remarks are never to be used to represent design or manufacturing information.

3.1.5 Character set definition

The XML standard uses the Unicode character set. This character set covers the characters used in hundreds of written languages. The XML standard allows several of the Unicode encoding formats to be used in an XML file. IPC-2581 through IPC-2588 requires the use of the UTF-8 character encoding of the Unicode character set. Although comments and user assigned names may be in any language of choice, all qualified names or enumerated string names **shall** be in English only.

3.2 Data organization and identification rules

The 258X standards use a namespace mechanism for XML instance files that is similar to the XML namespace mechanism that was created for managing XML meta-data namespaces. The instance file namespace mechanism prevents collisions between the names used by the different products within a single file. This partitioning of namespaces is necessary because any of the 258X files may contain information describing an arbitrary collection of products. (Boards, assemblies, or panels that are products allowed in an IPC-258X file.) For example, a file could contain descriptions for building multiple electronic assemblies that are manufactured on separate panels. This mechanism also prepares the way for a distributed database of 258X design data in which the data can be trusted to be universally unambiguous.

3.2.1 Naming elements within a 258X File

The capability of Unique namespaces was created to allow a panel to be defined in the single 258X file that contains multiple unique boards. Since two boards may reuse the same identifier, e.g., "U1", "R1", it must be possible to separate names in the file into namespaces. The 258X namespace implementation borrows the notation used by XML namespaces and makes the 258X standard format consistent with conventional XML usage.

There are two types of names used to name top-level objects (element instances) in a 258X file. The first type of name is a `qualifiedName` type. This type includes a prefix in the name that corresponds to a namespace within the 258X file. The prefix and the globally unique identity of the `Namespace` are declared in the `Namespace` element. The second type of name is a `shortName` type. This type is required to be unique within the 258X file. The syntax restrictions on short names and qualified names assure that all names will be unique as top-level names within 258X file.

3.2.2 The Use of XML elements and types

A comprehensive overview of XML Schema can be found in the W3C XML Schema Primer. This section briefly describes the decisions that were made in the development of the 258X schema. Reviewing the Primer is recommended prior to reading this section.

The XML Schema defines a namespace mechanism that can be used when defining element names. The W3C also provides a set of general purpose element and attribute types, such as `xsd:string`, `xsd:double`, and `xsd:datetime`. The 258X format uses these standard types, however the documentation of the 258X standard has been defined without the use of a namespace prefix for element names within a 258X file.

Each of the schema elements has a prefix, "xsd:", which is associated with the XML Schema namespace through the declaration, `xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2000/08/XMLSchema"`, that appears in the schema element. The prefix `xsd:` is used by convention to denote the XML Schema namespace, although any prefix can be used. The same prefix, and hence the same association, also appears on the names of built-in simple types, e.g. `xsd:string`. The purpose of the association is to identify the elements and simple types as belonging to the vocabulary of the XML Schema language rather than the vocabulary of the schema author.

In XML Schema, there is a basic difference between complex types that allow elements in their content and may carry attributes, and simple types that cannot have element content and cannot carry attributes. There is also a major distinction between definitions that create new types (both simple and complex), and declarations that enable elements and attributes with specific names and types (both simple and complex) to appear in document instances.

New complex types are defined using the `complexType` element and such definitions typically contain a set of element declarations, element references, and attribute declarations. The declarations are not themselves types, but rather an association between a name and constraints that govern the appearance of that name in documents governed by the associated schema. Elements are declared using the "element," and attributes are declared using the "attribute."

3.2.3 Attribute base types (governing templates)

The attribute basic types (SimpleTypes) provided by XML Schema are defined by the W3C. They are easy to distinguish from the IPC-258X types because the W3C type is always prefixed with "xsd:". The W3C datatypes are defined in <http://www.w3.org/2000/10/XMLSchema> (XML Schema Part 2).

Table 2 defines those W3C basic types that are used to define attributes in the 258X schema. The `xsd:string` type is constrained to create specific base types for special purpose strings, such as `qualifiedName` and `shortName`. The rules for special number types and the date format are also defined. Table 3 defines those basic types that have been standardized for use within the IPC-258X format.

Table 2 Governing Template Basic Types Defined by W3C

xsd:string	A W3C standard data type for a Unicode character string. The characters are from the UTF-8 character set as defined in http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2279.txt .
xsd:double	A W3C standard data type for a binary floating-point number. The W3C definition of xsd:double is in http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/ . The xsd:double is a number where the value can be positive, negative, integer or floating point, with at least 7 digits of precision. Numbers are assumed to be positive but can be explicitly designated as positive by preceding the number with a '+' (ASCII decimal 43) character. Negative numbers must be explicitly designated as negative by a preceding '-' (ASCII decimal 45) character. An internal representation of an IEEE double precision floating-point number is assumed. This range of values for IEEE doubles is defined as $3.4 \times 10^{-38} \leq \text{value} \leq 3.4 \times 10^{+38}$. The format for representing a double is the same as the format used in the computer languages C, Perl, Python, or TCL. For example, all the following are legal numbers: 1.005 ; .01; .01; -2.334e-33; .224e-2
xsd:nonNegativeInteger	A W3C standard data type for non-negative integer numbers. The W3C definition of xsd:nonNegativeInteger is in http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/ . The range of values allowed are $0 \leq \text{value} \leq 2147483647$ (the non-negative values that fit in a 32 bit signed integer).
xsd:positiveInteger	A W3C standard data type for positive integer numbers. The W3C definition of xsd:positiveInteger is in http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/ . The range of values allowed are $1 \leq \text{value} \leq 2147483647$ (the positive values that fit in a 32 bit signed integer).
xsd:dateTime	The W3C standard data type for the current date and time is xsd:dateTime. (See http://www.w3.org/TR/NOTE-datetime-970915.html .) The following formats from the W3C specification are recommended for 258X files: Complete date plus hours, minutes and seconds: YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ssTZD (e.g. 1997-07-16T19:20:30.4536+01:00) Complete date plus hours, minutes, seconds and a decimal fraction of a second: YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sTZD (e.g. 1997-07-16T19:20:30.45+01:00) where: YYYY = four-digit year MM = two-digit month (01=January, etc.) DD = two-digit day of month (01 through 31) hh = two digits of hour (00 through 23) (am/pm NOT allowed) mm = two digits of minute (00 through 59) ss = two digits of second (00 through 59) s = one or more digits representing a decimal fraction of a second TZD = time zone designator (Z or +hh:mm or -hh:mm)
xsd:anyURI	A W3C standard data type for hyperlinks. The W3C definition of xsd:anyURI is in http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/ .
xsd:unsignedByte	The W3C standard for an unsigned byte (an unsigned 8 bit integer with a value between 0-255.) The W3C definition of xsd:unsignedByte is in http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/ .
xsd:base64Binary	The data is encoded using base64. (see IETF RFC 1421 for the base64 algorithm and http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#base64Binary)

Table 3 Governing Template Basic Types Defined by IPC

qualifiedName	<p>The <code>qualifiedName</code> data type is a data type defined for the 258X series. The type is a restricted <code>xsd:string</code> data type where the pattern of the string must match the regular expression “[a-zA-Z][a-zA-Z0-9_-#]*:+”.</p> <p>The definition of the <code>qualifiedName</code> data type is:</p> <pre><xsd:simpleType name = "qualifiedName"> <xsd:restriction base = "xsd:string"> <xsd:pattern value = "[a-zA-Z][a-zA-Z0-9_-#]*:+"/> </xsd:restriction> </xsd:simpleType></pre> <p>An example of a string that matches the pattern is: “prefix:name”. The “prefix” is a Namespace name. The “name” is the name of an object within the Namespace.</p>
nonNegativeDouble	<p>The <code>nonNegativeDouble</code> data type is defined for the 258X series. The type restricts an <code>xsd:double</code> to positive numbers, inclusive of 0. The non-negative range of values for IEEE doubles is defined as $0.0 \leq \text{value} \leq 3.4 \times 10^{38}$.</p>
shortName	<p>The <code>shortName</code> data type is a data type defined for the 258X series. The type is a restricted <code>xsd:string</code> data type where the pattern of the string must match the regular expression “[a-zA-Z][a-zA-Z0-9_-]*”.</p> <p>The <code>xsd</code> definition of the <code>shortName</code> data type is:</p> <pre><xsd:simpleType name = "shortName"> <xsd:restriction base = "xsd:string"> <xsd:pattern value = "[a-zA-Z][a-zA-Z0-9_-]*"/> </xsd:restriction> </xsd:simpleType></pre> <p>An example of a string that matches the pattern is “bob_24”</p>

3.2.3.1 Qualified name convention

The IPC-258X file supports two types of qualified names. One is a basic `qualifiedName`; the second is a complete `qualifiedName` as shown in Table 3.

A basic `qualifiedName` is composed of at least one letter, followed by any number of letters, numbers, underscores, or hyphens. To form a complete `qualifiedName`, one can optionally prefix a basic `qualifiedName` with a colon delimited path, where each step along the path is constructed the same way as the basic `qualified name`. This permits sorting of sort names into a hierarchy (see Table 3).

Examples of basic `qualified names` are:

“KarenSingleBoard”
 “MultilayerStrategy”
 “StandardPrimitiveShapes”

Examples of complete `qualified names` are:

“Set1:KarenSingleBoard”
 “Set1:MultilayerStrategy”
 “Set1:StandardPrimitiveShapes”

3.2.4 Coordinate system and transformation rules

Any geometry defined in a 258X file is defined in a Cartesian coordinate system. The x coordinates become more positive going from left to right (west to east). The y coordinates become more positive going from bottom to top (south to north). The primary side (TOP) of the board, coupon, or panel is in the x-y plane of the coordinate system with the primary side facing up.

The illustration in Figure 2 provides a perspective drawing of a board and a coordinate system. Each product in a 258X file is defined relative to a local coordinate system for the product. The point of origin of the product is located at (0,0) in the local coordinate system.

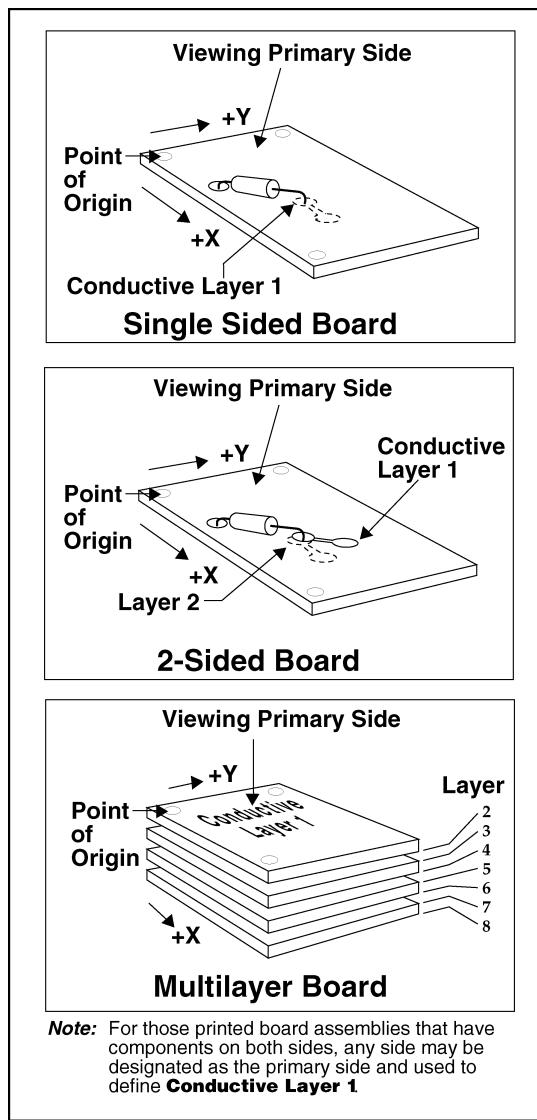


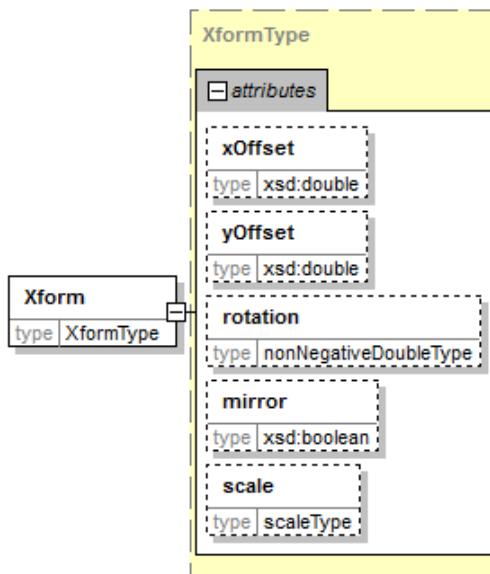
Figure 2 Printed Board Viewing

3.3 Transformation characteristics (Xform)

The **Xform** element defines a transformation that may be used throughout this specification to define a modification of the original stored data in the Dictionaries, the location and orientation of physical features. Features, Shapes, Primitives or other graphics in the file may be manipulated relative to their local Cartesian coordinate system by the values set in the transform. The **Xform** element can define a modification of the pre-defined feature's point of origin, and then apply rotation, mirroring, scaling and location (x and y) of the image.

The units of measure are defined in the **CadHeader** as an attribute that describes the details of all the features in the **Ecad** section. In addition, units of measure are also defined in each of the Dictionaries that contain graphical information. These are **DictionaryStandard**, **DictionaryUser**, **DictionaryFont**, and **DictionaryLineDesc**. When a pre-defined image from one of the dictionaries is used in the **Ecad** section, the units of measure must match.

The order of the transformation **shall** always follow the order of the fields in the description. This would be to 1) modify the origin; 2) apply rotation; 3) mirror image; and 4) scale.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
xOffset	double	The x offset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	0-1
yOffset	double	The y offset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	0-1
rotation	nonNegativeDouble Type	Defines the rotation of a shape about the local origin in degrees. Positive rotation is always counter-clockwise as viewed from the board TOP (primary side). Degree accuracy is expressed as a two place decimal i.e., 45.15; 62.34	0-1
mirror	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the image is mirrored; FALSE indicates that it is not. Mirror is implemented as FALSE by default and MUST be set to True if the features/components are to be inverted.	0-1
scale	scaleType	An attribute that defines a "double" dimension whose <code>minExclusiveValue=0.0</code> representing the multiplication factor of all x and y dimensions. The scale factor does not apply to angular values.	0-1

3.3.1 The x and y Offset attributes

The `xOffset` and `yOffset` attributes are of type `xsd:double`. They define the x and y offset of a shape relative to the origin of a Cartesian coordinate system. The definition of shapes can be nested and the x and y attributes are always interpreted relative to the local coordinate system of the shape to which the transformation applies. The default value for x and y is 0.0.

3.3.2 The rotation attribute

The `rotation` attribute is of type `nonNegativeDouble` that defines the rotation of a shape about the local origin. The interpretation of the value is set globally in the file to units of degrees. The range of the rotation parameter for DEGREES is 0.00 to 360.00 expressed as a `nonNegativeDouble` with an accuracy of a two place decimal. Positive rotation is always counter-clockwise as viewed from the board TOP (primary side), even if the component that is being rotated is on the board BOTTOM (secondary side). Rotation defaults to 0.0, and can be applied to text, or any physical shape.

3.3.3 The mirror attribute

The `mirror` attribute is of data type `boolean`. This type is an enumerated string indicating TRUE or FALSE. The default value for MIRROR is FALSE. When mirror is set to TRUE it indicates that all x dimensions are set to a $-x$ value. The proper interpretation of the mirror and rotate attributes are shown in Figure 3. The example shows a unique artwork (14-pin DIP device) placed on the top and bottom of a board at 90.00° rotations.

3.3.4 The scale attribute

The `scale` attribute is of data type `scaleType`. The `scale` attribute is a “double” that must have a value greater than zero. All x and y dimensions of a geometry are multiplied by the scale attribute. The scale factor does not apply to angular values. The default value is 1.0.

3.3.5 The x and y Location attributes

The `xLocation` and `yLocation` attributes are of type `xsd:double`. They define the x and y position where a feature, component, text or other shape is placed. The `xLocation` and `yLocation` coordinate positions a shape by its original origin or its modified origin (x and y Offset) relative to the origin of the image upon which the feature, component etc. is to be located. Mirroring, rotating, and scaling may all apply to the location of the shape as indicated by the `Xform`.

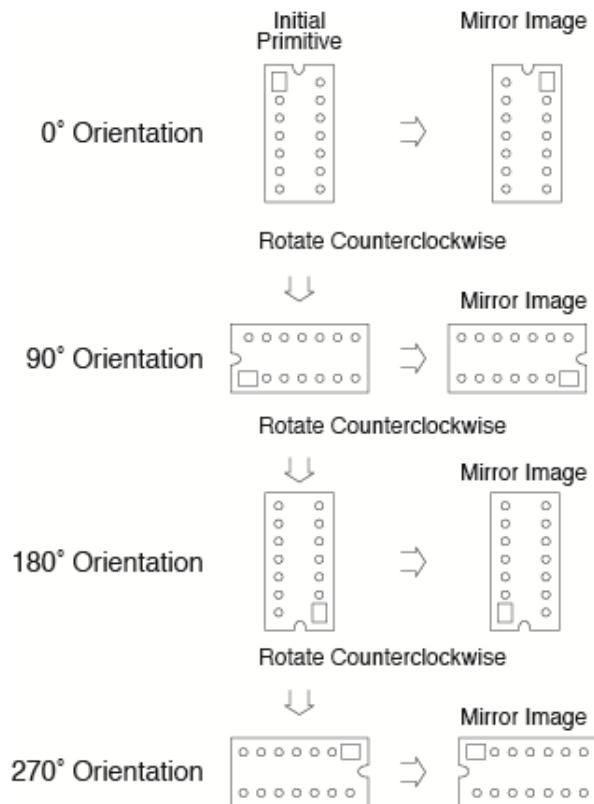


Figure 3 Rotation and Mirror Diagram

3.4 Substitution groups

The IPC-2581 uses the concept of substitution within the XML schema. Various groups of elements have been identified in the body of the standard and have been designated as having a specific focus or purpose. Within the schema, these substitution groups are provided with a name. When a group exists and if they are required according to the instances of the schema, it is mandatory that the substitution name be replaced by one of the acceptable descriptions identified within the group.

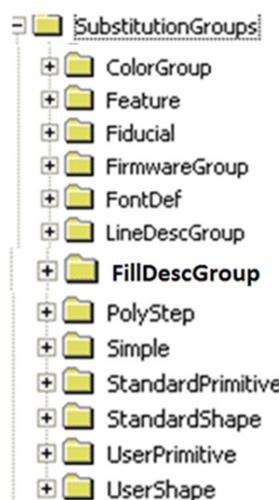
Often a schema needs to specify that one of several different XML Elements can be used with equal validity. For example, in every case where a `Triangle` can be used, it is also permissible to use a `Diamond`, `Hexagon`, `Octagon`, `Oval`, or one of several others: even though these shapes are quite different, they are equivalent as far as the schema is concerned. IPC-2581 handles this by using “substitution groups.”

A substitution group consists of two types of elements: a “head” and elements which may substitute for the head. Furthermore, when the head is denoted as `ABSTRACT`, the substitution is required, rather than optional. In IPC-2581, the heads of all substitution groups are `ABSTRACT`. Thus, it means that a valid instance document is not allowed to contain a `StandardPrimitive` element, but instead, (where `StandardPrimitive` is called for in the schema) a `Triangle`, `Diamond`, `Hexagon`, etc. must be used.

It should be noted that the head of one substitution group may be used within a different substitution group. As an example, the `StandardPrimitive` element is part of the `StandardShape` substitution group, which in turn is part of the `Feature` substitution group. This means that a `Triangle`, `Diamond`, `Hexagon`, etc. may be used wherever a `Feature` or `StandardShape` is called for, as well as wherever a `StandardPrimitive` is called for.

IPC-2581 features several dictionaries that permit specifying some type of information (such as a `StandardPrimitive` or a `LineDesc`) one time, and to reuse that definition as often as necessary. Some substitution groups in IPC-2581 are present to enable specifying either a dictionary entry or the same kind of information defined in specific detail within the body of the file. Any predefined image contained in the Dictionaries must have a unique “id”. It is the “id” name that is used to instantiate information from any of the dictionaries.

There are 13 substitution groups within the IPC-2581 schema. These are shown in the following table.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
ColorGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>Color</code> element when it is a child of the parent <code>Set</code> , or <code>Text</code> Elements.	3
Feature	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>Feature</code> element when it is a child of the parent <code>Set</code> element.	1
Fiducial	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>Fiducial</code> element when it is a child of the parent <code>Set</code> element.	1
FirmwareGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>FirmwareGroup</code> element when it is a child of the parent <code>Firmware</code> element.	1
FontDef	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>FontDef</code> element when it is a child of the parent <code>EntryFont</code> element.	1
LineDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>LineDescGroup</code> element when it is a child of the parent of most <code>StandardPrimitives</code> , <code>Outline</code> , <code>Polyline</code> , or <code>Set</code> elements.	16
FillDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>FillDescGroup</code> element when it is a child of the parent of most <code>StandardPrimitives</code> , <code>Outline</code> , <code>Polyline</code> , or <code>Set</code> elements.	16
PolyStep	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>PolyStep</code> element when it is a child of the parent <code>Polyline</code> or <code>Polygon</code> elements.	2
Simple	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>Simple</code> element when it is a child of the parent <code>DfxMeasurement</code> , <code>Glyph</code> , or <code>Slot</code> elements.	3
StandardPrimitive	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>StandardPrimitive</code> element when it is a child of the parent <code>EntryStandard</code> element.	1
StandardShape	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>StandardShape</code> element when it is a child of the parent <code>LayerPad</code> or <code>Pad</code> elements.	2
UserPrimitive	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the <code>UserPrimitive</code> element when it is a child of the parent <code>EntryUser</code> element.	1
UserShape	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution or classification of a higher level substitution group. The <code>UserShape</code> element may be used to further classify <code>Feature</code> . In so doing, <code>UserShape</code> can be substituted by a <code>UserPrimitive</code> or <code>UserPrimitiveRef</code> .	0

3.4.1 ColorGroup

The **ColorGroup** substitution group consists of various colors that may be used within the body of the IPC-2581 standard. Color may be predefined and named in the **DictionaryColor**. Color is used by the **FinishType**, **Set**, or **Text** elements. It is referred to in the body of the file by its “Color ID” or by the three attributes that make up color (red, green, blue).

 ColorGroup			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Color	ColorType	The description of a specific color using the three attributes of red, green, and blue.	0-n
ColorRef	ColorRefType	The id of a previously defined color stored in the DictionaryColor .	0-n

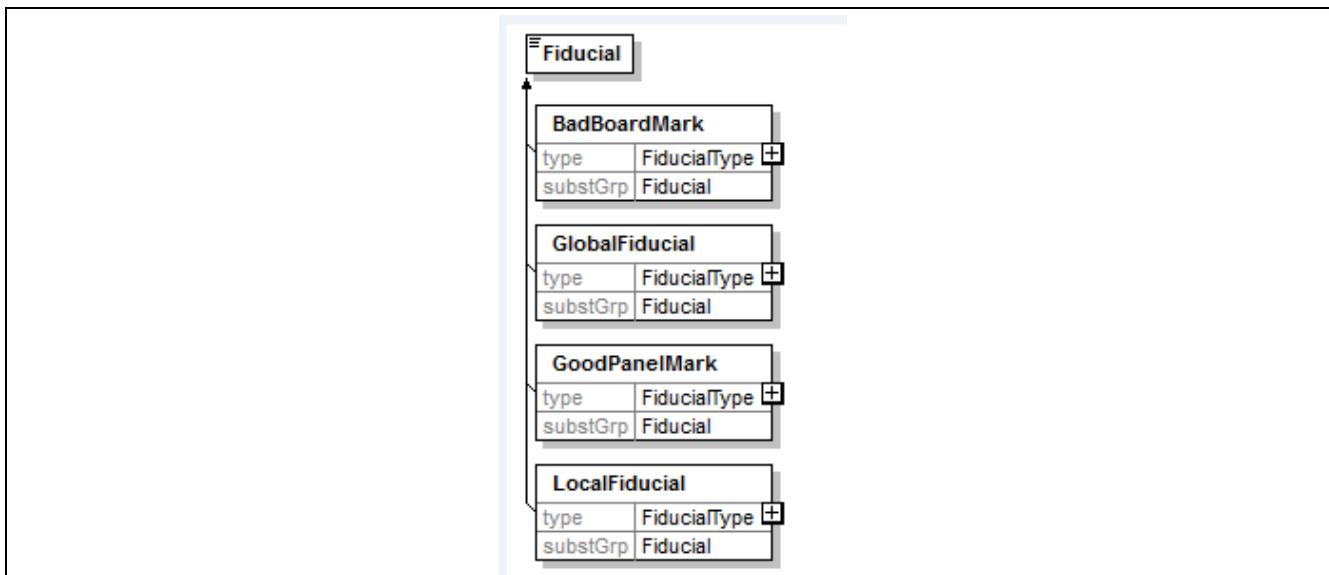
3.4.2 Feature

The **Feature** substitution consists of two major substitution groups. Where **Feature** is called for, an instance must substitute a graphic allowed by either the **StandardShape** or **UserShape** substitution groups.

 Feature			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
StandardShape	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that occurs in the IPC-2581 schema and permits the substitution of the StandardShape element when it is a child of the parent LayerPad or Pad elements.	0-n
UserShape	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that occurs in the IPC-2581 schema and permits the substitution or classification of a higher level substitution group. The UserShape element may be used to further classify Feature . In so doing UserShape can be substituted by a UserPrimitive or UserPrimitiveRef .	0-n

3.4.3 Fiducial

The **Fiducial** substitution group consists of four elements that may be used to replace the **Fiducial** element. When the **Fiducial** element is substituted, it **shall** be by either a **BadBoardMark**, **GlobalFiducial**, **GoodPanelMark**, or **LocalFiducial** fiducial type. The **Fiducial** elements contain an **Xform** and a substitution capability to a **StandardShape**. An optional **Pin** attribute allows reference to a component pin.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
BadBoardMark	FiducialType	A set of Standard Shapes used as an aid to the board assembler by defining those boards in a panel that did not pass inspection or electrical test. The fiducial shape is positioned near each board in the assembly panel array and covered over to signify that the board is defective.	0-n
GlobalFiducial	FiducialType	A set of Standard Shapes used in the description, arrangement or positioning of a group of features on an individual board, assembly, or panel.	0-n
GoodPanelMark	FiducialType	A single Standard Shape used to define a panel where all boards on the panel are good. The fiducial is positioned once on the panel and enables reduction in inspection time.	0-n
LocalFiducial	FiducialType	A set of fiducials (usually a pair) used in the description and arrangement of features related to a specific component on a board, assembly, or panel which aide in the location/positioning process.	0-n

3.4.4 FirmwareGroup

The **FirmwareGroup** substitution group consists of the description element for the firmware that defines the data to be added to a component through the **RefDes** element of a particular **BomItem**. The information may be provided as a **CachedFirmware** element or as a reference to the firmware which has been stored and identified with an “id” in the **DictionaryFirmware**.

<pre> FirmwareGroup +-- CachedFirmware +-- FirmwareRef </pre>			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
CachedFirmware	CachedFirmwareType	An element that identifies the firmware needed for a particular component in the Bill of Material. The information is in a hexEncodeBinary format.	0-n
FirmwareRef	FirmwareType	An element that references CachedFirmware stored in the DictionaryFirmware through the callout of the firmware “id”	0-n

3.4.5 FontDef

The `FontDef` substitution group consists of the description of a font that is different than the standard Helvetica and which is contained in the `DictionaryFont`. Fonts in the dictionary have an "id" which is called out when a `FontRef` is instantiated. `FontRef` is used by the element `Text`, which is called for in `SilkScreen` and `AssemblyDrawing`. `Text` can also be substituted whenever a `UserPrimitive`, `UserShape` or `Feature` is called for.

 <code>FontDef</code>  <code>FontDefEmbedded</code>  <code>FontDefExternal</code>			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
<code>FontDefEmbedded</code>	<code>FontDefEmbeddedType</code>	A description of a font using individual characters that are defined in accordance with the <code>Glyph</code> element and are contained in the <code>DictionaryFont</code> . Fonts must be predefined and may not be instantiated as part of the data in the file.	0-n
<code>FontDefExternal</code>	<code>FontDefExternalType</code>	A reference to an external font description through the instantiation of a URN. The font is named and the reference is contained in the <code>DictionaryFont</code> . The appropriate character set is defined by the URN. External Fonts must be predefined and may not be instantiated as part of the data in the file.	0-n

The term "Uniform Resource Name" (URN) refers to the subset of URI that are required to remain globally unique and persistent even when the resource ceases to exist or becomes unavailable. A URI can be further classified as a locator, a name, or both. The term "Uniform Resource Locator" (URL) refers to the subset of URI that identify resources via a representation of their primary access mechanism (i.e., their network "location"), rather than identifying the resource by name or by some other attribute(s) of that resource.

3.4.6 LineDescGroup

The `LineDescGroup` substitution specifies the `LineDesc` or `LineDescRef`. The `LineDesc` specifies the `LineWidth`, `LineEnd` and `LineProperty` characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the `Outline`, `Polyline` and `Set` element definitions. The substitution is also instantiated by the substitution group `Simple` which calls for `Arc`, `Line`, `Outline` and `Polyline`. In addition to the `UserPrimitives` the `StandardPrimitives` also make use of the line descriptions when required. The `LineDescRef` requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file.

 <code>LineDescGroup</code>  <code>LineDesc</code>  <code>LineDescRef</code>			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
<code>LineDesc</code>	<code>LineDescType</code>	An element that identifies the <code>LineEnd</code> , <code>LineWidth</code> and <code>LineProperty</code> characteristics	0-n
<code>LineDescRef</code>	<code>LineDescRefType</code>	A reference to a <code>LineDesc</code> that is contained in the <code>DictionaryLineDesc</code> and identified by its unique "id". The units for the dictionary are defined and must be consistent with the units of the <code>CadHeader</code> when referenced from the <code>Ecad</code> section.	0-n

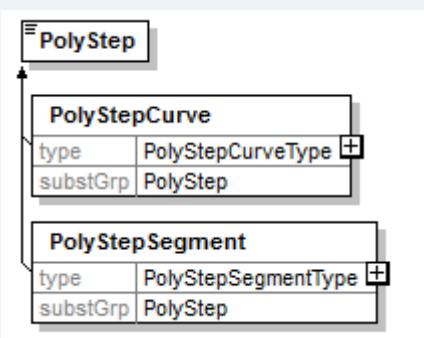
3.4.7 FillDescGroup

The `FillDescGroup` substitution specifies the `FillDesc` or `FillDescRef`. The `FillDesc` element provides the `FillProperties`, `LineDesc` and `Color` characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the `StandardPrimitives`, `any UserPrimitive` closed shape and `Set` element definitions. The `FillDescRef` requires an “`id`” that must be unique within the 2581 file

			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
<code>FillDesc</code>	<code>FillDescType</code>	An element that identifies the <code>FillProperties</code> , <code>LineDesc</code> and <code>Color</code> characteristics	0-n
<code>FillDescRef</code>	<code>FillDescRefType</code>	A reference to a <code>FillDesc</code> that is contained in the <code>DictionaryFillDesc</code> and identified by its unique “ <code>id</code> ”. The units for the dictionary are defined and must be consistent with the units of the <code>CadHeader</code> when referenced from the <code>Ecad</code> section.	0-n

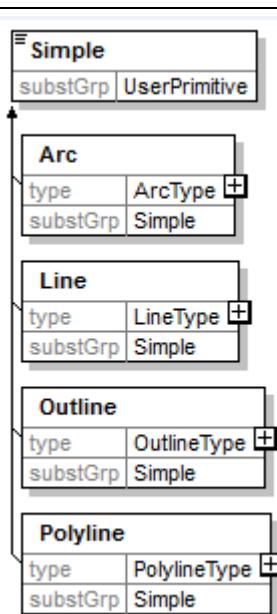
3.4.8 PolyStep

The `PolyStep` substitution consists of defining either a `Line` or an `Arc` as the continuation of a `Polyline` or `Polygon` description. The location information is interpreted as being the point to which the curve (`Arc`), or segment (`Line`) is drawn. The substitution may take place anywhere within the file where the elements `Polyline` and `Outline` occur. This action includes the dictionaries where graphic descriptions are predefined. The `Units` of measure must be consistent with the `Units` parameter of the three dictionaries where this substitution can take place; `DictionaryStandard`, `DictionaryUser`, and `DictionaryFont`.

			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
<code>PolyStepCurve</code>	<code>PolyStepCurveType</code>	The continuation of the linear description of a <code>Polyline</code> or <code>Polygon</code> if the next portion to be defined is an arc. The end point of the arc is defined as well as the location of the radius. <code>CounterClockwise</code> is the default direction	0-n
<code>PolyStepSegment</code>	<code>PolyStepSegmentType</code>	The continuation of the linear description of a <code>Polyline</code> or <code>Polygon</code> if the next portion to be defined is a line segment. The end point of the line is defined.	0-n

3.4.9 Simple

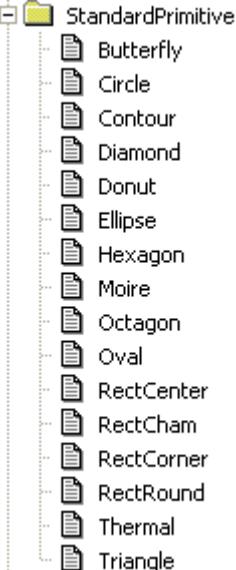
The Simple substitution consists of defining an Arc, Line, Outline or Polyline. The Simple substitution is called for in the DfxMeasurement, Glyph, and Slot elements. Simple is also identified as a UserPrimitive, UserShape, or Feature and the four elements may be substituted when called for in conjunction with those descriptions. When predefined in the DictionaryUser, or DictionaryFont the Units must match those of the dictionary.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Arc	ArcType	Arc elements are curves (defined by three sets of coordinates: startX, startY, endX, endY and centerX, centerY. The width of the arc is applied when the arc is instantiated or predefined.	0-n
Line	LineType	Line elements are individual line segments. The lineWidth and lineEnd conditions are defined when the line is instantiated or pre-defined. The lineEnd default is ROUND.	0-n
Outline	OutlineType	Outline has Polygon and LineDesc as children elements. The characteristics of the Polygon must be a closed shape. The point of origin of the shape is identified as the 0:0 coordinate. The element includes the start of the polygon definition (PolyBegin) and the appropriate number of PolySteps to complete the closed shape. The lineWidth is defined at a time when the Outline is instantiated or predefined.	0-n
Polyline	PolylineType	The Polyline element consists of a series of lines that define a particular grouping configuration. These line segments do NOT result in a closed shape, however they can be pre-defined and re-used as needed. The lineWidth and lineEnd of the Polyline are defined at the time the Polyline is instantiated or predefined.	0-n

3.4.10 StandardPrimitive

There are sixteen Standard Primitives defined in the IPC-2581 structure. Any of the primitive shapes may be a candidate for substitution when StandardPrimitive is called for in the schema. The names of the various shapes indicate their type; each has its attributes that identify the physical requirements. Any StandardPrimitive may be predefined, provided a unique "id", and contained in the DictionaryStandard. All StandardPrimitive shapes are developed in accordance with their description requirements in the preferred orientation of this standard.



```

graph TD
    SP[StandardPrimitive] --> Butterfly
    SP --> Circle
    SP --> Contour
    SP --> Diamond
    SP --> Donut
    SP --> Ellipse
    SP --> Hexagon
    SP --> Moire
    SP --> Octagon
    SP --> Oval
    SP --> RectCenter
    SP --> RectCham
    SP --> RectCorner
    SP --> RectRound
    SP --> Thermal
    SP --> Triangle
  
```

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Butterfly	ButterflyType	A primitive shape (either ROUND or SQUARE) that has two quadrants of the Cartesian coordinate system removed (0 to 90° and 180 to 270°).	0-n
Circle	CircleType	A primitive shape that defines a round object where the circular shape consists of a diameter.	0-n
Contour	ContourType	A closed primitive shape that has as its children a polygon and optional cutout(s) The sequence of connected edges that form the polygon may be straight or circular.	0-n
Diamond	DiamondType	A primitive shape with four equal sides that are extended from its horizontal center to its vertical center. The lines converge into a point both horizontally and vertically. The overall description of the shape is controlled by the width (distance between vertical point) and the height (distance between horizontal point).	0-n
Donut	DonutType	A round, square, hexagon, or octagon shaped primitive consisting of an outer diameter and inner diameter that define physical characteristics of the donut.	0-n
Ellipse	EllipseType	An elliptical primitive shape that follows the standard ellipse characteristics and is defined by a width and height dimension, establishing the overall limits of the feature.	0-n
Hexagon	HexagonType	A six-sided primitive shape with all sides being equal in length and with all angles between adjacent sides being equal. The orientation of the Hexagon is with one of its points facing North. Only the dimension across the points is required.	0-n
Moire	MoireType	A series of circles, each consisting of a smaller diameter than the previous. The details of the Moire is defined by the number of rings, their center line spacing, and the ring width. The pattern may also contain a crosshair representing its point of origin. Restrictions apply so that ringWidth is smaller than ringGap.	0-n
Octagon	OctagonType	An eight-sided primitive shape with all sides being equal in length and with all angles between adjacent sides being equal. The orientation of the Octagon is with one of its points facing north. Only the dimension across the points is required.	0-n
Oval	OvalType	A rectangular primitive shape with a complete radius (180° arc) at each end. The limits of the feature are controlled by the length and width of the oval across the outer extremities.	0-n

RectCenter	RectCenterType	The characteristics of a rectangle defined by a width and height dimension consistent with a horizontal position on the Cartesian coordinate system. The center point is the point of origin and is used to locate the RectCenter. A “square” is a RectCenter with the width and height equal.	0-n
RectCham	RectChamType	A rectangle with one or more corners chamfered. The user has the option to define any of the corners as containing the chamfer as well as the chamfered dimensions. All chamfers (or opportunities for chamfers) must be identical in size.	0-n
RectCorner	RectCornerType	A constraining rectangular area (bounding box) that describes a rectangle consistent with a horizontal position on the Cartesian coordinate system. The point of origin is the lower left corner. A Square positioned by its corners is a RectCorner that is defined by having the X and Y offset be equal.	0-n
RectRound	RectRoundType	A rectangle with one or more corners rounded. The user has the option to define any of the corners as containing the radius as well as the radused dimensions. All corners (or opportunities for corners) must be identical in size.	0-n
Thermal	ThermalType	A primitive shape consisting either of ROUND, SQUARE, HEXAGON, or OCTAGON configuration that historically defines the removal of material from a plane or conductive fill area in accordance to the shape attribute description.	0-n
Triangle	TriangleType	A primitive isosceles triangular shape that has two equal sides and a base. The feature is defined by a base and height dimension.	0-n

3.4.11 StandardShape

The StandardShape substitution group permits the substitution of any of the StandardPrimitive shapes in accordance with their individual descriptions. A predefined StandardPrimitive may also be instantiated by its unique “id” when the feature is contained in the DictionaryStandard. When a reference is made to the dictionary predefined primitive, the Units must match.

 StandardShape			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
StandardPrimitive	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the StandardPrimitive element with any of the sixteen standard primitive types.	0-n
StandardPrimitiveRef	StandardPrimitiveRefType	A reference to a predefined StandardPrimitive, contained in the DictionaryStandard. The reference is by its unique “id”. The units of the referenced predefined primitive and the Ecad section where it is to be instantiated must match.	0-n

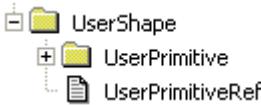
3.4.12 UserPrimitive

The UserPrimitive substitution group consists of any simple graphic feature (Arc, Line, Outline or Polyline), as well as text or UserSpecial shapes. The UserSpecial element is a collection of Features (which are any of the permitted graphics used in the 2581 file). UserSpecial permits the definition of logos, special targets, drawing formats or other graphics needed by a particular design. UserPrimitives can be predefined, assigned a unique “id” and contained in the DictionaryUser. The DictionaryUser defines the Units used to describe the graphic shapes.

			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Simple	ABSTRACT	A substitution consists of defining an Arc, Line, Outline or Polyline. The Simple substitution is called for in the schema in DfxMeasurement, Glyph, and Slot elements and may be defined in any other graphics.	0-n
Text	TextType	The text element defines text strings, fonts, and the bounding box containing the text. Also included are Xform to position, mirror or rotate the text.	0-n
UserSpecial	UserSpecialType	The UserSpecial element has all the capabilities allowed by the standard. The characteristic uses the substitution group "Feature" and may develop any combination of graphical shapes.	0-n

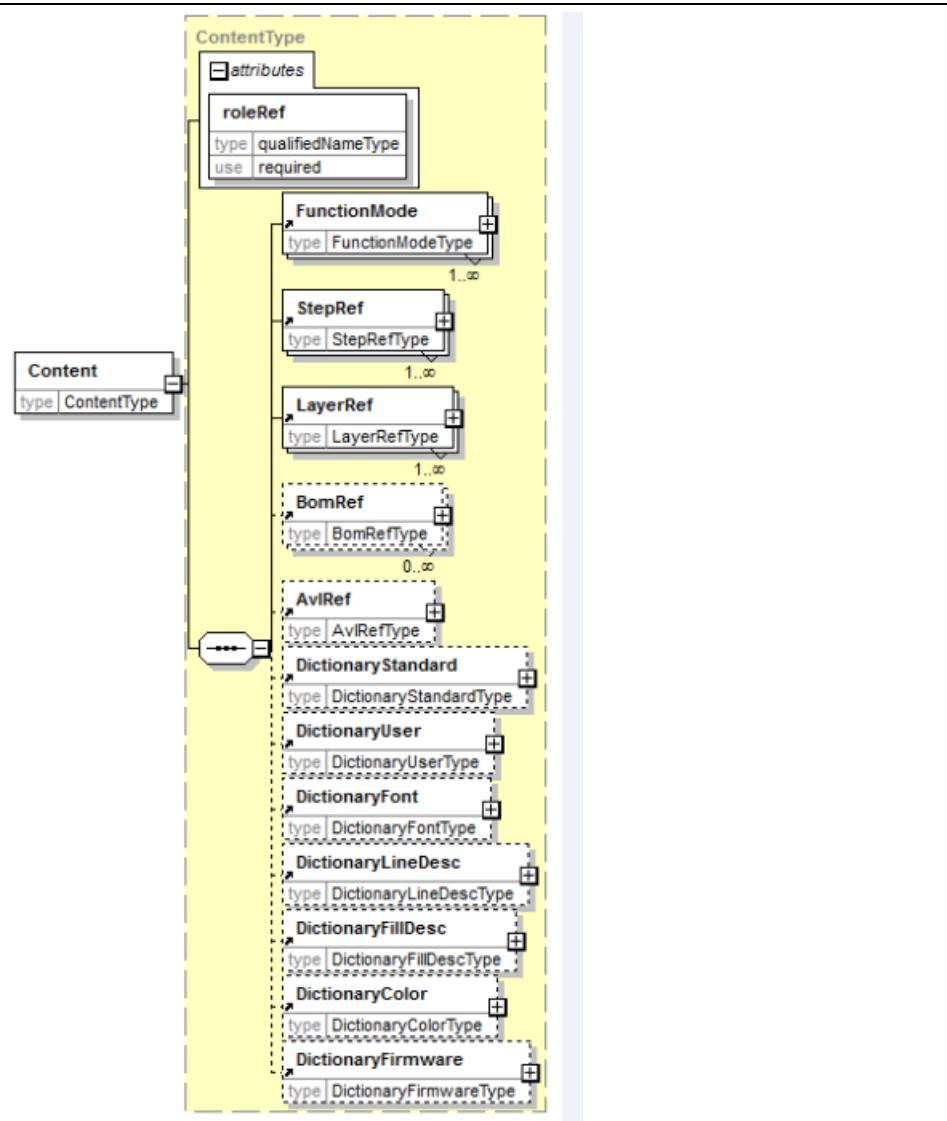
3.4.13 UserShape

The UserShape substitution group permits the substitution of any of the UserPrimitive shapes in accordance with their individual descriptions. A predefined UserPrimitive may also be instantiated by its unique "id" when the feature is contained in the DictionaryUser. When a reference is made to the dictionary predefined primitive, the Units must match.

			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
UserPrimitive	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that occurs in the IPC-2581 schema and permits the substitution of the UserPrimitive element with any of the user primitive description or types.	0-n
UserPrimitiveRef	UserPrimitiveRefType	A reference to a predefined UserPrimitive contained in the DictionaryUser. The reference is by its unique "id". The units of the referenced predefined primitive and the Ecad section where it is to be instantiated must match.	0-n

4 CONTENT

The Content sub-element provides the information about the contents of the IPC-258X file. The Content schema identifies the depth and breadth of information in the file. The Content sub-elements include references to the FunctionMode, StepRef, LayersRef, BomRef, and AvlRef included in the file, plus six Dictionaries: DictionaryStandard, DictionaryUser, DictionaryFont, DictionaryLineDesc, DictionaryColor, and DictionaryFirmware.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Content	ContentType	The Content element defines the function of the file, and references the major sections of the product description (i.e., Step, Layer, Bom and Avl). In addition, there are six dictionaries indicated in Content that would contain the pre-described information needed for the file details.	1-1
roleRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to a globally unique name that identifies the role responsibility associated with the specific role at the time the file is transferred or archived.	1-1

FunctionMode	FunctionModeType	The function that the file is intended to perform between trading partners.	1-n
StepRef	qualifiedNameType	The names of all Step elements that are included in the IPC-258X file through the reference of their unique name.	1-n
LayerRef	qualifiedNameType	The names of all Layer elements that are included in the IPC-258X file through the reference of their unique name.	1-n
BomRef	qualifiedNameType	The names of all Bom elements that are included in the IPC-258X file through the reference of their unique name.	0-n
AvlRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to the he Avl name established in the file. This file contains the approved vendor list for all items contained in the BomData.	0-1
DictionaryStandard	DictionaryStandardType	An element that contains substitution group information using predefined descriptions of standard primitives identified by the 2581 standard and described by the user for reuse in the file.	0-1
DictionaryUser	DictionaryUserType	An element that contains substitution group information using predefined descriptions of user primitives identified by the 2581 standard and described by the user for reuse in the file.	0-1
DictionaryFont	DictionaryFontType	An element that contains substitution group information regarding font descriptions as predefined Glyphs or references to external URN's for character sets that differ from the Helvetica standard.	0-1
DictionaryLineDesc	DictionaryLineDescType	An element that contains substitution group information using line description criteria, predefined by the user for reuse in the file.	0-1
DictionaryFillDesc	DictionaryFillDescType	An element that contains substitution group information using fill description criteria, predefined by the user for reuse in the file.	0-1
DictionaryColor	DictionaryColorType	An element that contains substitution group information using color description criteria, predefined by the user for reuse in the file.	0-1
DictionaryFirmware	DictionaryFirmwareType	An element that contains substitution group information using firmware description criteria, predefined by the user for reuse in the file.	0-1
The XML schema will have a restriction that requires the reference for StepRef, LayerRef, BomRef, and AvlRef be by the globally unique "name."			
The intent of the Content Element is to act as a table of contents for the 2581 file.			

4.1 Content: FunctionMode

The FunctionMode element defines the global mode of the file (see Table 4). There are five valid values for the mode attribute. These are:

USERDEF (User Defined) – Anything that may be included in the IPC-2581 standard job is possible even to being completely Full. A Comment attribute is required for USERDEF (user defined) Mode.

DESIGN – file carries mostly Design start or complete description

FABRICATION – file carries mostly Fabrication information

ASSEMBLY – file carries mostly Assembly information

TEST – file carries mostly testing information for bare board or assembly

Table 4 File Segmentation and Function Apportionment

Name	User Def	Design			Fabrication			Assembly			Test		
		1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3
Hierarchical layer/stack instance files	O	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Hierarchical conductor routing files	O	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
BOM (Components and Materials)	O	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
AVL (Components and Materials)	O	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Component Packages	O	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Land Patterns	O	N	Y	Y	N	N	Y	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Device Descriptions	O	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	Y	N	N	Y
Component Descriptions	O	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Soldermask; Solder Paste Legend Layers	O	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Drilling and Routing Layers	O	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Documentation Layers	O	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Net List	O	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y
Outer Copper Layers	O	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Inner Layers	O	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Miscellaneous Image Layers	O	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
DFX Analysis	O	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

O = User Defined so Data is Optional N=Data is Not Included Y=Data is Included

Each `FunctionMode` has a specific purpose defined for the industry. The `FunctionMode` element has three attributes. The first is `mode`, which can be the enumerated strings of DESIGN, FABRICATION, ASSEMBLY, TEST and USERDEF. The USERDEF mode provides the opportunity for a unique data arrangement with the Option to contain or not contain the specific information based on need or restrictions. In many instances, the testing function is already included in fabrication and assembly modes consisting of bare board testing for fabrication, and in-circuit testing for assembly. Nevertheless, there are times when companies wish to outsource the testing activity. Therefore it is important to identify the various testing modes.

In order to define additional granularity, `FunctionMode` has a second attribute, `level`, that defines the data complexity needed for each of the mode condition. The attribute `level` is a positive integer however only the numbers 1, 2 or 3 are presently allowed since each mode has only three levels. When identifying USERDEF as the mode, the level should be set at 1. The levels encompass their own file details in order to identify that they are associated with an individual mode. Thus, the required file content for level 1 of the DESIGN mode is not the same as a level 1 for the ASSEMBLY mode.

The `FunctionMode` element has a third attribute. The attribute is `comment` which, as string data, permits the users of the 2581 file to enhance the `FunctionMode` descriptions with additional information.

4.1.1 USERDEF mode

The USERDEF mode identifier is optional and may incorporate some or all of the total of the fifteen functions. Each function may be represented and available in the file. The order of the details in the file is not significant as several elements may be used to address any given function. Hierarchical padstack and route information reflects original design intent that may be altered in the representation of the flattened fabrication data. For FABRICATION and ASSEMBLY, flattened data **shall** be used. A Comment noting which functions are included is required.

4.1.2 DESIGN mode

The DESIGN mode consists of three levels of complexity. Each level performs a different function consisting of an original design starting from scratch to completed design that had already been converted to manufacturing data, or a completed design that is still in the CAD format structure. See IPC-2582 and IPC-2583 for sectional data descriptions.

4.1.3 FABRICATION mode

The FABRICATION mode consists of three levels of complexity. Each level describes information in a layered format, from very simplistic data to that where the customer has dictated very specific materials and material stack-up structures. See IPC-2584 and IPC-2588 for sectional data descriptions.

4.1.4 ASSEMBLY mode

The ASSEMBLY mode consists of three levels of complexity. Each level describes a concept of more complete information. The simplest level is mainly bill of material data as well as external copper layers. In its most complete form, the assembly information describes the component approved vendor listing for aliases and substitution in sufficient detail to ensure proper assembly. See IPC-2586 and IPC-2588 for sectional data descriptions.

4.1.5 TEST mode

The TEST mode consists of three levels of complexity. Each level describes a specific function for testing information that must be contained within a file. In its simplest mode, the data describes information to allow bare board testing. In its most complex mode, there is information on in-circuit test, impedance control, and dielectric withstanding voltage conditions. See IPC-2585 and IPC-2587 for sectional data descriptions.

4.2 Function levels

The IPC-258X is limited to be organized as one of thirteen function levels. The `level` attribute, when associated with the `mode` attribute, defines the complexity and detail of the file content.

The `level` attribute consists of a positive integer and identifies complexity with respect to the characteristics for mode-DESIGN, mode-FABRICATION, mode-ASSEMBLY, and mode-TEXT. A mode-USERDEF mode may consist of all or any number of the elements for an IPC-258X file and has only one (1) level value. For all other modes, the `level` attribute relates to the type of mode and is apportioned as one of three levels.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
FunctionMode	FunctionModeType	The function that the file is intended to perform between trading partners.	1-1
mode	modeType	An enumerated string, either USERDEF DESIGN FABRICATION ASSEMBLY TEST, that defines the type of mode that the file is intended to serve.	1-1
level	positiveInteger	A numerical value of 1, 2, or 3 used to define the complexity of the mode.	1-1
comment	string	Any appropriate comment to help clarify the intended use of the file.	0-1

4.2.1 USERDEF Mode Level 1

The USERDEF mode level 1 requirements are shown as follows. The characteristics represent the most complete state possible, however their inclusion in the file is optional. A comment should indicate which characteristics are available to assist the communication between users of the data.

Layer Stack: Instances of multilayer structure at a single point site defining the characteristics that exist at a particular point including land description or reference, non-pad description or reference, thermal connections or reference, and holes (through-hole, buried, blind, and microvias). LayerStacks are for reference to the construction of the original design.

Conductor Route: Original CAD data files describing conductive patterns and features used to interconnect electronic components in accordance with the original schematic capture file and component library descriptions.

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Avl: An approved vendor list for each item as defined by the OEM and modified accordingly by the board fabricator and the board assembler to reflect the materials and components used in the final electronic assembly.

Component Packages: Physical outlines of mechanical dimensions for electronic and mechanical components, their pins, (lands), and their relation to their logical net description.

Land Patterns: Combinations of lands used on outer layers that are grouped into a pattern so that they coincide with the mounting pins (IO's) of electronic or electromechanical components. The information is through a reference to the individual land for each pin of a device. Land patterns are for reference only to provide a grouping of lands related to a particular component.

Device Descriptions: Device characterization including the electronic or electromechanical part number, as well as its value, tolerance, and pin ID consisting of a name and function.

Component Descriptions: Consists of the components and their instances on the electronic assembly, including a reference to a specific land pattern, a component package style, and a device if the component is electronic.

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Net List: A list of physical nets that includes the physical net points, the location, side, as well as additional information required for bare board electrical testing.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Inner Layers: Image description for innerlayers of multilayered PCB's where the description indicates the conductive pattern as well as plated-through holes contained within a layerset. These characteristics are also used to describe embedded passive layers.

Image Layers: Miscellaneous image layers that may be extracted from the originating CAD system that provide supplementary details for either printed circuit board fabrication or printed circuit board assembly processes and testing.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the Analysis element.

4.2.2 Design Levels

The Design Level requirements have a variety of element combinations. Each combination is identified by its mode and level in combination. There are three Design Level descriptions starting with Design Level 1, Design Level 2 and Design Level 3. The following sections show the content of each of the three design levels. It should be noted that when the elements that represent the design mode are available in any of the fabrication or assembly file structures, the information should be treated as original input and reference and can be used for analysis and checking; however, ASSEMBLY and FABRICATION elements take precedence.

4.2.2.1 Design Level 1

This level represents the original OEM design as was used to lay out a PCB from the design schematic, layout design rules, and component information. The characteristics represent designing from scratch, taking OEM input and developing the board. Design Level 1 requirements are shown as follows:

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Component Packages: Physical outlines of mechanical dimensions for electronic and mechanical components and their relation to their logical net description.

Device Descriptions: Device characterization including the electronic or electromechanical part number, as well as its value, tolerance, and pin ID consisting of a name and function.

Component Descriptions: Consists of the components and their instances on the electronic assembly, including a reference to a specific land pattern, a component package style, and a device if the component is electronic.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Net List: A list of logical nets that includes the physical net points of the components, the location, side, as well as additional information required for bare board electrical testing.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the Analysis element.

4.2.2.2 Design Level 2

This level provides information that is used to modify an existing design using the original CAD data information since the changes impact the electrical characteristics that should be maintained. The characteristics represent modifying a design where the Fabrication and Assembly file has been archived by the OEM. Design Level 2 requirements are shown as follows:

Layer Stack: Instances of multilayer structure at a single point site defining the characteristics that exist at a particular point including land description or reference, non-pad description or reference, thermal connections or reference, and holes (through-hole, buried, blind, and microvias). LayerStacks are for reference to the construction of the original design.

Conductor Route: Original CAD data files describing conductive patterns and features used to interconnect electronic components in accordance with the original schematic capture file and component library descriptions.

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Avl: An approved vendor list for each item as defined by the OEM and modified accordingly by the board fabricator and the board assembler to reflect the materials and components used in the final electronic assembly.

Component Packages: Physical outlines of mechanical dimensions for electronic and mechanical components, their pins, (lands), and their relation to their logical net description.

Land Patterns: Combinations of lands used on outer layers that are grouped into a pattern so that they coincide with the mounting pins (IO's) of electronic or electromechanical components. The information is through a reference to the

individual land for each pin of a device. Land patterns are for reference only to provide a grouping of lands related to a particular component.

Device Descriptions: Device characterization including the electronic or electromechanical part number, as well as its value, tolerance, and pin ID consisting of a name and function.

Component Descriptions: Consists of the components and their instances on the electronic assembly, including a reference to a specific land pattern, a component package style, and a device if the component is electronic.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Net List: A list of physical nets that includes the physical net points, the location, side, as well as additional information required for bare board electrical testing.

Image Layers: Miscellaneous image layers that may be extracted from the originating CAD system that provide supplementary details for either printed circuit board fabrication or printed circuit board assembly processes and testing.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the **Analysis** element.

4.2.2.3 Design Level 3

This information is used to modify an existing or archived design where the original hierarchical information was not maintained or may not be compatible with the design system. The characteristics represent modifying a design using the original CAD data information since the changes impact the electrical characteristics that should be maintained. Design Level 3 requirements are shown as follows:

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Avl: An approved vendor list for each item as defined by the OEM and modified accordingly by the board fabricator and the board assembler to reflect the materials and components used in the final electronic assembly.

Component Packages: Physical outlines of mechanical dimensions for electronic and mechanical components, their pins, (lands), and their relation to their logical net description.

Land Patterns: Combinations of lands used on outer layers that are grouped into a pattern so that they coincide with the mounting pins (IO's) of electronic or electromechanical components. The information is through a reference to the individual land for each pin of a device. Land patterns are for reference only to provide a grouping of lands related to a particular component.

Device Descriptions: Device characterization including the electronic or electromechanical part number, as well as its value, tolerance, and pin ID consisting of a name and function.

Component Descriptions: Consists of the components and their instances on the electronic assembly, including a reference to a specific land pattern, a component package style, and a device if the component is electronic.

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Net List: A list of physical nets that includes the physical net points, the location, side, as well as additional information required for bare board electrical testing.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Inner Layers: Image description for innerlayers of multilayered PCB's where the description indicates the conductive pattern as well as plated-through holes contained within a layerset. These characteristics are also used to describe embedded passive layers.

Image Layers: Miscellaneous image layers that may be extracted from the originating CAD system that provide supplementary details for either printed circuit board fabrication or printed circuit board assembly processes and testing.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the **Analysis** element.

4.2.3 Fabrication Levels

The Fabrication Level requirements have a variety of element combinations. Each combination is identified by its mode and level in combination. There are three Fabrication Level descriptions starting with Fabrication Level 1, Fabrication Level 2 and Fabrication Level 3. The following sections show the content of each of the three fabrication levels.

4.2.3.1 Fabrication Level 1

This information represents single, double-sided, or multilayer PCB graphical data. There is no electrical connectivity or performance data included. This level replaces PCB fabrication Gerber data. This level presents the fabrication print notes and material construction information in a machine-readable ASCII file format. The level is for build to documentation instructions. Electrical testing is derived from the conductive images. The characteristics represent single or double sided boards, built to documentation. Fabrication Level 1 requirements are shown as follows:

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Inner Layers: Image description for innerlayers of multilayered PCB's where the description indicates the conductive pattern as well as plated-through holes contained within a layerset. These characteristics are also used to describe embedded passive layers.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the **Analysis** element.

4.2.3.2 Fabrication Level 2

This information represents single, double-sided, or multilayer PCB's where electrical connectivity or performance data is included. This replaces the PCB Gerber and IPC-D-356A. This level presents the fabrication print notes and material construction information in a machine-readable ASCII file format. The boards defined may include buried and blind vias with electrical opens and shorts testing and complete stack up definition. Fabrication Level 2 requirements are shown as follows:

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Avl: An approved vendor list for each item as defined by the OEM and modified accordingly by the board fabricator and the board assembler to reflect the materials and components used in the final electronic assembly.

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Net List: A list of physical nets that includes the physical net points, the location, side, as well as additional information required for bare board electrical testing.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Inner Layers: Image description for innerlayers of multilayered PCB's where the description indicates the conductive pattern as well as plated-through holes contained within a layerset. These characteristics are also used to describe embedded passive layers.

Image Layers: Miscellaneous image layers that may be extracted from the originating CAD system that provide supplementary details for either printed circuit board fabrication or printed circuit board assembly processes and testing.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the **Analysis** element.

4.2.3.3 Fabrication Level 3

This information represents single, double-sided, or multilayer PCB's where electrical connectivity, performance data, and embedded passive information is included. This file level replaces the existing PCB fabrication Gerber and IPC-D-356A data. This level presents the fabrication print notes and material construction information in a machine-readable ASCII file format. These descriptions represent complex printed boards intended to perform a circuit function. Also included is a complete description of core, prepreg and sometimes reinforcement. Fabrication Level 3 requirements are shown as follows:

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Avl: An approved vendor list for each item as defined by the OEM and modified accordingly by the board fabricator and the board assembler to reflect the materials and components used in the final electronic assembly.

Component Packages: Physical outlines of mechanical dimensions for electronic and mechanical components and their relation to their logical net description.

Land Patterns: Combinations of lands used on outer layers that are grouped into a pattern so that they coincide with the mounting pins (IO's) of electronic or electromechanical components. The information is through a reference to the individual land for each pin of a device. Land patterns are for reference only to provide a grouping of lands related to a particular component.

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Net List: A list of physical nets that includes the physical net points, the location, side, as well as additional information required for bare board electrical testing.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Inner Layers: Image description for innerlayers of multilayered PCB's where the description indicates the conductive pattern as well as plated-through holes contained within a layerset. These characteristics are also used to describe embedded passive (resistive or capacitive) material layers.

Image Layers: Miscellaneous image layers that may be extracted from the originating CAD system that provide supplementary details for either printed circuit board fabrication or printed circuit board assembly processes and testing.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the **Analysis** element.

4.2.4 Assembly Levels

The Assembly Level requirements have a variety of element combinations. Each combination is identified by its mode and level in combination. There are three Assembly Level descriptions starting with Assembly Level 1, Assembly Level 2 and Assembly Level 3. The following sections show the content of each of the three assembly levels.

4.2.4.1 Assembly Level 1

This information represents pure assembly. There is no Design for Manufacturing (DFM) analysis of the bare board only assembly functions. Parts are provided on a consignment basis; however, an Approved Vendors List (AVL) is still required that includes the part number of parts in the consignment. There is no analysis of the data to improve the design. There are no added value services. The requirements are to build to print. Assembly Level 1 requirements are shown as follows:

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, assembly, and test information.

Avl: An approved vendor list for each item as defined by the OEM and modified accordingly by the board fabricator and the board assembler to reflect the materials and components used in the final electronic assembly.

Component Packages: Physical outlines of mechanical dimensions for electronic and mechanical components, their pins, (lands), and their relation to their logical net description.

Component Descriptions: Consists of the components and their instances on the electronic assembly, including a reference to a component package style, and a Bom item.

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the **Analysis** element.

4.2.4.2 Assembly Level 2

The information provided represents assemblies that are to be built to print. Parts are procured by Electronic Manufacturing Services (EMS) companies. There is limited DFM analysis, Automated Optical Inspection (AOI), and Flying probe testing. Assembly Level 2 requirements are shown as follows:

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Avl: An approved vendor list for each item as defined by the OEM and modified accordingly by the board fabricator and the board assembler to reflect the materials and components used in the final electronic assembly.

Component Packages: Physical outlines of mechanical dimensions for electronic and mechanical components, their pins, (lands), and their relation to their logical net description.

Land Patterns: Combinations of lands used on outer layers that are grouped into a pattern so that they coincide with the mounting pins (IO's) of electronic or electromechanical components. The information is through a reference to the individual land for each pin of a device. Land patterns are for reference only to provide a grouping of lands related to a particular component.

Component Descriptions: Consists of the components and their instances on the electronic assembly, including a reference to a component package style, and a Bom item.

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Net List: A list of physical nets that includes the physical net points, the location, side, as well as additional information required for bare board electrical testing.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Inner Layers: Image description for innerlayers of multilayered PCB's where the description indicates the conductive pattern as well as plated-through holes contained within a layerset. These characteristics are also used to describe embedded passive layers.

Image Layers: Miscellaneous image layers that may be extracted from the originating CAD system that provide supplementary details for either printed circuit board fabrication or printed circuit board assembly processes and testing.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the **Analysis** element.

4.2.4.3 Assembly Level 3

This level of information represents a full service assembly process. This includes full Design for Excellence (DFX) and customer feed back. Procurement of parts is required as well as an analysis of component substitution. Customer contact provides design improvement recommendations. Full testing, including in-circuit, automatic optical inspection (AOI), Automatic X-ray Inspection (AXI), functional testing and some stress or burn-in testing is a part of this level. DFA can include assignment of parts to specific machines. Assembly Level 3 requirements are shown as follows.

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Avl: An approved vendor list for each item as defined by the OEM and modified accordingly by the board fabricator and the board assembler to reflect the materials and components used in the final electronic assembly.

Component Packages: Physical outlines of mechanical dimensions for electronic and mechanical components, their pins, (lands), and their relation to their logical net description.

Land Patterns: Combinations of lands used on outer layers that are grouped into a pattern so that they coincide with the mounting pins (IO's) of electronic or electromechanical components. The information is through a reference to the individual land for each pin of a device. Land patterns are for reference only to provide a grouping of lands related to a particular component.

Device Descriptions: Device characterization including the electronic or electromechanical part number, as well as its value, tolerance, and pin ID consisting of a name and function.

Component Descriptions: Consists of the components and their instances on the electronic assembly, including a reference to a component package style, and a BOM item.

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Net List: A list of physical nets that includes the physical net points, the location, side, as well as additional information required for bare board electrical testing.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Inner Layers: Image description for innerlayers of multilayered PCB's where the description indicates the conductive pattern as well as plated-through holes contained within a layerset. These characteristics are also used to describe embedded passive layers.

Image Layers: Miscellaneous image layers that may be extracted from the originating CAD system that provide supplementary details for either printed circuit board fabrication or printed circuit board assembly processes and testing.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the **Analysis** element.

4.2.5 Test Levels

The Test Level requirements have a variety of element combinations. Each combination is identified by its mode and level in combination. There are three Test Level descriptions starting with Test Level 1, Test Level 2 and Test Level 3. The following sections show the content of each of the three test levels.

4.2.5.1 Test Level 1

This information provides testing of the bare board only. It includes opens and shorts, impedance control and dielectric withstanding voltage testing. Test Level 1 requirements are shown as follows:

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Net List: A list of physical nets that includes the physical net points, the location, side, as well as additional information required for bare board electrical testing.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the Analysis element.

4.2.5.2 Test Level 2

The information provided includes capability for inspection, manual or using automated equipment such as AOI and AXI. It does not include electrical testing. Test Level 2 requirements are shown as follows:

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Component Packages: Physical outlines of mechanical dimensions for electronic and mechanical components, their pins, (lands), and their relation to their logical net description.

Land Patterns: Combinations of lands used on outer layers that are grouped into a pattern so that they coincide with the mounting pins (IO's) of electronic or electromechanical components. The information is through a reference to the individual land for each pin of a device. Land patterns are for reference only to provide a grouping of lands related to a particular component.

Component Descriptions: Consists of the components and their instances on the electronic assembly, including a reference to a component package style, and a Bom item.

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Image Layers: Miscellaneous image layers that may be extracted from the originating CAD system that provide supplementary details for either printed circuit board fabrication or printed circuit board assembly processes and testing.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the Analysis element.

4.2.5.3 Test Level 3

The information available is for full electrical testing. It includes in-circuit as well as functional testing requirements and boundary scan (self test) analysis. Test Level 3 requirements are shown as follows:

Bom: Bill of Material information that describes, in sufficient detail, the component descriptions of the printed board, as well as the materials used for board fabrication, assembly, and test.

Avl: An approved vendor list for each item as defined by the OEM and modified accordingly by the board fabricator and the board assembler to reflect the materials and components used in the final electronic assembly.

Component Packages: Physical outlines of mechanical dimensions for electronic and mechanical components, their pins, (lands), and their relation to their logical net description.

Land Patterns: Combinations of lands used on outer layers that are grouped into a pattern so that they coincide with the mounting pins (IO's) of electronic or electromechanical components. The information is through a reference to the individual land for each pin of a device. Land patterns are for reference only to provide a grouping of lands related to a particular component.

Device Descriptions: Device characterization including the electronic or electromechanical part number, as well as its value, tolerance, and pin ID consisting of a name and function.

Component Descriptions: Consists of the components and their instances on the electronic assembly, including a reference to a component package style, and a Bom item.

Masking Layer: Images for solder mask on external layers of a printed circuit board (top and bottom) as well as legend marking to be incorporated on top of solder mask material.

Drilling Routing: Information on hole forming, either through mechanical drilling, laser ablation, or chemical mechanism and the relationship of the conductor routing layer.

Documentation Layers: Information on the details for finishes, tolerances, and other details necessary to complete the full disclosure of the printed board structure and/or assembly.

Net List: A list of physical nets that includes the physical net points, the location, side, as well as additional information required for bare board electrical testing.

Outer Conductive: External copper geometries and features used for electronic probing or component attachment. They may be defined as positive or negative.

Inner Layers: Image description for innerlayers of multilayered PCB's where the description indicates the conductive pattern as well as plated-through holes contained within a layerset. These characteristics are also used to describe embedded passive layers.

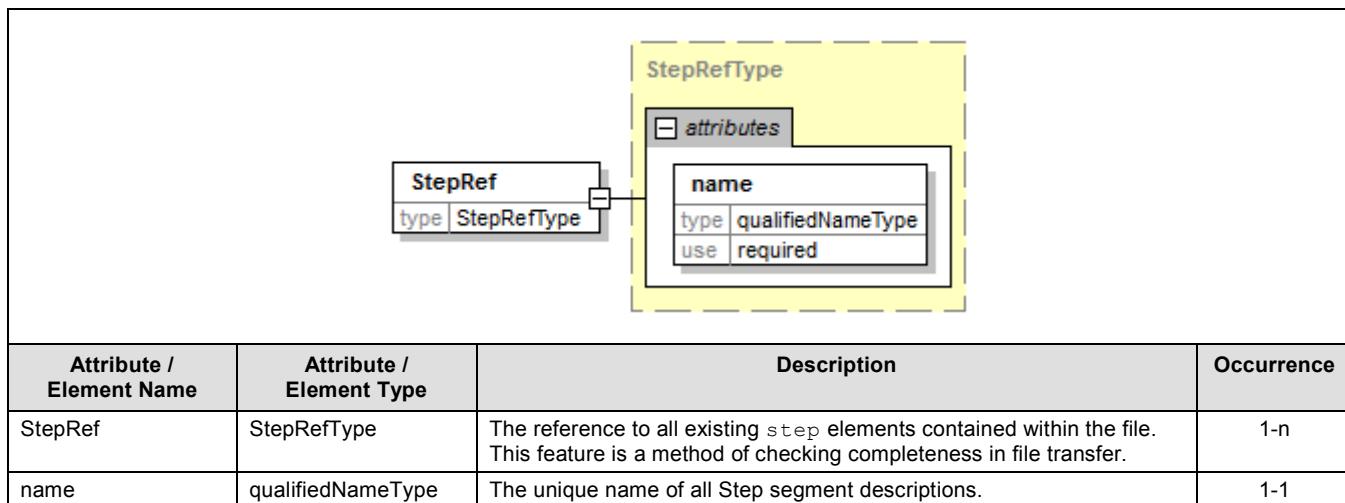
Image Layers: Miscellaneous image layers that may be extracted from the originating CAD system that provide supplementary details for either printed circuit board fabrication or printed circuit board assembly processes and testing.

Analysis: Any of the CAD data can have Design for Manufacturing processes run against it. The results of these are referenced in the `Analysis` element.

4.3 Content: StepRef

The reference to the names of all `Step` elements used in the description of the Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA), the unpopulated board or other related information (e.g., documentation). In manufacturing, this basic `Step` is often step and repeated (nested) inside a larger step (called array, or sub-panel). This array step can be further nested into another step (called a production panel). The `Ecad` element always contains at least one `Step`, but may contain several, some basic ones and others nesting previous steps.

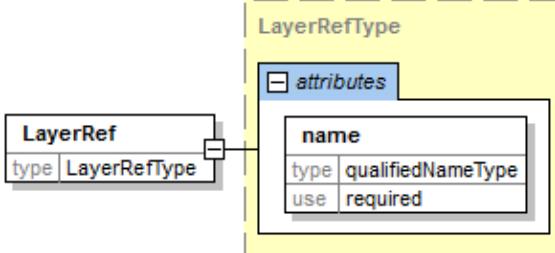
The `StepRef` element, as it appears in the `Content` schema, references the job step's names and thus the various steps that are included in the IPC-2581 file. All the graphical data of a 2581 job are located inside steps that can be nested inside each other (PCB/Sub Panel/Panel, etc.). Steps are referenced in the `Content` schema (`StepRef`) as a `qualifiedName` that relates to the details in the `Ecad` schema.



4.4 Content: LayerRef

Layers, as the name implies, are sheets of two-dimensional data that, when laid on top of each other, create the Printed Circuit Assembly (unpopulated PCB and components or other related information). The `Layer` element appears in the IPC-2581 file as a sub-element of the `CadData` element.

The `LayerRef` element, as it appears in the `Content` schema, references all the file `Layer` unique names included in the IPC-2581 file.

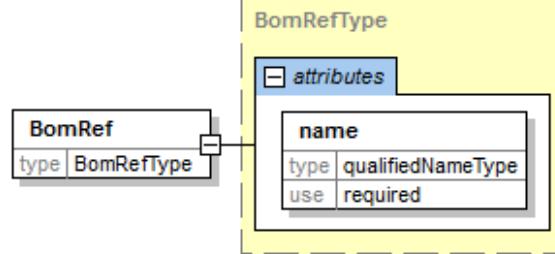


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
LayerRef	LayerRefType	The reference to all existing layer elements contained within the file. This feature is a method of checking completeness in file transfer.	1-n
name	qualifiedNameType	The unique name of all Layer segment descriptions	1-1

4.5 Content: BomRef

The `BOM` section describes the Bill of Materials for the board. A bill of materials is a list of all the different components, materials, mechanical parts, or programmable software used in the electronic product. Components are arranged by the `OEMDesignNumber` or an alternate; materials for board fabrication or component attachment are arranged by their appropriate identifier. Each part number has a list of attributes and is accompanied by a list of the various specific uses or locations on the electronic product, each with its unique name.

Each `BomRef` element, as it appears in the `Content` schema, references one of the potentially many `Bom` categories and the number of items included in each category in the IPC-2581 file.

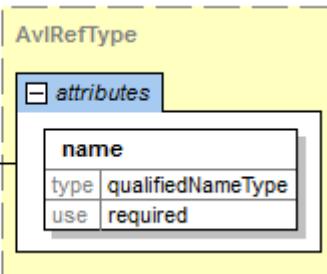


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
BomRef	BomRefType	The reference to all BOM elements that are arranged by the category description contained as an attribute of each <code>BomItem</code> , e.g. ELECTRICAL PROGRAMMABLE MECHANICAL MATERIAL DOCUMENT. This feature identifies the specific number of <code>BomItems</code> as well as the category to which they pertain, and is a method of checking completeness in file transfer.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	The unique name of all Bom segment descriptions.	1-1

4.6 Content: AvlRef

The **Avl** section describes the Approved Vendor Lists for the materials used to fabricate the board and the assembly. The BOM (bill of material) lists include all the different components to be used on the board, arranged by their appropriate part number, and material used to fabricate the board arranged by the part number of the material. There are also BOMs for the material used that are consumed by the fabrication and assembly processes. Each BOM has a corresponding list of approved vendors if the customer wishes to restrict the components and materials used for the electronic assembly to a specific supplier(s). There **shall** be only one **Avl** section in a 2581 file. It **shall** provide the names of each of the approved suppliers and **shall** correlate them with the BOM that contains the material/component descriptions.

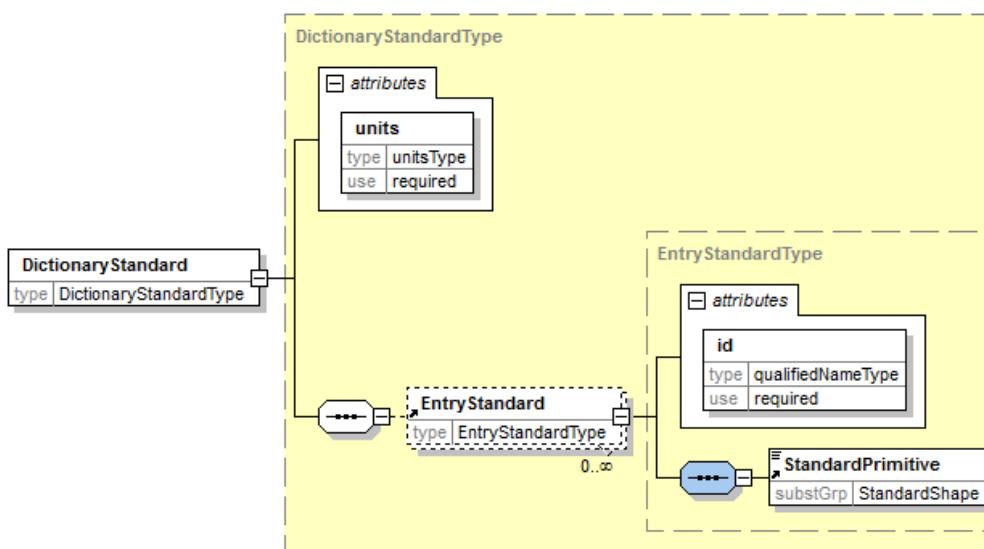
The **Avl** is used by the customer, the fabricator and the assembler to coordinate the relationship with the bills of materials described in the IPC-2581 file.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
AvlRef	AvlRefType	A reference to the single Approved Vendor List for all the suppliers identified and the total number in the IPC-2581 file. This feature is a method of checking completeness in file transfer.	0-1
name	qualifiedNameType	The unique name of the single Approved Vendor List segment descriptions.	1-1

4.7 Content: DictionaryStandard

The **DictionaryStandard** is intended to provide lookup information on predefined Standard Primitives. The **DictionaryStandard** is maintained as part of a substitution group schema. The intent is to have graphic descriptions available that are identified by their characteristics and a specific name (id). They may be reused throughout the file as appropriate. The name (id) of a **StandardPrimitive** must be unique within the **DictionaryStandard**.

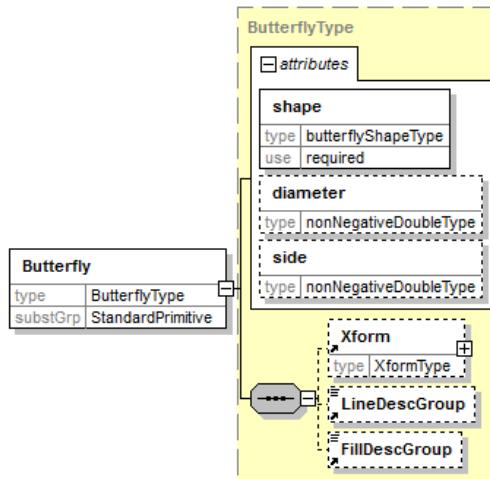


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
DictionaryStandard	DictionaryStandardType	An element that contains substitution group information using predefined descriptions of standard primitives identified by the 2581 standard and described by the user for reuse in the file.	0-1
units	unitsType	An enumerated string that may be one of the following: MILLIMETER MICRON INCH.	1-1
EntryStandard	EntryStandardType	An element that establishes the individual characteristic associated with a StandardPrimitive substitution shape that has been identified by the user of the IPC-2581 file.	0-n
Id	qualifiedNameType	The unique qualified name description assigned as an id for any StandardPrimitive for XML schema substitution.	1-1
StandardPrimitive	ABSTRACT	Any standard primitive that is part of the substitution group that permits the substitution of the StandardShape element. Candidates for substitution are: Butterfly, Circle, Contour, Diamond, Donut, Ellipse, Hexagon, Moire, Octagon, Oval, RectCham, RectCorner, RectRound, Thermal, and Triangle.	1-n

The organization of the DictionaryStandard is accomplished in accordance with the substitution group description criteria. The StandardPrimitive description may be any of sixteen standard shapes according to the specific characteristics identified in the following paragraphs. The StandardPrimitiveRef function is used in the body of the 2581 file when a specific StandardPrimitive has been predefined, assigned a name, and the unique "id" is referenced in the file. This feature permits the use of either a predefined StandardPrimitive, or defining the details of a StandardPrimitive within the file. The description in the file must contain all the features of a particular primitive shape under the rules of the particular shape definition.

4.7.1 StandardPrimitive: Butterfly

A Butterfly is a StandardPrimitive shape that may have the external periphery be either round or square with two quadrants of the Cartesian coordinate system removed (0 to 90° and 180 to 270°). The round shape is defined by its diameter; the square shape is defined by an equal side dimension. The Butterfly is positioned by its point of origin, which is at the center of the Butterfly.

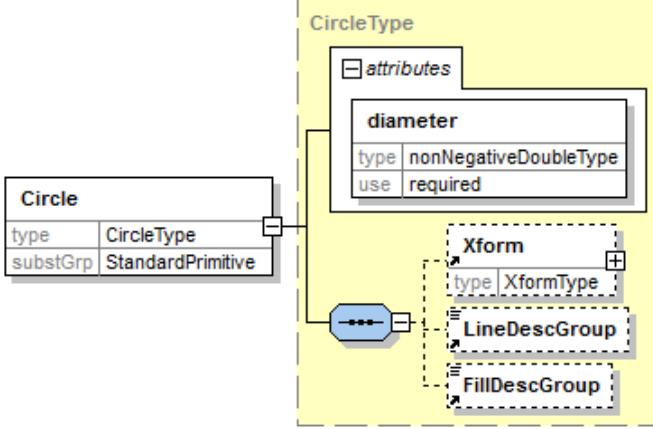
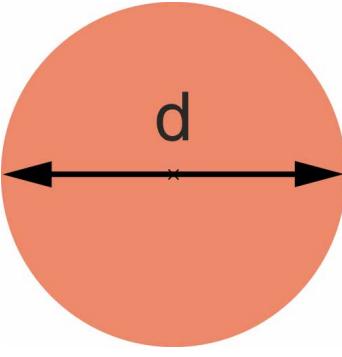


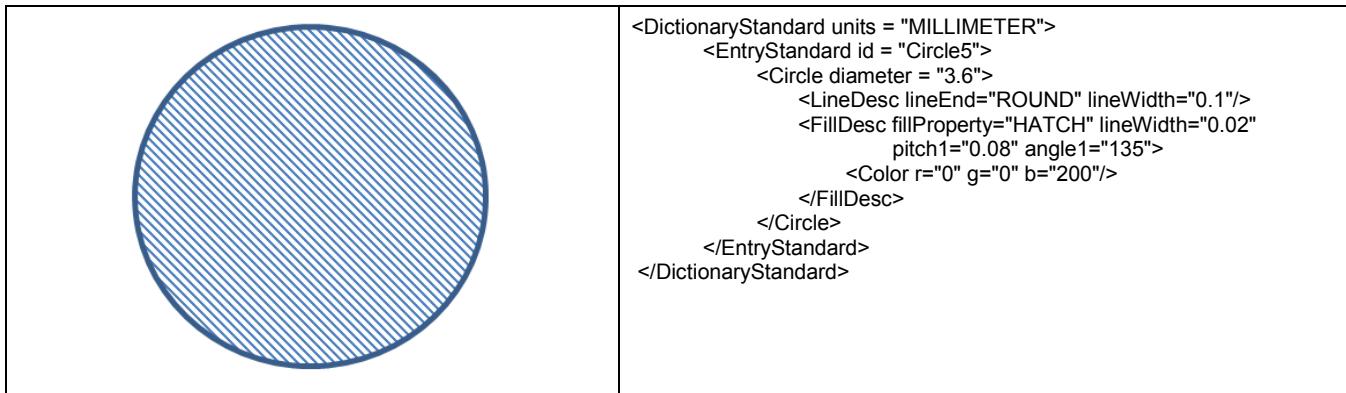
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Butterfly	ButterflyType	A primitive shape (either ROUND or SQUARE) that has two quadrants of the Cartesian coordinate system removed (0 to 90° and 180 to 270°).	1-1
shape	butterflyShapeType	The inner and outer shapes are one of ROUND or SQUARE: ROUND: The inner and outer shapes are like circleDef. SQUARE: The inner and outer shapes are like RectCenterDef with height and width of each shape being equal.	1-1
diameter	nonNegativeDouble Type	The diameter applies to the circular butterfly and is the outer boundary of the butterfly.	0-1
side	nonNegativeDouble Type	The width along the x-axis and the height along the y-axis of a square.	0-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH; otherwise, the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives, any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1

		<pre> <DictionaryStandard units = "MILLIMETER"> <EntryStandard id = "Butterfly1"> <Butterfly shape = "ROUND" diameter = "3.2"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Butterfly2"> <Butterfly shape = "SQUARE" side = "1.8"/> </EntryStandard> </DictionaryStandard> </pre>
--	--	---

4.7.2 StandardPrimitive: Circle

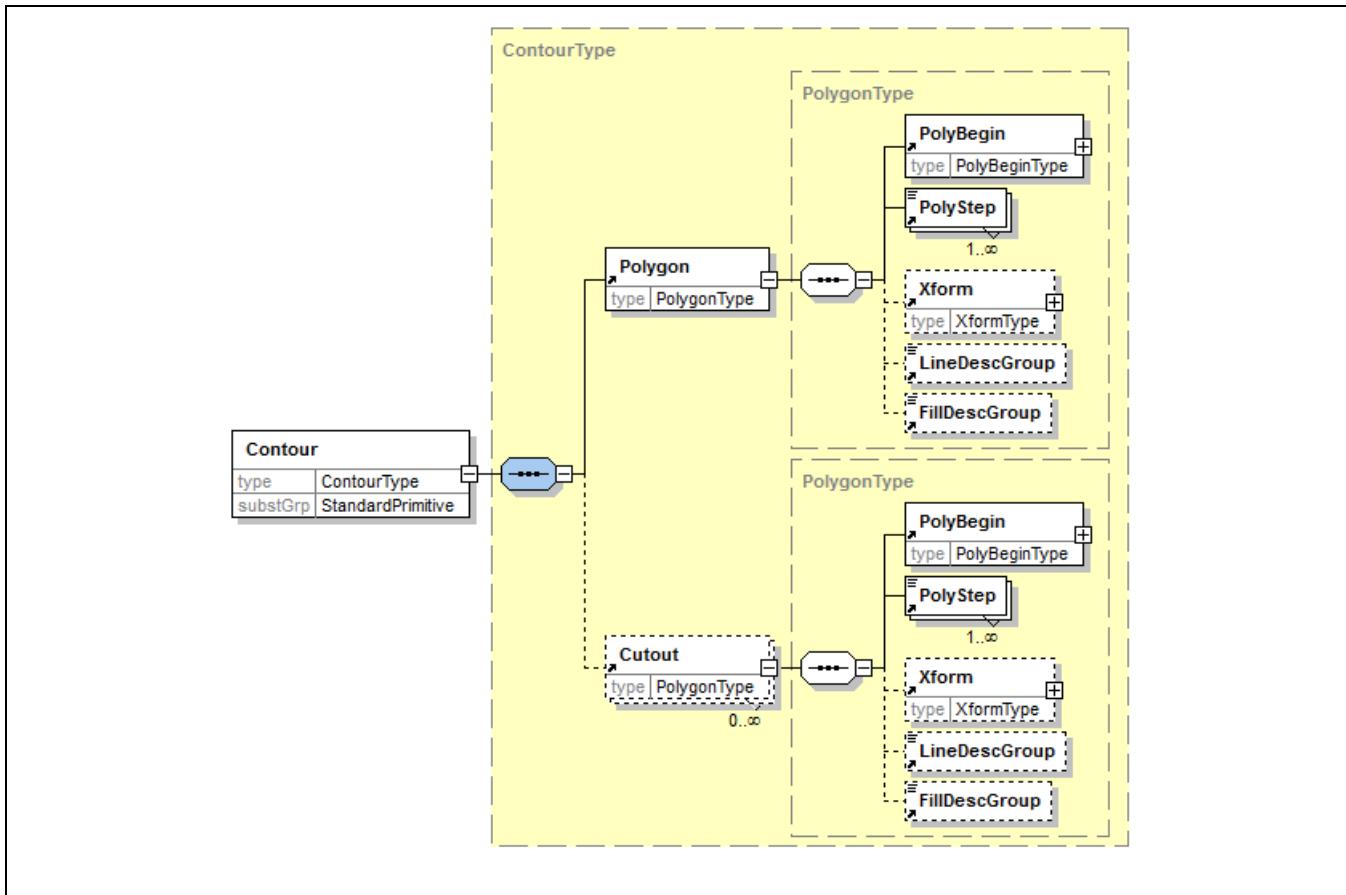
A `Circle` is a `StandardPrimitive` shape that defines a circle by the diameter of the circle. The point of origin is the center of a circle.

				
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description		Occurrence
Circle	CircleType	An embedded element that defines a circular shape consisting of a diameter. The default for <code>FillDesc</code> is <code>FILL</code> without a <code>LineDesc</code> element.		1-1
diameter	nonNegativeDoubleType	The diameter of the circle.		1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.		0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the <code>LineDesc</code> or <code>LineDescRef</code> . The <code>LineDesc</code> specifies the <code>LineWidth</code> , <code>LineEnd</code> and <code>LineProperty</code> characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the <code>Outline</code> , <code>Polyline</code> and <code>Set</code> element definitions. The <code>LineDescRef</code> requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. <code>LineDesc</code> should be used only if <code>FillDesc</code> is present and its' <code>fill</code> property values are <code>HOLLOW</code> , <code>HATCH</code> , or <code>MESH</code> otherwise the <code>LineDesc</code> should be omitted.		0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the <code>FillDesc</code> or <code>FillDescRef</code> . The <code>FillDesc</code> element provides the <code>FillProperties</code> , <code>LineDesc</code> and <code>Color</code> characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the <code>StandardPrimitives</code> , any <code>UserPrimitive</code> closed shape and <code>Set</code> element definitions. The <code>FillDescRef</code> requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file		0-1
		<pre> <DictionaryStandard units = "MILLIMETER"> <EntryStandard id = "Circle1"> <Circle diameter = "3.6"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Circle2"> <Circle diameter = "4.0"/> </EntryStandard> </DictionaryStandard> </pre>		

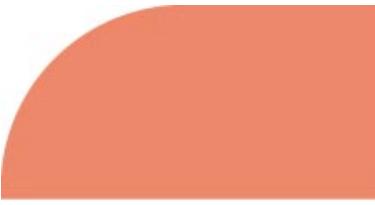
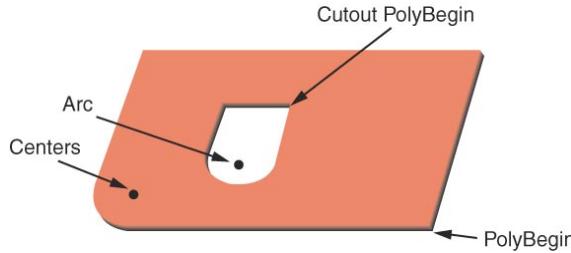
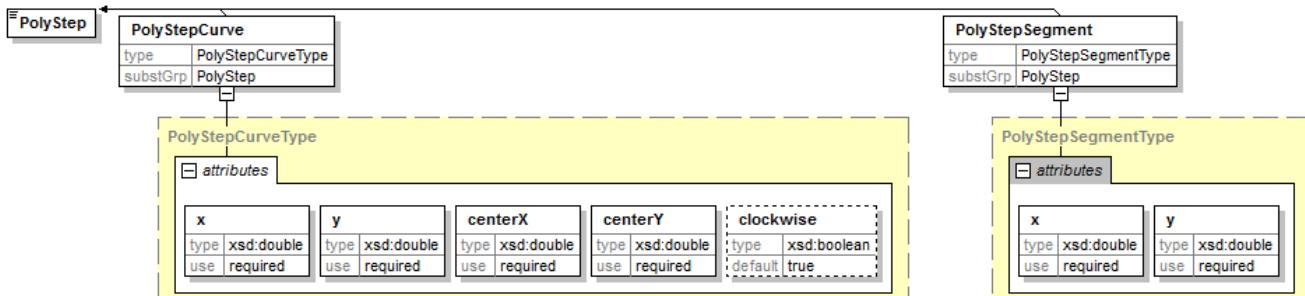


4.7.3 StandardPrimitive: Contour

The **Contour** element is a **StandardPrimitive** shape that defines a sequence of connected edges that form a polygon. An edge can be straight or circular. The **polygon** is a closed shape whose edges do not cross. This same characteristic is also true for **cutout**, which represents the absence of material inside the polygon shape. The coordinates of the **polygon**, **cutout**, and subsequent **cutouts** are defined relative to the local coordinate system of the original **polygon**. The point of origin may be a centroid of the **polygon** or one of the corners that sets the 0/0 coordinate. This is the point used to place the **polygon** or to rotate the image. The **cutout** uses the same coordinates.

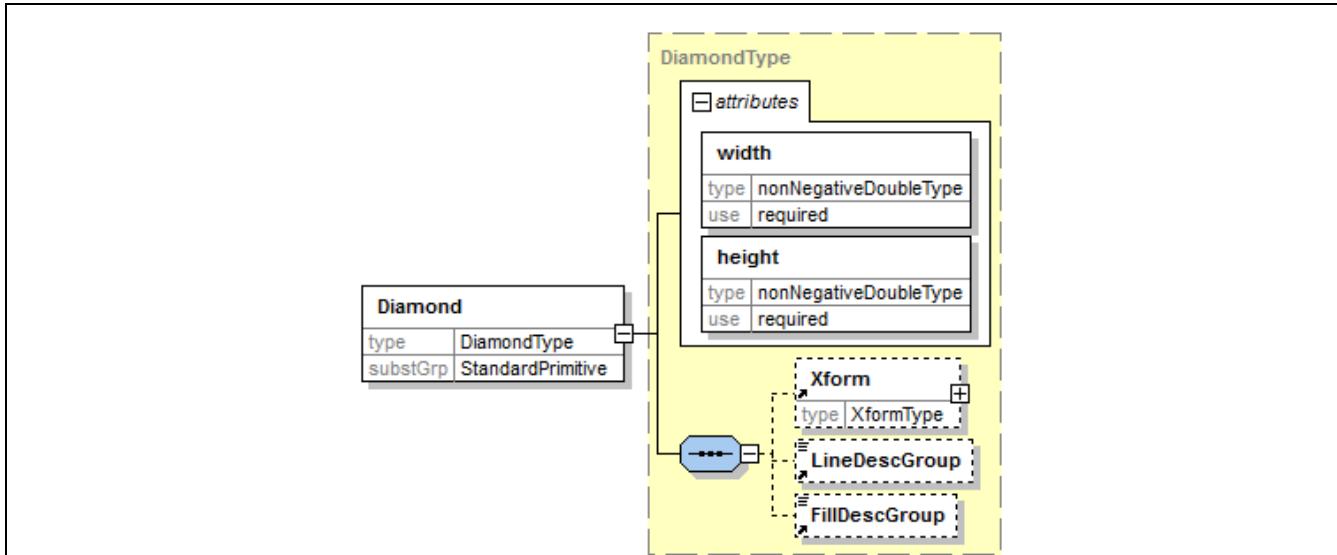


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Contour	ContourType	A sequence of connected edges that form a polygon. An edge can be straight or circular.	1-1
Polygon	PolygonType	A closed shape whose edges do not cross, the coordinates of which are defined relative to the local coordinate system of the polygon. The default for FillDesc is FILL without a LineDesc element.	1-1
PolyBegin	PolyBeginType	The PolyBegin element defines the starting point of the polygon.	1-1
X	Double	The X starting point of the first polygon edge.	1-1
Y	Double	The Y starting point of the first polygon edge.	1-1
PolyStep	ABSTRACT	The PolyStep element is a substitution group that defines a circular (PolyStepCurve) or straight line (PolyStepSegment) continuation of the polygon. The polystep direction may be clockwise or counterclockwise which must be consistent when any Arc description is used as one of the PolyStep elements. Straight or curved line segments must not cross. The final X and final Y coordinate must match those of the PolyBegin element to signify that the shape is closed.	1-n
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives, any UserPrimitive closed shape, and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1
Cutout	CutoutType	A polygon closed shape whose edges do not cross, which adopts the coordinates of the original polygon, however represents the absence of material within the original polygon shape.	0-n
PolyBegin	PolyBeginType	The PolyBegin element defines the starting point of the polygon.	1-1
x	Double	The X starting point of the first polygon edge.	1-1
y	Double	The Y starting point of the first polygon edge.	1-1
PolyStep	ABSTRACT	The PolyStep element is a substitution group that defines a circular (PolyStepCurve) or straight line (PolyStepSegment) continuation of the polygon. The polystep direction may be clockwise or counterclockwise which must be consistent when any Arc description is used as one of the PolyStep elements. Straight or curved line segments must not cross. The final X and final Y coordinate must match those of the PolyBegin element to signify that the shape is closed.	1-n
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1

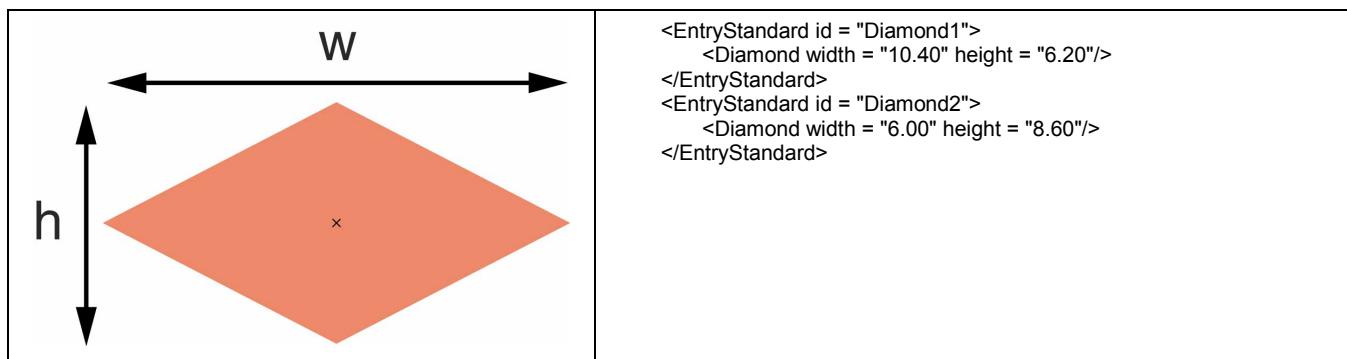
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the <code>FillDesc</code> or <code>FillDescRef</code> . The <code>FillDesc</code> element provides the <code>FillProperties</code> , <code>LineDesc</code> and <code>Color</code> characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the <code>StandardPrimitives</code> , any <code>UserPrimitive</code> closed shape and <code>Set</code> element definitions. The <code>FillDescRef</code> requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1
		 <p>PolyBegin</p> <pre> <DictionaryStandard units = "MILLIMETER"> <EntryStandard id = "Contour1"> <Contour> <Polygon> <PolyBegin x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "0.00" y = "7.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "-8.00" y = "7.00"/> <PolyStepCurve x = "-15.00" y = "0.00" centerX = "-8.00" centerY = "0.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/> </Polygon> </Contour> </EntryStandard> </DictionaryStandard> </pre>	
		 <p>Cutout PolyBegin</p> <p>Arc</p> <p>Centers</p> <p>PolyBegin</p> <pre> <EntryStandard id = "Contour2"> <Contour> <Polygon> <PolyBegin x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "-14.00" y = "0.00"/> <PolyStepCurve x = "-3.00" y = "3.00" centerX = "-14.00" centerY = "3.00" clockwise = "TRUE"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "-17.00" y = "7.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "0.00" y = "7.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/> </Polygon> <Cutout> <PolyBegin x = "-10.00" y = "5.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "-13.00" y = "5.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "-13.00" y = "3.00"/> <PolyStepCurve x = "-10.00" y = "3.00" centerX = "-11.50" centerY = "3.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "-10.00" y = "5.00"/> </Cutout> </Contour> </EntryStandard> </pre>	
		 <pre> classDiagram class PolyStep { <<PolyStepCurve>> <<PolyStepSegment>> } class PolyStepCurve { type PolyStepCurveType substGrp PolyStep } class PolyStepSegment { type PolyStepSegmentType substGrp PolyStep } class PolyStepCurveType { <<PolyStepCurveType>> attributes x type xsd:double use required y type xsd:double use required centerX type xsd:double use required centerY type xsd:double use required clockwise type xsd:boolean use required } class PolyStepSegmentType { <<PolyStepSegmentType>> attributes x type xsd:double use required y type xsd:double use required } </pre>	

4.7.4 StandardPrimitive: Diamond

A Diamond is a 4-sided StandardPrimitive shape. The lengths of the sides of a diamond are always equal. A height and a width dimension specify the diamond. The first line defining the outline of the diamond is drawn between the point that is $\frac{1}{2}$ the height dimension along the positive y-axis and the point that is $\frac{1}{2}$ the width dimension along the x-axis. The same process is used to draw the other three lines of the diamond in each of the remaining quadrants. The Diamond is positioned with one of its corners facing the North direction.

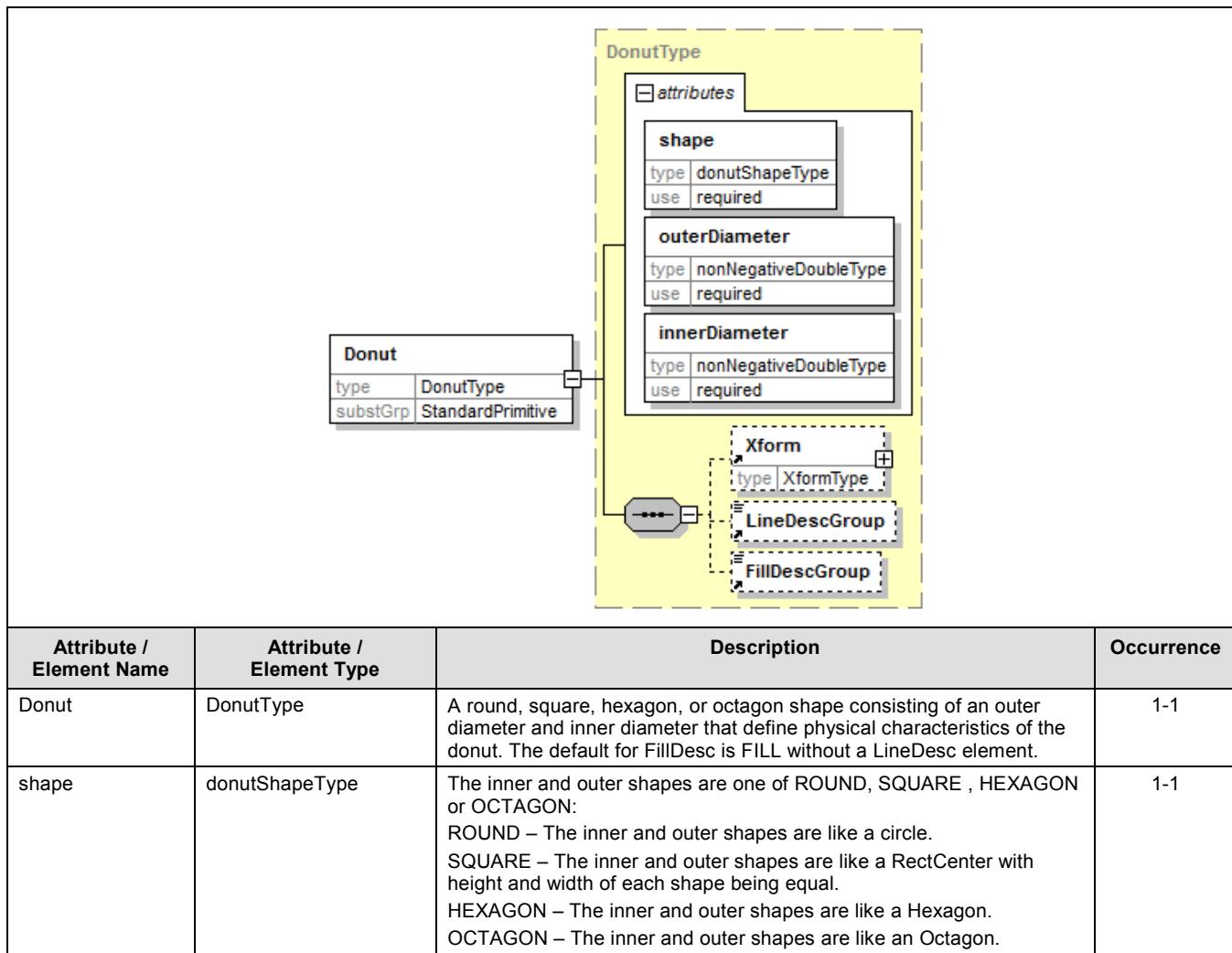


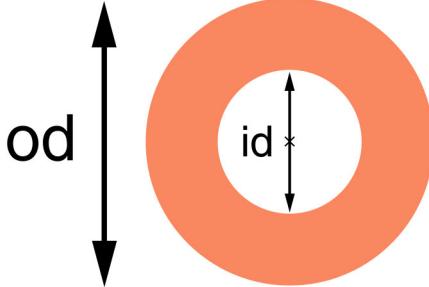
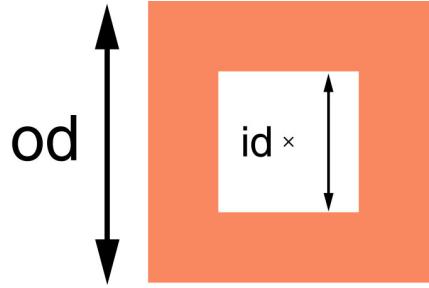
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Diamond	DiamondType	A primitive shape with four equal sides that are extended from its horizontal center to its vertical center. The lines converge into a point both horizontally and vertically. The overall description of the shape is controlled by the width (distance between vertical point) and the height (distance between horizontal point). The default for FillDesc is FILL without a LineDesc element.	1-1
width	nonNegativeDouble Type	The length of the diamond along, and centered on, the x-axis.	1-1
height	nonNegativeDouble Type	The length of the diamond along, and centered on, the y-axis.	1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives , any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1

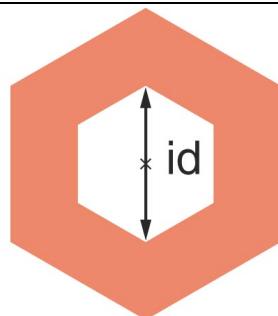
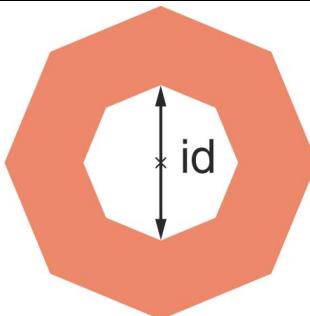


4.7.5 StandardPrimitive: Donut

A **Donut** is a **StandardPrimitive** shape composed of two concentric identical shapes. The shapes are the same but of different sizes with the outer diameter (OD) being larger than the inner diameter (ID). The shapes must be identical and may be square, round, hexagonal, or octagonal. The center of a **Donut** is also the point of origin of the primitive. The hexagonal and octagonal shapes are defined with a point of the shape facing the North direction.

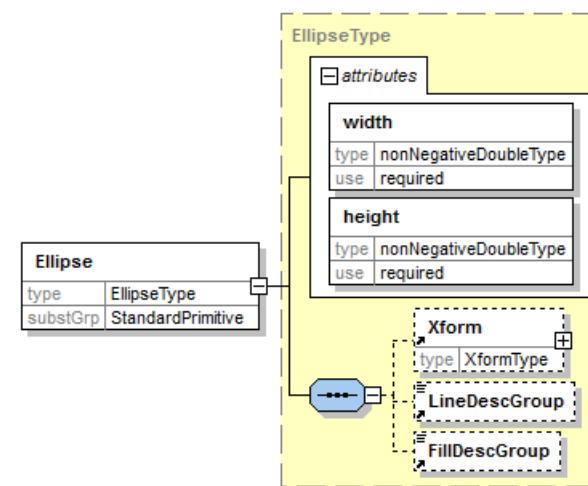


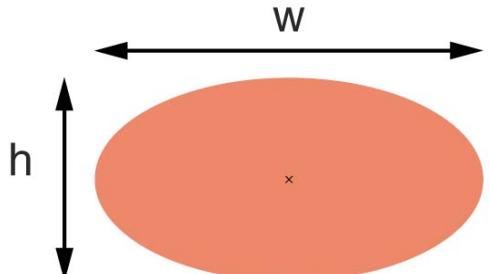
outerDiameter	nonNegativeDouble Type	<p>The outer boundary of the filled region. The meaning based on donutShape:</p> <p>ROUND –The diameter of the circle is the outer boundary of the donut. The center of the circle is at the origin of the donut.</p> <p>SQUARE –The width along the x-axis and the height along the y-axis of a square at the inner boundary of the donut. The center of the square is at the origin.</p> <p>HEXAGON – The point-to-point measurement on the x-axis of the hexagon that forms the outer boundary of the donut.</p> <p>OCTAGON – The point-to-point measurement on the x-axis of the octagon that forms the outer boundary of the donut.</p>	1-1
innerDiameter	nonNegativeDouble Type	<p>The inner boundary of the filled region. The meaning based on donutShape :</p> <p>ROUND – The diameter of the circle is the inner boundary of the donut. The center of the circle is at the origin of the donut.</p> <p>SQUARE – The width along the x-axis and height along the y-axis of a square at the inner boundary of the donut. The center of the square is at the origin.</p> <p>HEXAGON – The point-to-point measurement on the x-axis of the hexagon that forms the inner boundary of the donut.</p> <p>OCTAGON – the point-to-point measurement on the x-axis of the octagon that forms the inner boundary of the donut.</p>	1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives, any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1
		<pre> <EntryStandard id = "Donut1"> <Donut shape = "ROUND" outerDiameter = "6.8" innerDiameter = "4.8"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Donut2"> <Donut shape = "ROUND" outerDiameter = "8.6" innerDiameter = "7.4"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>	
		<pre> <EntryStandard id = "Donut3"> <Donut shape = "SQUARE" outerDiameter = "6.8" innerDiameter = "5.0"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Donut4"> <Donut shape = "SQUARE" outerDiameter = "8.20" innerDiameter = "6.20"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>	

 <p>od</p> <p>id</p>	<pre> <EntryStandard id = "Donut5"> <Donut shape = "HEXAGON" outerDiameter = "12.40" innerDiameter = "10.20"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Donut6"> <Donut shape = "HEXAGON" outerDiameter = "10.00" innerDiameter = "8.00"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>
 <p>od</p> <p>id</p>	<pre> <EntryStandard id = "Donut7"> <Donut shape = "OCTAGON" outerDiameter = "11.60" innerDiameter = "10.00"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Donut8"> <Donut shape = "OCTAGON" outerDiameter = "12.00" innerDiameter = "10.00"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>

4.7.6 StandardPrimitive: Ellipse

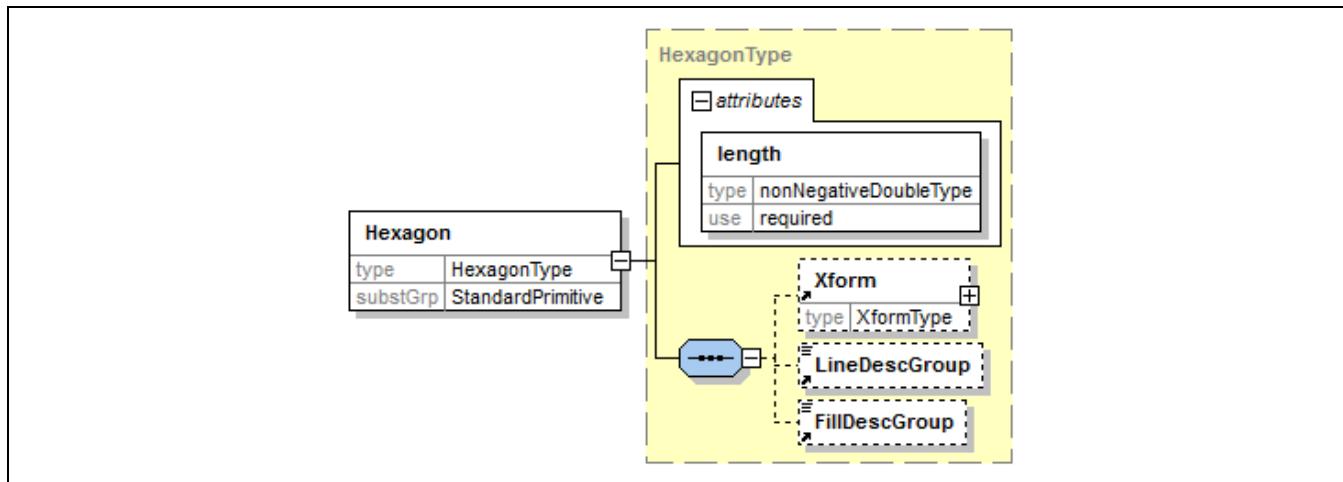
The Ellipse is a StandardPrimitive shape that is an ellipse with the standard ellipse characteristics. The shape is defined by the width and height dimension. The Ellipse is positioned with its point of origin at the center of the width and height dimensions.

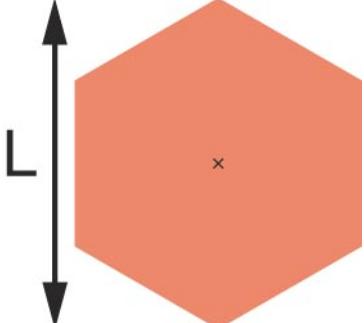
	<p>Attribute / Element Name</p> <p>Attribute / Element Type</p> <p>Description</p> <p>Occurrence</p>
<p>Ellipse</p> <p>type: EllipseType</p> <p>substGrp: StandardPrimitive</p>	<p>EllipseType</p> <p>width</p> <p>height</p> <p>Xform</p> <p>LineDescGroup</p> <p>FillDescGroup</p> <p>An elliptical shape that follows the standard ellipse characteristics and is defined by a width and height dimension, establishing the overall limits of the feature. The default for FillDesc is FILL without a LineDesc element.</p> <p>1-1</p>
<p>width</p>	<p>nonNegativeDoubleType</p> <p>The height of the ellipse on the y-axis.</p> <p>1-1</p>
<p>height</p>	<p>nonNegativeDoubleType</p> <p>The width of the ellipse on the x-axis.</p> <p>1-1</p>

Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives , any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1
			<pre> <EntryStandard id = "Ellipse1"> <Ellipse width = "12.60" height = "6.20"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Ellipse2"> <Ellipse width = "6.20" height = "12.60"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Ellipse3"> <Ellipse width = "14.80" height = "4.20"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Ellipse4"> <Ellipse width = "10.60" height = "14.20"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>

4.7.7 StandardPrimitive: Hexagon

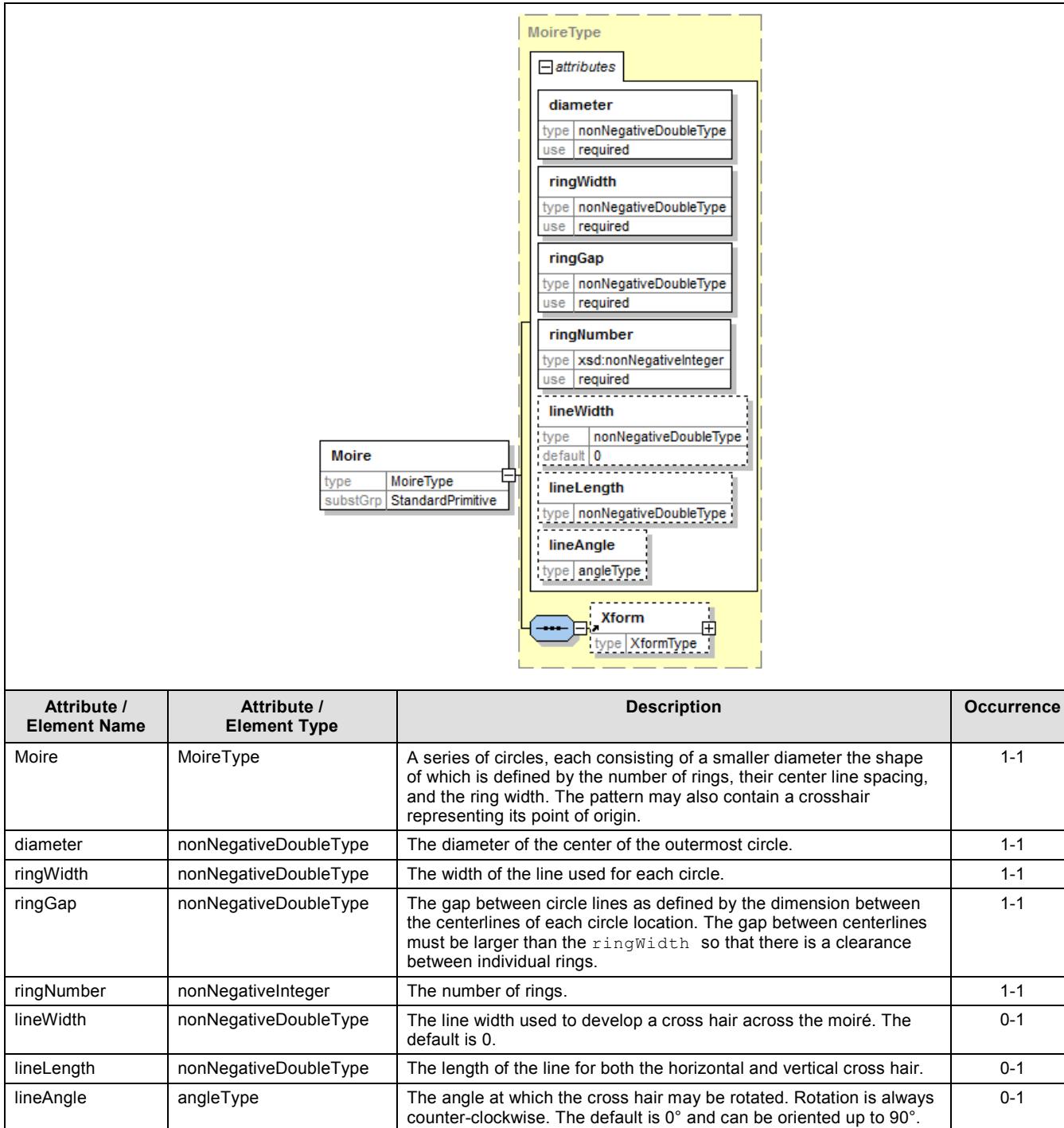
A Hexagon is a six-sided StandardPrimitive shape with each of the sides being equal in length and with all angles between adjacent sides also being equal. The orientation of the hexagon is in accordance with one of its points facing the North direction. Only one dimension is required and that is the length across the points. Rotation is accomplished using Xform at the time the hexagon is instantiated.

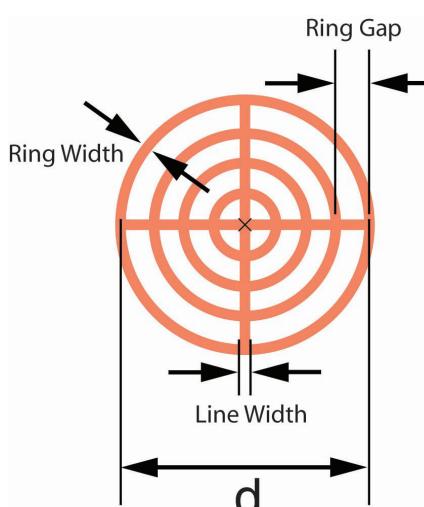


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Hexagon	HexagonType	A six-sided primitive shape with all sides being equal and which is defined by the length (L) across the points. The position of the octagon is in accordance with one of the points facing North. The default for FillDesc is FILL without a LineDesc element.	0-1
length	nonNegativeDouble Type	The length (L) between any two opposing corner points of the hexagon.	1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives , any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1
		<pre> <EntryStandard id = "Hexagon1"> <Hexagon length = "12.8"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Hexagon2"> <Hexagon length = "11.8"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Hexagon3"> <Hexagon length = "10.8"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "hexagon4"> <Hexagon length = "9.8"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>	

4.7.8 StandardPrimitive: Moire

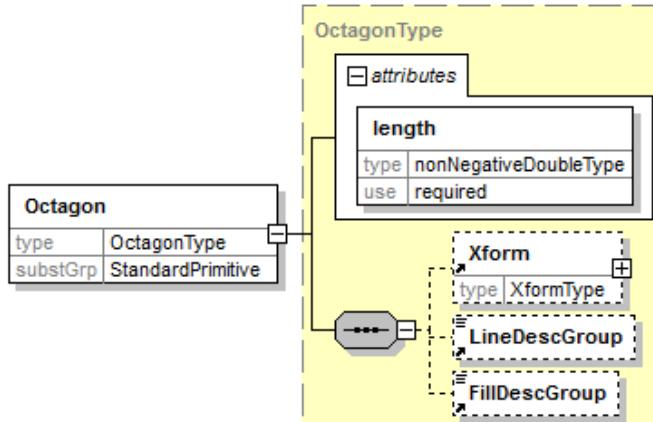
The Moire is a primitive shape that consists of a series of circles each with a smaller diameter. The Moire is used as an assist in image registration. The Moire may be only circles or may also contain a crosshair line to assist in human acknowledgement of moiré alignment. The shape is defined by the number of rings, their center line spacing and the ring line width. The line spacing must be larger than the line width. The crosshair lines can also be described. The Moire pattern is positioned using its point of origin which is the center of the ring pattern.

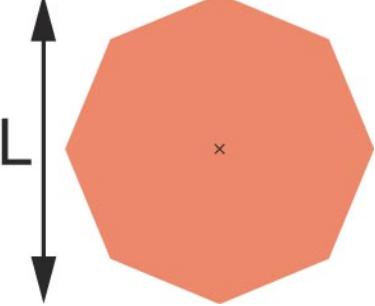


Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
		<pre> <EntryStandard id = "Moire1"> <Moire diameter = "8.4" ringWidth = "0.3" ringGap = "0.6" ringNumber = "5" lineWidth = "0.3" lineLength = "8.2" lineAngle = "0"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Moire2"> <Moire diameter = "6.0" ringWidth = "0.2" ringGap = "0.4" ringNumber = "4" lineWidth = "0.2" lineLength = "5.8" lineAngle = "45"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>	

4.7.9 StandardPrimitive: Octagon

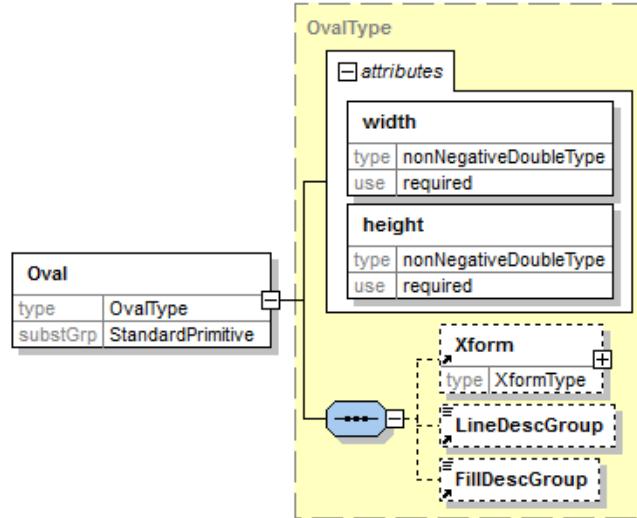
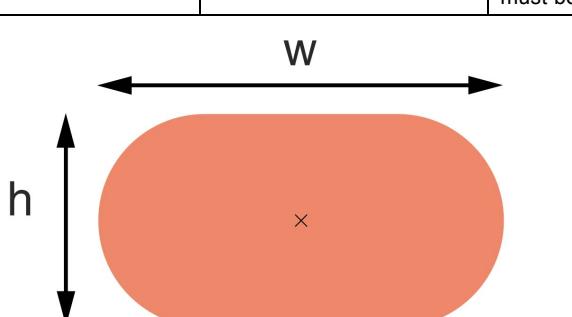
An Octagon is an eight-sided StandardPrimitive shape with each of the sides being equal in length and with all angles between adjacent sides also being equal. The orientation of the Octagon is in accordance with one of its points facing the North direction. Only one dimension is required and that is the length across the points. Rotation is accomplished using Xform at the time the Octagon is instanced.

			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Octagon	OctagonType	An eight-sided primitive shape with all sides being equal and which is defined by the length (L) across the points. The position of the octagon is in accordance with one of its points facing north. The default for FillDesc is FILL without a LineDesc element.	0-1
length	nonNegativeDoubleType	The length (L) between any two opposing corner points of the octagon.	0-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1

LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives, any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1
		<pre> <EntryStandard id = "Octagon1"> <Octagon length = "12.8"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Octagon2"> <Octagon length = "11.8"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Octagon3"> <Octagon length = "10.8"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Octagon4"> <Octagon length = "9.8"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>	

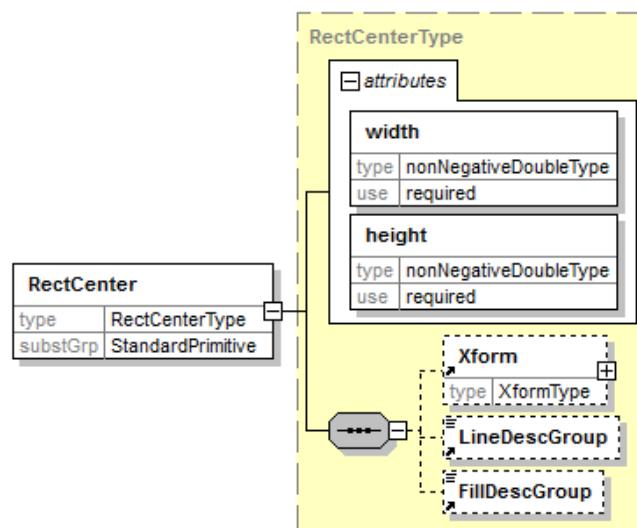
4.7.10 StandardPrimitive: Oval

An Oval is a StandardPrimitive shape that defines a rectangle with a complete radius (180 degree arc) at each end. The base rectangle is defined by a width attribute and a height attribute with the center of the rectangle being centered on both the height and width dimensions. The center of the Oval rectangle is the point of origin of the shape. The rectangle is defined with edges parallel to the x-axis and y-axis relative to the local coordinate system. Rotation is about the point of origin. The Oval is defined with the radius located along the y-axis sides. The radius on the ends of the oval shaped rectangle is always equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ the height.

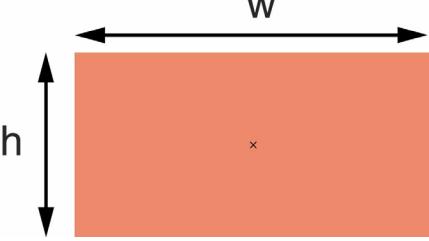
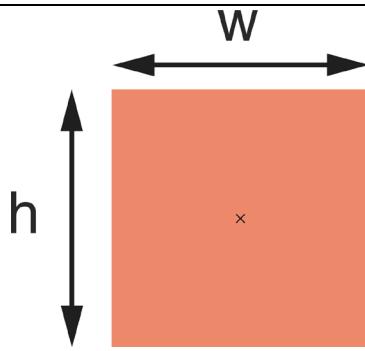
				
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description		Occurrence
Oval	OvalType	A rectangle defined by a width and height attribute with the center of the rectangle being centered on both the height and width dimensions. The default for FillDesc is FILL without a LineDesc element.		1-1
width	nonNegativeDoubleType	The length of the rectangle about the x-axis.		1-1
height	nonNegativeDoubleType	The length of the rectangle about the y-axis. It is an error to define a height greater than the width.		1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.		0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.		0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives , any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file		0-1
		<pre> <EntryStandard id = "Oval1"> <Oval width = "10.6" height = "6.4"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Oval2"> <Oval width = "8.4" height = "8.4"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Oval3"> <Oval width = "16.4" height = "5.6"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "Oval4"> <Oval width = "14.8" height = "6.8"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>		

4.7.11 StandardPrimitive: RectCenter

A RectCenter is a primitive shape that defines a rectangle by a width attribute and a height attribute with the center of the rectangle being centered on both the height and width dimensions. The center of the RectCenter rectangle is the point of origin of the shape. The rectangle is defined with edges parallel to the x-axis and y-axis relative to the local coordinate system. Rotation is about the point of origin. The RectCenter is also used to represent a square shape. The characteristics of the square would be to have the width and height equal.

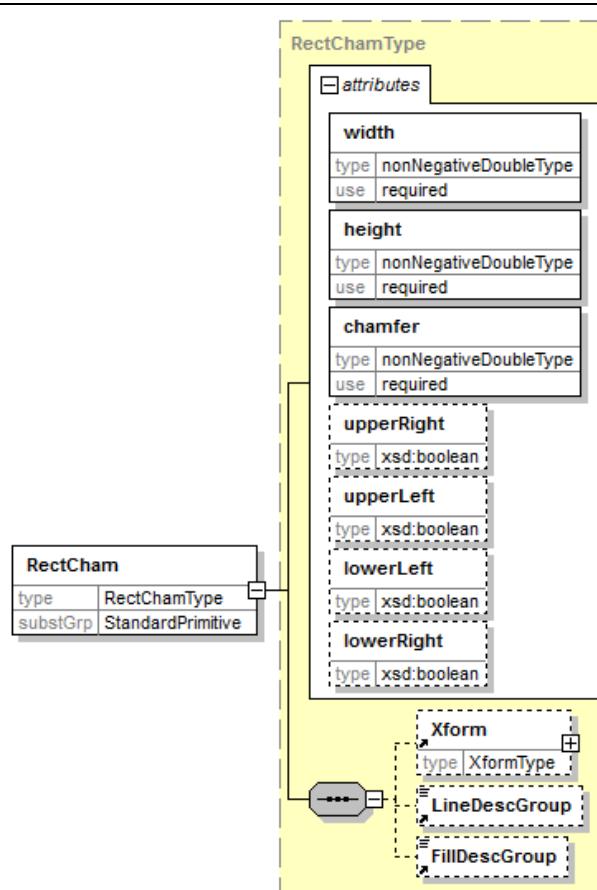


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
RectCenter	RectCenterType	The characteristics of a rectangle defined by a width and height dimension consistent with a horizontal position on the Cartesian coordinate system. The default for FillDesc is FILL without a LineDesc element.	1-1
width	nonNegativeDoubleType	The length of the rectangle about the x-axis.	1-1
height	nonNegativeDoubleType	The length of the rectangle about the y-axis.	1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives, any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1

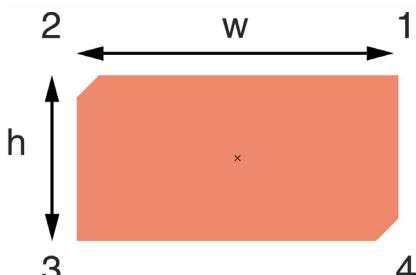
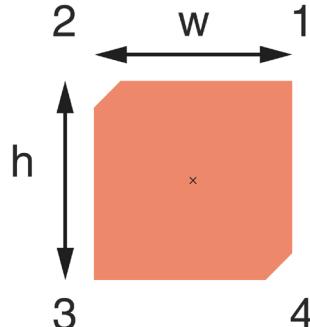
	<pre><EntryStandard id = "RectangleC1"> <RectCenter width = "16.8" height = "6.4"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "RectangleC2"> <RectCenter width = "6.4" height = "12.8"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "RectangleC3"> <RectCenter width = "10.4" height = "6.4"/> </EntryStandard></pre>
	<pre><EntryStandard id = "RectangleSquare1"> <RectCenter width = "8.4" height = "8.4"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "RectangleSquare2"> <RectCenter width = "10.0" height = "10.0"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "RectangleSquare3"> <RectCenter width = "4.8" height = "4.8"/> </EntryStandard></pre>

4.7.12 StandardPrimitive: RectCham

A `RectCham` is a `StandardPrimitive` shape that defines a rectangle with chamfered corners. The base rectangle is defined by a `width` attribute and a `height` attribute with the center of the rectangle being centered on both the height and width dimensions. The center of the `RectCham` rectangle is the point of origin of the shape. The rectangle is defined with edges parallel to the x-axis and y-axis relative to the local coordinate system. Rotation is about the point of origin. The `RectCham` is also used to represent a square shape with chamfered corners. The characteristics of the square would be to have the width and height equal.

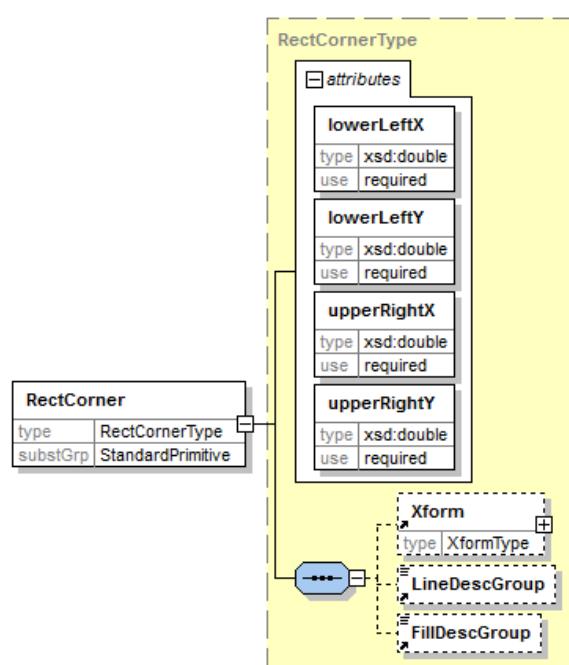


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
RectCham	RectChamType	A rectangle with one or more corners chamfered. The user has the option to define any of the corners as containing the chamfer as well as the chamfered dimensions. A minimum of one (1) chamfered corner must be defined. All chamfers (or opportunities for chamfers) must be identical in size. The default for <code>FillDesc</code> is <code>FILL</code> without a <code>LineDesc</code> element.	1-1
width	nonNegativeDouble Type	The length of the rectangle about the x-axis.	1-1
height	nonNegativeDouble Type	The length of the rectangle about the y-axis.	1-1
chamfer	nonNegativeDouble Type	<p>The length measured from each corner that defines 4 points along the width and 4 points along the height. The corners are clipped between the points at each corner. The resulting chamfers are always cut at 45° relative to the local coordinate system.</p> <p>It is an error to define the value of <code>chamfer</code> to be greater than 1/2 the height or 1/2 the width.</p>	1-1

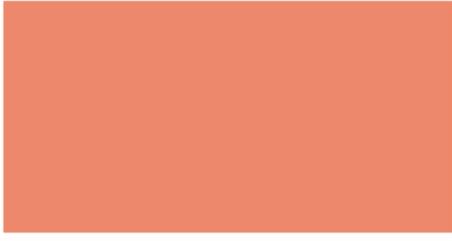
upperRight	Boolean	The upper right corner (1).	0-1
upperLeft	Boolean	The upper left corner (2).	0-1
lowerLeft	Boolean	The lower left corner (3).	0-1
lowerRight	Boolean	The lower right corner (4).	0-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives , any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1
		<pre> <EntryStandard id = "ChamferedRect1"> <RectCham width = "12.6" height = "8.4" chamfer = "2.0" upperLeft = "TRUE" lowerRight = "TRUE" upperRight = "FALSE" lowerLeft = "FALSE"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "ChamferedRect2"> <RectCham width = "10.6" height = "6.2" chamfer = "2.0" upperRight = "TRUE" upperLeft = "TRUE" lowerLeft = "TRUE" lowerRight = "TRUE"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>	
		<pre> <EntryStandard id = "ChamferedSquare1"> <RectCham width = "8.4" height = "8.4" chamfer = "2.0" upperRight = "TRUE" lowerLeft = "TRUE" lowerRight = "FALSE" upperLeft = "FALSE"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "ChamferedSquare2"> <RectCham width = "6.6" height = "6.6" chamfer = "1.8" upperRight = "TRUE" upperLeft = "TRUE" lowerLeft = "TRUE" lowerRight = "TRUE"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>	

4.7.13 StandardPrimitive: RectCorner

A `RectCorner` is a `StandardPrimitive` shape that defines a rectangle. The element describes the lower left and upper right corners of the rectangle. The point of origin of a `RectCorner` rectangle is (0, 0). This can be coincident with attribute `lowerLeftX` and `lowerLeftY`, the lower left corner of the rectangle, but there is no requirement for that location to be at (0, 0). The rectangle is defined with edges parallel to the x-axis and y-axis relative to the local coordinate system. Rotation is about the point of origin, not about the lower left or upper right corners.

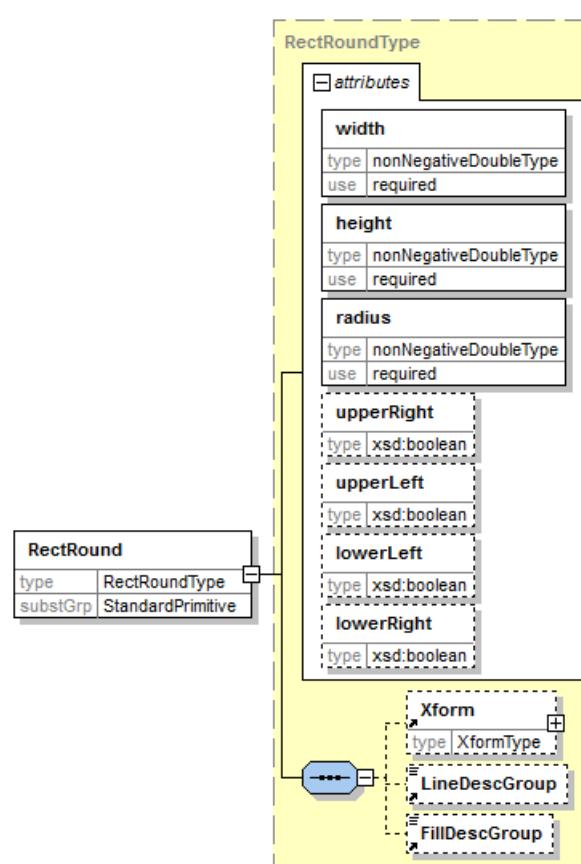


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
RectCorner	RectCornerType	A constraining rectangular area (bounding box) that describes a rectangle consistent with a horizontal position on the Cartesian coordinate system. The default for <code>FillDesc</code> is <code>FILL</code> without a <code>LineDesc</code> element.	1-1
lowerLeftX	double	The lower left hand x dimension of the rectangular area shape.	1-1
lowerLeftY	double	The lower left hand y dimension of the rectangular area shape.	1-1
upperRightX	double	The upper right hand x dimension of the rectangular area shape.	1-1
upperRightY	double	The upper right hand y dimension of the rectangular area shape.	1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the <code>LineDesc</code> or <code>LineDescRef</code> . The <code>LineDesc</code> specifies the <code>LineWidth</code> , <code>LineEnd</code> and <code>LineProperty</code> characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the <code>Outline</code> , <code>Polyline</code> and <code>Set</code> element definitions. The <code>LineDescRef</code> requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. <code>LineDesc</code> should be used only if <code>FillDesc</code> is present and its' fill property values are <code>HOLLOW</code> , <code>HATCH</code> , or <code>MESH</code> otherwise the <code>LineDesc</code> should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the <code>FillDesc</code> or <code>FillDescRef</code> . The <code>FillDesc</code> element provides the <code>FillProperties</code> , <code>LineDesc</code> and <code>Color</code> characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the <code>StandardPrimitives</code> , any <code>UserPrimitive</code> closed shape and <code>Set</code> element definitions. The <code>FillDescRef</code> requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1

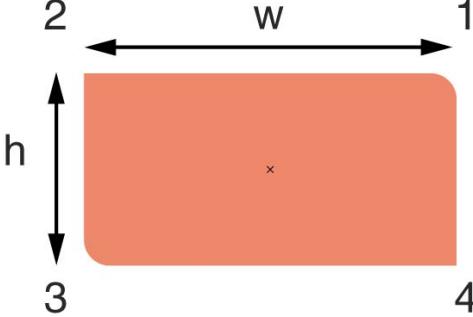
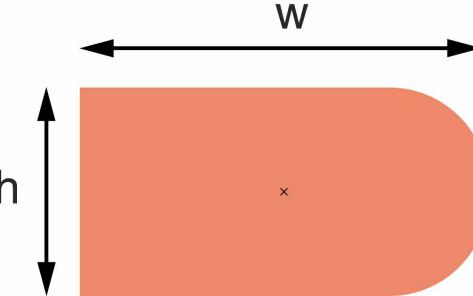
 Upper right XY	<pre><EntryStandard id = "CorneredRectangle1"> <RectCorner lowerLeftX = "0.0" lowerLeftY = "0.0" upperRightX = "12.6" upperRightY = "6.8"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "CorneredRectangle2"> <RectCorner lowerLeftX = "-6.4" lowerLeftY = "-3.2" upperRightX = "6.4" upperRightY = "3.2"/> </EntryStandard></pre>
 Lower left XY	<pre><EntryStandard id = "CorneredSquare1"> <RectCorner lowerLeftX = "0.0" lowerLeftY = "0.0" upperRightX = "8.4" upperRightY = "8.4"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "CorneredSquare2"> <RectCorner lowerLeftX = "-4.6" lowerLeftY = "-4.6" upperRightX = "4.6" upperRightY = "4.6"/> </EntryStandard></pre>

4.7.14 StandardPrimitive: RectRound

A RectRound is a StandardPrimitive shape that defines a rectangle with radius corners. The base rectangle is defined by a width attribute and a height attribute with the center of the rectangle being centered on both the height and width dimensions. The center of the RectRound rectangle is the point of origin of the shape. The rectangle is defined with edges parallel to the x-axis and y-axis relative to the local coordinate system. Rotation is about the point of origin. The RectRound is also used to represent a square shape with rounded corners. The characteristics of the square would be to have the width and height equal.



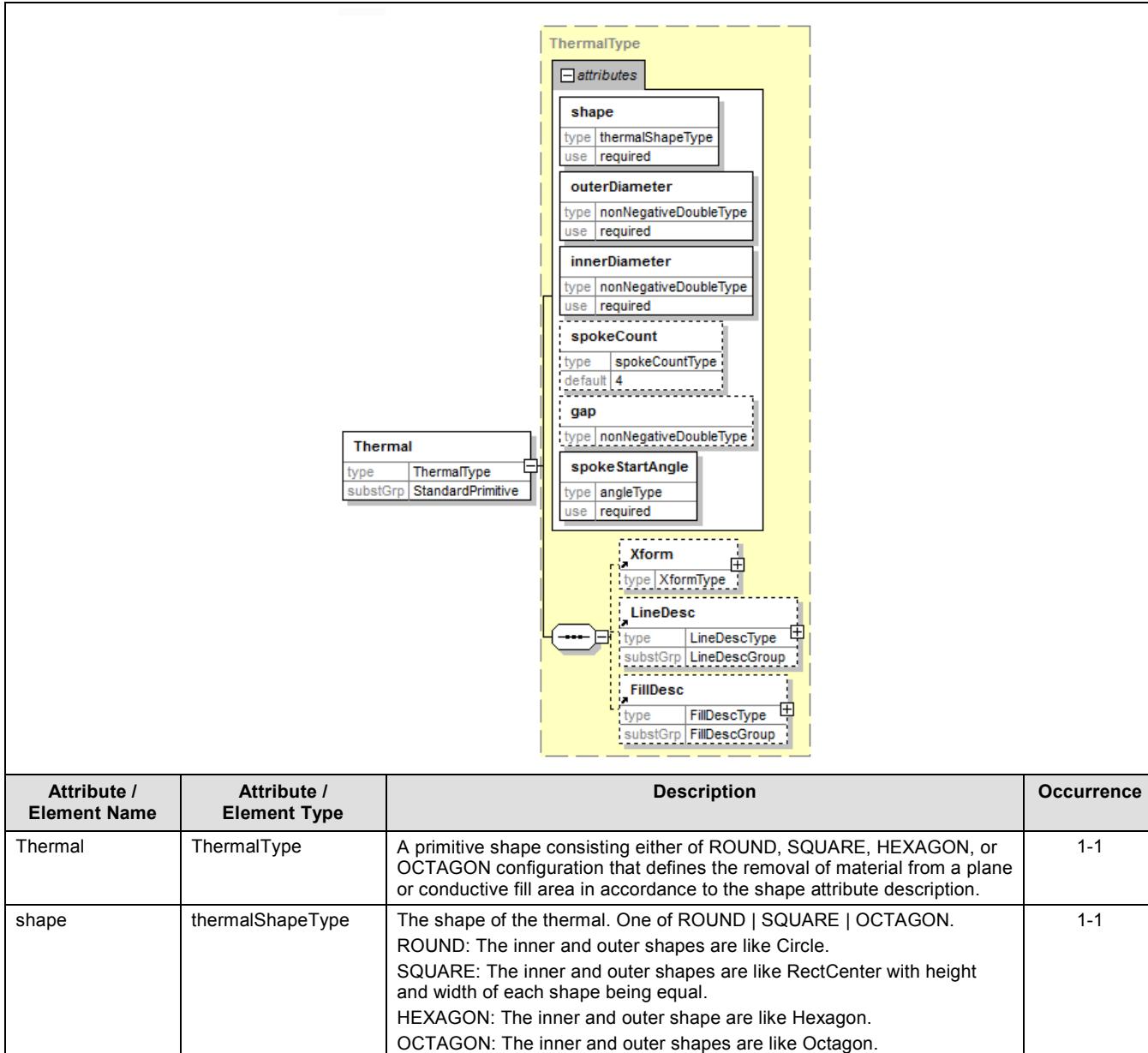
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
RectRound	RectRoundType	A rectangle with one or more corners rounded. The user has the option to define any of the corners as containing the radius as well as the radiused dimensions. A minimum of one (1) rounded corner must be defined.. All corners (or opportunities for corners) must be identical in size. The default for FillDesc is FILL without a LineDesc element.	1-1
width	nonNegativeDoubleType	The length of the rectangle about the x-axis.	1-1
height	nonNegativeDoubleType	The length of the rectangle about the y-axis.	1-1
radius	nonNegativeDoubleType	The radius to be trimmed from the four corners of the rectangle. It is an error to define a radius that is greater than $\frac{1}{2}$ the height value or $\frac{1}{2}$ the width value.	1-1
upperRight	boolean	The upper right corner (1).	0-1
upperLeft	boolean	The upper left corner (2).	0-1
lowerLeft	boolean	The lower left corner (3).	0-1
lowerRight	boolean	The lower right corner (4).	0-1

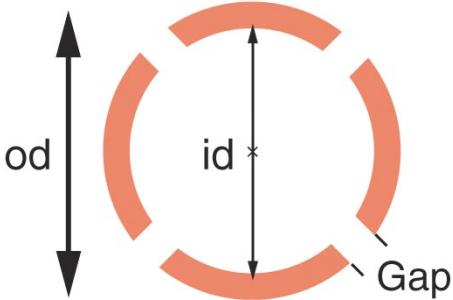
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives , any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1
			<pre><EntryStandard id = "RoundedDshape1"> <RectRound width = "10.2" height = "6.4" radius = "3.2" upperRight = "TRUE" lowerLeft = "TRUE" lowerRight = "FALSE" upperLeft = "FALSE"/> </EntryStandard></pre>
			<pre><EntryStandard id = "RoundedDshape2"> <RectRound width = "4.8" height = "4.8" radius = "2.4" upperRight = "TRUE" lowerRight = "TRUE" upperLeft = "FALSE" lowerLeft = "FALSE"/> </EntryStandard></pre>

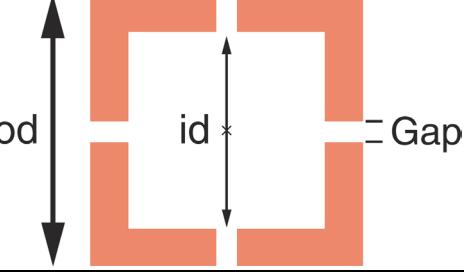
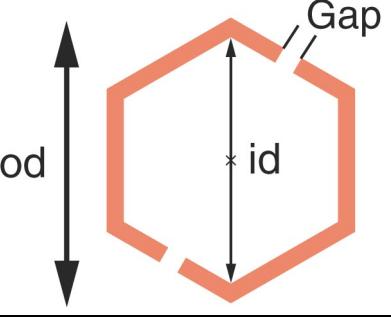
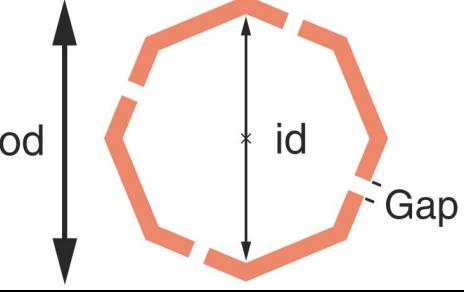
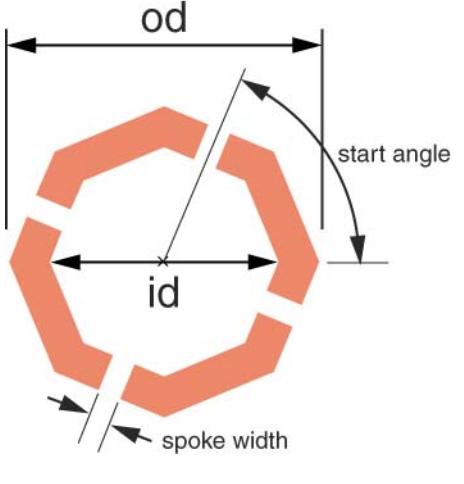
4.7.15 StandardPrimitive: Thermal

A Thermal is a StandardPrimitive shape that historically was used to remove material from a plane, conductive filled area or around a plated through hole. The Thermal shapes include square, round, hexagonal, or octagonal, and have varying numbers of spokes. The center of a thermal is the point of origin of the primitive.

A spokeless thermal can be used for nonfunctional lands on an innerlayer plane, where the land is not connected to the plane. IPC-2581 defines these using the Thermal element with a spoke count of zero. These are similar to a Donut except that they remove material. Many thermal primitive configurations can be generated using different spoke numbers and end types.

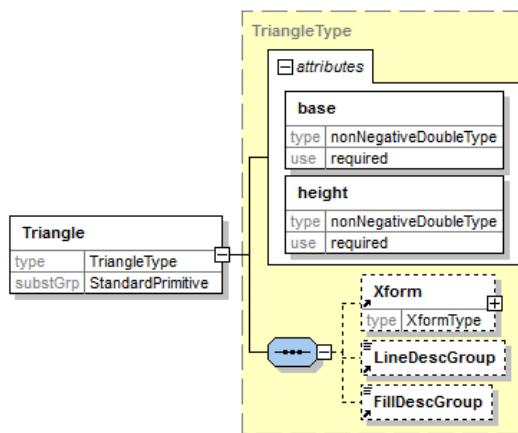


outerDiameter	nonNegativeDouble Type	<p>The outer boundary of the filled region. The meaning based on the shape attribute:</p> <p>ROUND: The diameter of the circle is the outer boundary of the thermal. The center of the circle is at the origin of the thermal.</p> <p>SQUARE: The width along the x-axis and the height along the y-axis of a square at the inner boundary of the thermal. The center of the square is at the origin.</p> <p>HEXAGON: The point-to-point measurement (L) on the x-axis of the hexagon that forms the outer boundary of the thermal.</p> <p>OCTAGON: The point-to-point (L) measurement on the x-axis of the octagon that forms the outer boundary of the thermal.</p>	1-1
innerDiameter	nonNegativeDouble Type	<p>The inner boundary of the filled region. The meaning based on the shape attribute:</p> <p>ROUND: The diameter of the circle is the inner boundary of the thermal. The center of the circle is at the origin of the thermal.</p> <p>SQUARE: The width along the x-axis and the height along the y-axis of a square at the inner boundary of the thermal. The center of the square is at the origin.</p> <p>HEXAGON: The point-to-point measurement on the x-axis of the hexagon that forms the inner boundary of the thermal.</p> <p>OCTAGON: The point-to-point measurement on the x-axis of the octagon that forms the inner boundary of the thermal.</p>	1-1
spokeCount	spokeCountType	<p>The number of cutouts allowed in the inner and outer shapes.</p> <p>ROUND: must be 0, 2, 3, or 4 (the default is 4)</p> <p>SQUARE: must be 0, 2, or 4 (the default is 4)</p> <p>HEXAGON: must be 0, 2, or 3 (the default is 3)</p> <p>OCTAGON: must be 0, 2, or 4 (the default is 4)</p> <p>If the <code>spokeCount</code> is defined as 0 (zero), the other three optional parameters do not apply. The spokeless thermal has a shape like a donut shape.</p>	0-1
gap	nonNegativeDouble Type	The minimum distance between the sides of a spoke cut. The default value is the <code>innerDiameter</code> subtracted from the <code>outerDiameter</code> .	0-1
spokeStartAngle	angleType	The angle in counterclockwise direction from the x-axis at which the first spoke is cut. The default angle is 45° counterclockwise from the x-axis.	1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives, any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1
		<pre> <EntryStandard id = "ThermalRound1"> <Thermal shape = "ROUND" outerDiameter = "10.6" innerDiameter = "6.0." spokeCount = "4" gap = "2.0" spokeStartAngle = "45.00"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "ThermalRound2"> <Thermal shape = "ROUND" outerDiameter = "12.0" innerDiameter = "8.0" spokeCount = "4" gap = "2.0" spokeStartAngle = "0.00"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>	

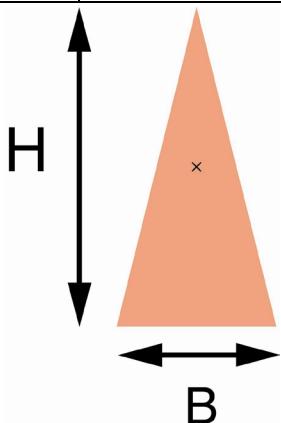
 <p>od</p> <p>id</p> <p>Gap</p>	<pre> <EntryStandard id = "ThermalSquare1"> <Thermal shape = "SQUARE" outerDiameter = "10.8" innerDiameter = "6.0" spokeCount = "4" gap = "2.4" spokeStartAngle = "0.00"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "ThermalSquare2"> <Thermal shape = "SQUARE" outerDiameter = "12.8" innerDiameter = "8.0" spokeCount = "4" gap = "2.4" spokeStartAngle = "0.00"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>
 <p>od</p> <p>id</p> <p>Gap</p>	<pre> <EntryStandard id = "ThermalHex1"> <Thermal shape = "HEXAGON" outerDiameter = "10.8" innerDiameter = "6.4" spokeCount = "4" gap = "2.0" spokeStartAngle = "45.00"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "ThermalHex2"> <Thermal shape = "HEXAGON" outerDiameter = "12.0" innerDiameter = "8.0" spokeCount = "4" gap = "2.0" spokeStartAngle = "45.00"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>
 <p>od</p> <p>id</p> <p>Gap</p>	<pre> <EntryStandard id = "ThermalOct1"> <Thermal shape = "OCTAGON" outerDiameter = "10.6" innerDiameter = "6.6" spokeCount = "4" gap = "2.0" spokeStartAngle = "60.00"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "ThermalOct2"> <Thermal shape = "OCTAGON" outerDiameter = "12.0" innerDiameter = "8.0" spokeCount = "4" gap = "2.0" spokeStartAngle = "60.00"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>
 <p>od</p> <p>id</p> <p>start angle</p> <p>spoke width</p>	<pre> <EntryStandard id = "ThermalOct3"> <Thermal shape = "OCTAGON" outerDiameter = "10.6" innerDiameter = "6.0" spokeCount = "4" gap = "2.0" spokeStartAngle = "60.00"/> </EntryStandard> <EntryStandard id = "ThermalOct4"> <Thermal shape = "OCTAGON" outerDiameter = "12.0" innerDiameter = "7.6" spokeCount = "2" gap = "2.2" spokeStartAngle = "60.00"/> </EntryStandard> </pre>

4.7.16 StandardPrimitive: Triangle

The Triangle is a StandardPrimitive shape that is an isosceles triangle that has two equal sides and a base. The shape is defined by the base and height dimension. The triangle is positioned with its point of origin which is at the center of the base and height dimensions.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Triangle	TriangleType	A primitive shape defined by a base and height dimension. The default for FillDesc is FILL without a LineDesc element.	1-1
base	nonNegativeDoubleType	The distance between the two corner points of the base of the triangle with the point of origin at the center of the base and height dimensions.	1-1
height	nonNegativeDoubleType	The triangle height.	1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file. LineDesc should be used only if FillDesc is present and its' fill property values are HOLLOW, HATCH, or MESH otherwise the LineDesc should be omitted.	0-1
FillDescGroup	FillDescGroupType	A substitution group that specifies the FillDesc or FillDescRef. The FillDesc element provides the FillProperties, LineDesc and Color characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Fill descriptions are a part of the StandardPrimitives , any UserPrimitive closed shape and Set element definitions. The FillDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file	0-1



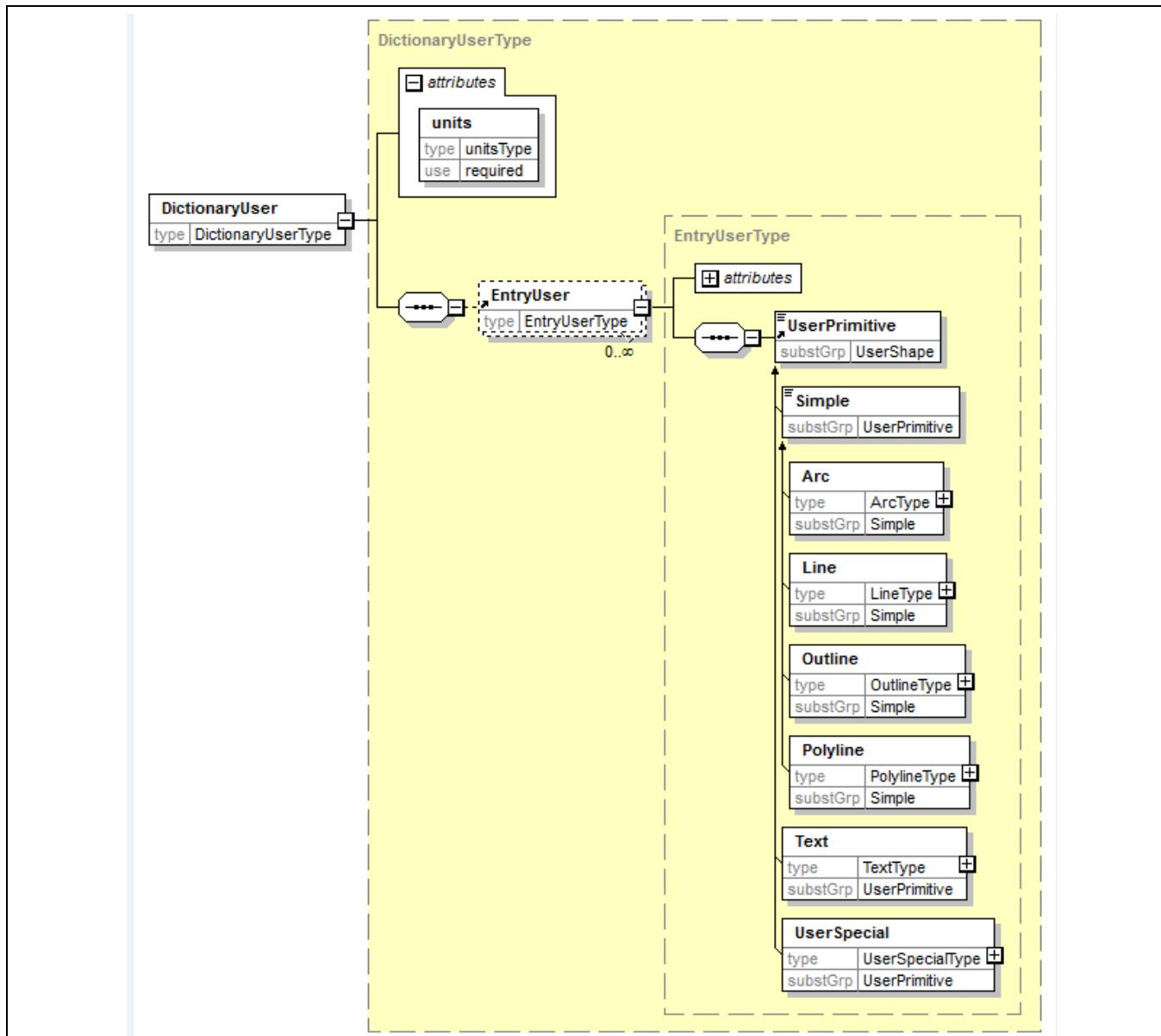
```

<EntryStandard id = "Triangle1">
    <Triangle base = "4.0" height = "8.0"/>
</EntryStandard>
<EntryStandard id = "Triangle2">
    <Triangle base = "4.0" height = "6.0"/>
</EntryStandard>
<EntryStandard id = "Triangle3">
    <Triangle base = "4.0" height = "12.0"/>
</EntryStandard>
<EntryStandard id = "Triangle4">
    <Triangle base = "8.0" height = "4.0"/>
</EntryStandard>

```

4.8 Content: DictionaryUser

The DictionaryUser is intended to provide lookup information on predefined UserPrimitives. The DictionaryUser is maintained as part of a substitution group schema. The intent is to have graphic descriptions available that are identified by their characteristics and a specific name (id). They may be reused throughout the file as appropriate. The name (id) of a UserPrimitive must be unique within the DictionaryUser.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
DictionaryUser	DictionaryUserType	An element that contains substitution group information using predefined descriptions of user primitives identified by the 2581 standard and described by the user for reuse in the file.	0-1
units	unitsType	An enumerated string that may be one of the following: MILLIMETER MICRON INCH.	1-1

EntryUser	EntryUserType	An element that establishes the individual characteristic associated with a UserPrimitive substitution shape that has been identified by the user of the IPC-2581 file.	0-n
id	qualifiedNameType	The unique qualified name description assigned as an id for any StandardPrimitive for XML schema substitution.	1-1
UserPrimitive	ABSTRACT	Any user primitive that is part of the substitution group that permits the substitution of the user primitives (arc, line, Outline, Polygon), a text string, or UserSpecial shape.	1-n

The organization of the DictionaryUser is accomplished in accordance with the substitution group description criteria. The UserPrimitive description may be any of four simple shapes according to the specific characteristics identified in the following paragraphs plus text strings or user combinations of primitives to develop UserSpecial graphics for such items as logos, targets, drawing formats etc. The UserPrimitiveRef function is used in the body of the IPC-2581 file when a specific UserPrimitive has been predefined, assigned a name, and this unique "id" is referenced in the file. This feature permits the use of either a predefined UserPrimitive or defining the details of a UserPrimitive within the file. The description in the file must contain all the features of a particular primitive shape under the rules of the particular shape definition.

4.8.1 UserPrimitive, Simple

An abstract type identifying a substitution set of pre-defined simple primitive shapes that may be any one of four geometries. Each of the simple primitives must have a unique name within the DictionaryUser section. (See 3.4.9)

Simple		Arc		Line		Outline		Polyline					
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description						Occurrence					
Arc	ArcType	The Arc element represents an arc. Arcs are curves (defined by three sets of coordinates: startX, startY, endX, endY, and centerX, centerY. The width of the arc is defined as a substitution group for LineDesc or applied when the Arc is instantiated.						0-n					
Line	LineType	The Line element is used to describe an individual line segment. The lineWidth and lineEnd conditions are defined as a substitution group for LineDesc or applied when the line segment is instantiated. The lineEnd default is ROUND.						0-n					
Outline	OutlineType	The Outline element is that of a Polygon and represents a closed shape. The point of origin of the shape is identified as the 0:0 coordinate. The element includes the start of the polygon definition (PolyBegin) and the appropriate number of PolySteps to complete the closed shape. The lineWidth is defined as a substitution group for LineDesc or applied when the Outline is instantiated.						0-n					
Polyline	PolylineType	The Polyline element consists of a series of lines that define a particular grouping configuration. These line segments do not result in a closed shape, however they can be predefined and reused as needed. The lineWidth and lineEnd of the Polyline are defined as a substitution group for LineDesc or applied at the time the Polyline is instantiated.						0-n					

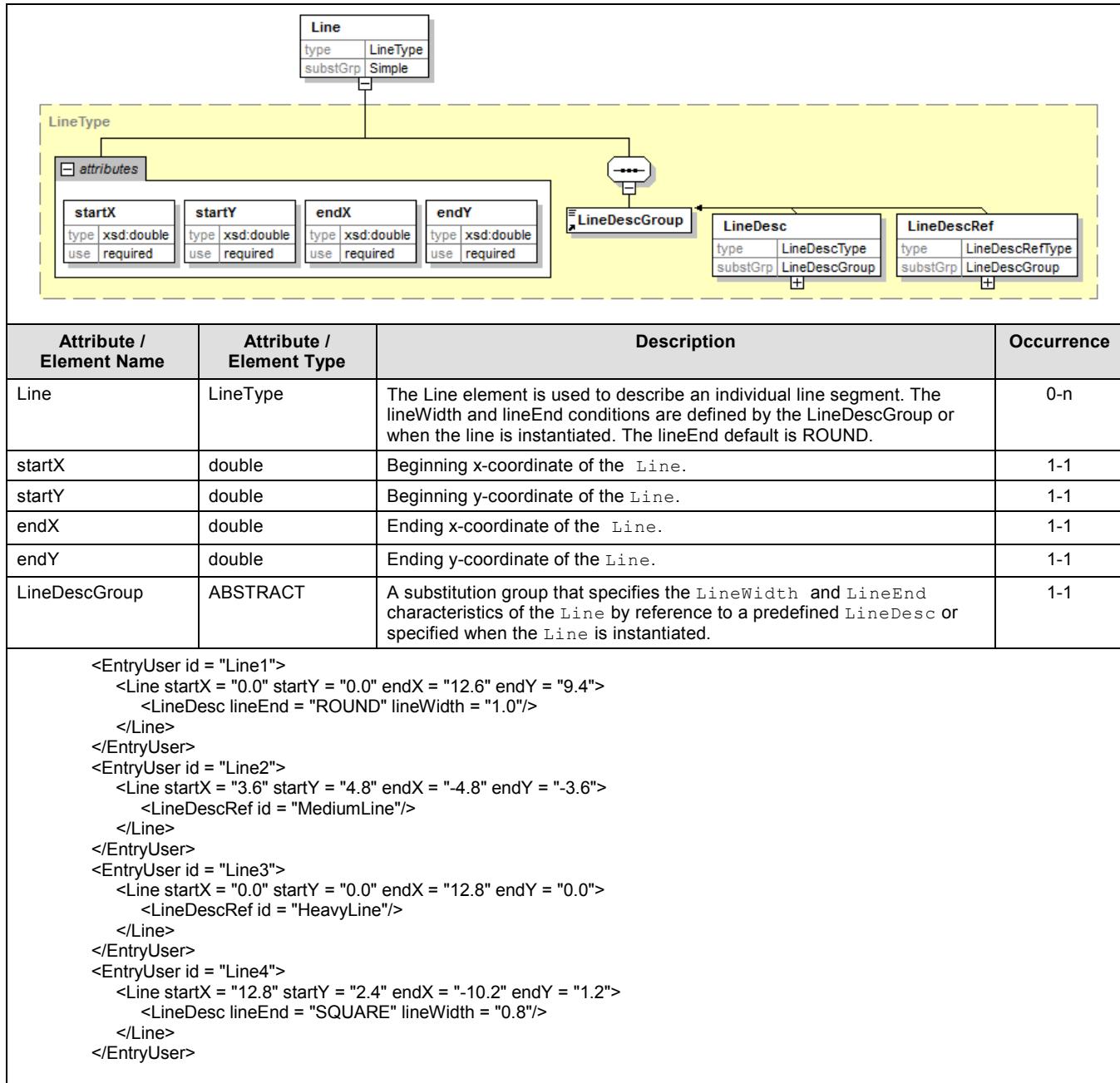
4.8.1.1 UserPrimitive, Simple: Arc

Each Arc entry (EntryUser) in the DictionaryUser shall have a unique id and consist of the following characteristics:

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Arc	ArcType	The Arc element represents an arc. Arcs are curves (defined by three sets of coordinates: startX, startY, endX, endY and centerX, centerY. The width of the arc is set by the LineDesc substitution group or applied when the Arc is instantiated.	0-n
startX	double	Beginning x-coordinate of the Arc.	1-1
startY	double	Beginning y-coordinate of the Arc.	1-1
endX	double	Ending x-coordinate of the Arc.	1-1
endY	double	Ending y-coordinate of the Arc.	1-1
centerX	double	The X location for the origin of the radius of the circular Arc.	1-1
centerY	double	The Y location for the origin of the radius of the circular Arc.	1-1
clockwise	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the Arc is in a clockwise direction; FALSE is the default indicating a counterclockwise direction.	0-1
LineDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that specifies the LineWidth and LineEnd characteristics of the Arc by reference to a predefined LineDesc or specified when the Arc is instantiated.	1-1
<pre> <EntryUser id = "Arc1"> <Arc startX = "8.0" startY = "0.0" endX = "-8.0" endY = "0.0" centerX = "0.0" centerY = "0.0" clockwise = "FALSE"> <LineDescRef id = "MediumLine"/> </Arc> </EntryUser> <EntryUser id = "Arc2"> <Arc startX = "0.0" startY = "0.0" endX = "12.0" endY = "0.0" centerX = "6.0" centerY = "0.0" clockwise = "TRUE"> <LineDescRef id = "HeavyLine"/> </Arc> </EntryUser> <EntryUser id = "Arc3"> <Arc startX = "-8.0" startY = "0.0" endX = "0.0" endY = "8.0" centerX = "0.0" centerY = "0.0" clockwise = "TRUE"> <LineDesc lineEnd = "ROUND" lineWidth = "1.0"/> </Arc> </EntryUser> </pre>			

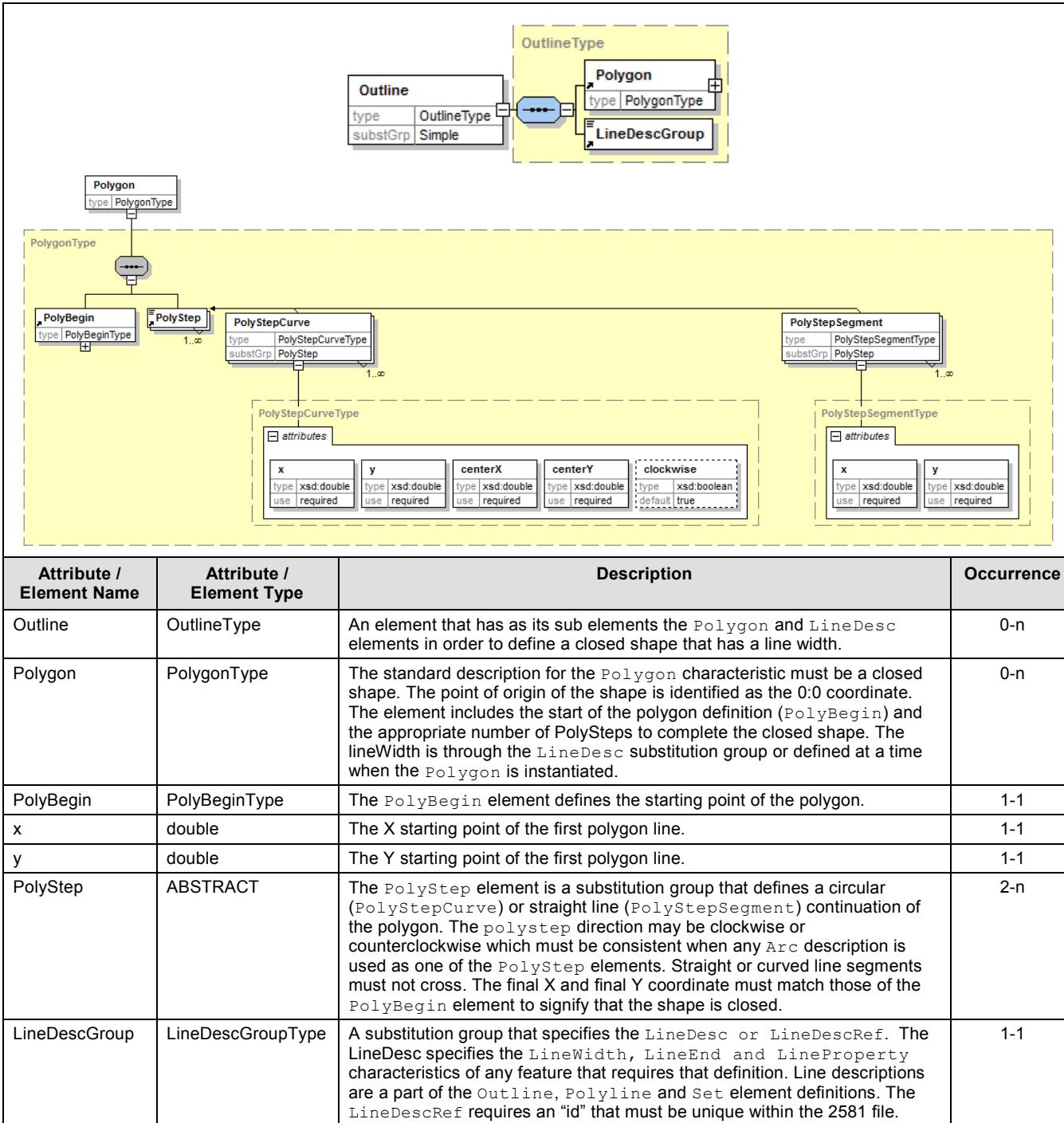
4.8.1.2 UserPrimitive, Simple: Line

Each Line entry (EntryUser) in the DictionaryUser **shall** have a unique id and consist of the following characteristics:



4.8.1.3 UserPrimitive, Simple: Outline

Each Outline entry (EntryUser) in the DictionaryUser shall have a unique id and consist of the following characteristics. The Outline element consists of the following characteristics using a Polygon shape to represent a closed shaped group of lines.



```
<EntryUser id = "Outline1">
  <Outline>
    <Polygon>
      <PolyBegin x = "0.0" y = "6.4"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "12.6" y = "6.4"/>
      <PolyStepCurve x = "14.8" y = "4.2" centerX = "12.6" centerY = "4.2" clockwise = "TRUE"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "14.8" y = "0.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "0.0" y = "0.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "0.0" y = "6.4"/>
    </Polygon>
    <LineDescRef id = "FineLine"/>
  </Outline>
</EntryUser>
<EntryUser id = "Outline2">
  <Outline>
    <Polygon>
      <PolyBegin x = "-10.4" y = "-2.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-10.4" y = "0.0"/>
      <PolyStepCurve x = "10.4" y = "0.0" centerX = "0.0" centerY = "0.0" clockwise = "TRUE"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "10.4" y = "-2.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "0.0" y = "-6.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-10.4" y = "-2.0"/>
    </Polygon>
    <LineDesc lineEnd = "ROUND" lineWidth = "0.2"/>
  </Outline>
</EntryUser>
```

4.8.1.4 UserPrimitive, Simple: PolyLine

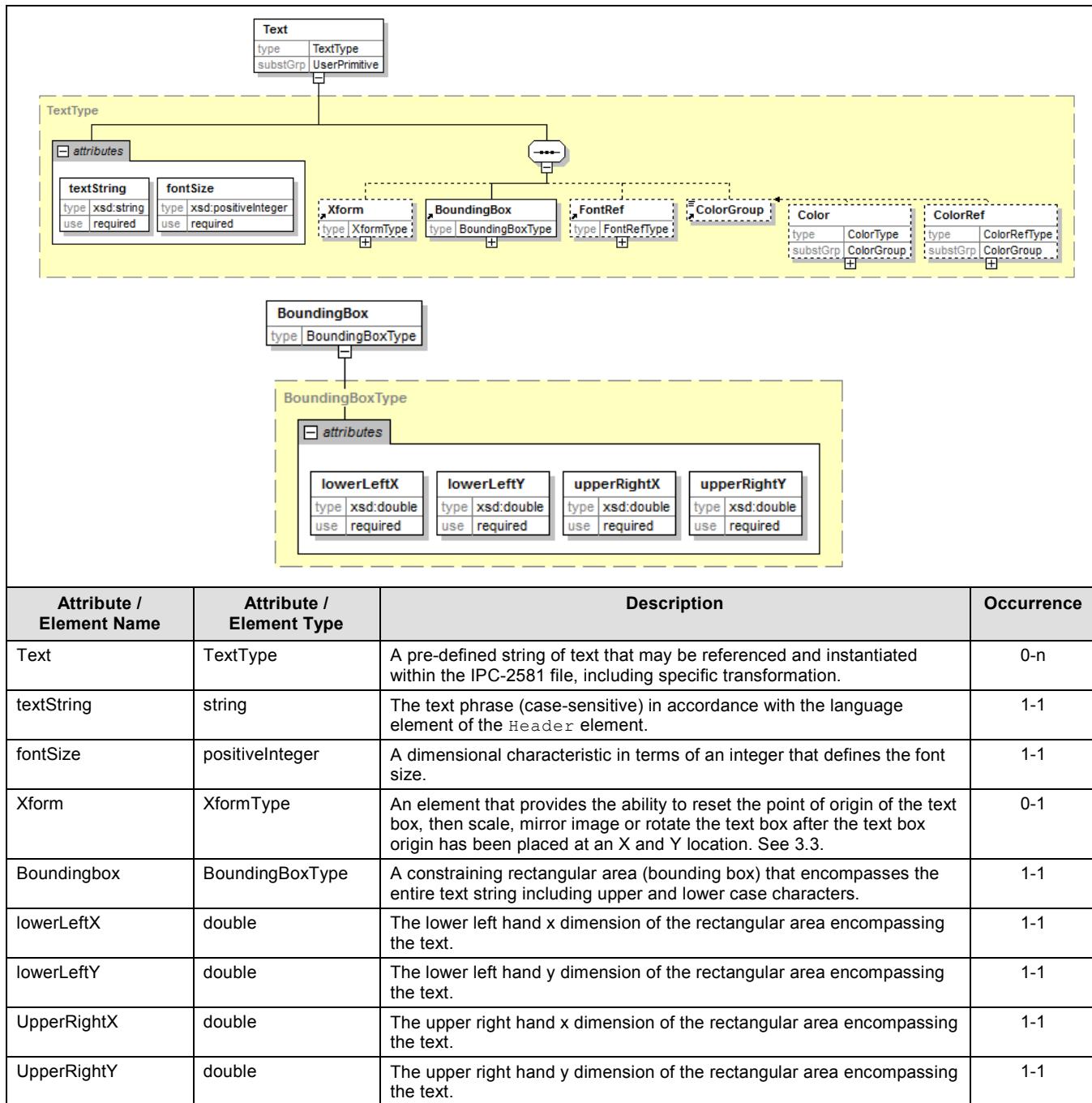
Each PolyLine entry (EntryUser) in the DictionaryUser shall have a unique id and consist of the following characteristics. The PolyLine characteristics represent an open shaped group of lines.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Polyline	PolylineType	The Polyline element consists of a series of lines that define a particular grouping configuration. These line segments do not result in a closed shape however they can be pre-defined and re-used as needed. The lineWidth and lineEnd are defined by the substitution group LineDescGroup or are defined at the time the Polyline is instantiated.	0-n
PolyBegin	PolyBeginType	The PolyBegin element defines the starting point of the polyline.	1-1
x	double	The X starting point of the first polyline line segment.	1-1
y	double	The Y starting point of the first polyline line segment.	1-1
PolyStep	ABSTRACT	The PolyStep element is a substitution group that defines a circular (PolyStepCurve) or straight line (PolyStepSegment) continuation of the polyline. The polystep direction may be clockwise or counterclockwise which must be consistent when any Arc description is used as one of the PolyStep elements. Straight or curved line segments must not cross.	1-n
LineDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that specifies the LineWidth and LineEnd characteristics of the Line by reference to a predefined LineDesc or specified when the polyline is instantiated.	1-1
<pre> <EntryUser id = "Polyline1"> <Polyline> <PolyBegin x = "0.0" y = "0.0"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "4.0" y = "0.0"/> <PolyStepCurve x = "4.0" y = "6.0" centerX = "4.0" centerY = "3.0" clockwise = "FALSE"/> <PolyStepCurve x = "4.0" y = "12.0" centerX = "4.0" centerY = "9.0" clockwise = "TRUE"/> <LineDescRef id = "HeavyLine"/> </Polyline> </EntryUser> <EntryUser id = "Polyline2"> <Polyline> <PolyBegin x = "3.2" y = "2.2"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "8.8" y = "10.4"/> <PolyStepCurve x = "8.8" y = "16.4" centerX = "8.8" centerY = "13.4" clockwise = "TRUE"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "6.0" y = "16.4"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "6.0" y = "10.0"/> <LineDesc lineEnd = "ROUND" lineWidth = "0.5"/> </Polyline> </EntryUser> </pre>			

4.8.2 UserPrimitive: Text

When text is to be drawn on a product or a drawing the definition includes a bounding rectangle for the text. The `lowerLeftX` and `lowerLeftY` coordinate and the `upperRightX` and `upperRightY` coordinate define the `BoundingBox` rectangle. All portions of the text, including the line width of the strokes of the text, must fit within the `BoundingBox` rectangle. Any portion of a character exceeding the perimeter of the `BoundingBox` rectangle will be clipped at the boundaries of the `BoundingBox` rectangle.

Each Text entry (EntryUser) in the DictionaryUser shall have a unique id and consist of the following characteristics:



FontRef	FontRefType	An element that is optional to reference a predefined font by its id, if the standard Helvetica font is not being instantiated.	0-1
id	qualifiedNameType	The identification of the <code>FontDef</code> stored in the <code>DictionaryFont</code> .	1-1
ColorGroup	ABSTRACT	An optional substitution group that permits assigning a particular color through instantiating the three basic colors or by providing a reference to a predefined <code>Color</code> in <code>DictionaryColor</code> .	0-1

The following diagram and the requirements describe the general case for how text is to be drawn. There are two variations on the use of text. This makes `Text` an element that is incorporated as a layer feature or in a `Package` description. When used in this manner, all the characteristics of `Xform` and the `BoundingBox` apply. The other form of text is as a simple `string` attribute. This is where the word `text` is used to add extra information to a particular element and therefore does not require the special features for location, font, and `Xform`.

When `text` is used as an element, the attribute `textString` should be defined to be enclosed in the textbox as illustrated in Figure 4. This includes upper and lower case letters, as well as all line widths, line descriptions, and line ends. Anything outside the clipping box will be clipped. The clipping boundary is necessary because fonts vary between computer systems and application implementations.

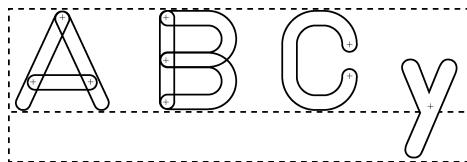


Figure 4 Bounding rectangle to round end character relationships

4.8.2.1 Text restrictions

Text character dimensions are constrained by the bounding rectangle as illustrated in Figure 5. Character height is expressed by the `fontSize` attribute. Incremental units of the `BoundingBox` follow the `Units` element used by the file; this sets the limits (left and right xy coordinates) of the bounding rectangle. Both upper and lower case letters must be inside the `BoundingBox` rectangle. Included in this requirement are the extensions of such descending letters as lower case "g," "q," "y," "j," and "p."

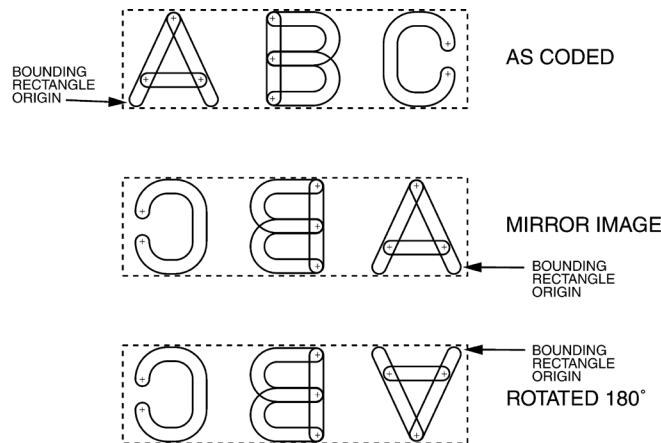


Figure 5 Text transformation examples

4.8.2.2 Text rotation

The bounding rectangle of Text is defined relative to the local coordinate system. The xLocation and yLocation of Xform is applied to the bounding rectangle and the text contained within the rectangle to locate the Text. The bounding rectangle must be mirrored if required before it is rotated. The text is drawn relative to the bounding rectangle.

The example shown in Figure 6 indicates a BoundingBox rectangle that has been rotated 30° about the lower left xy coordinate.

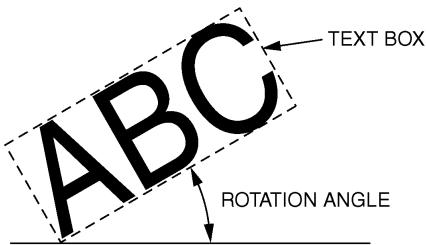
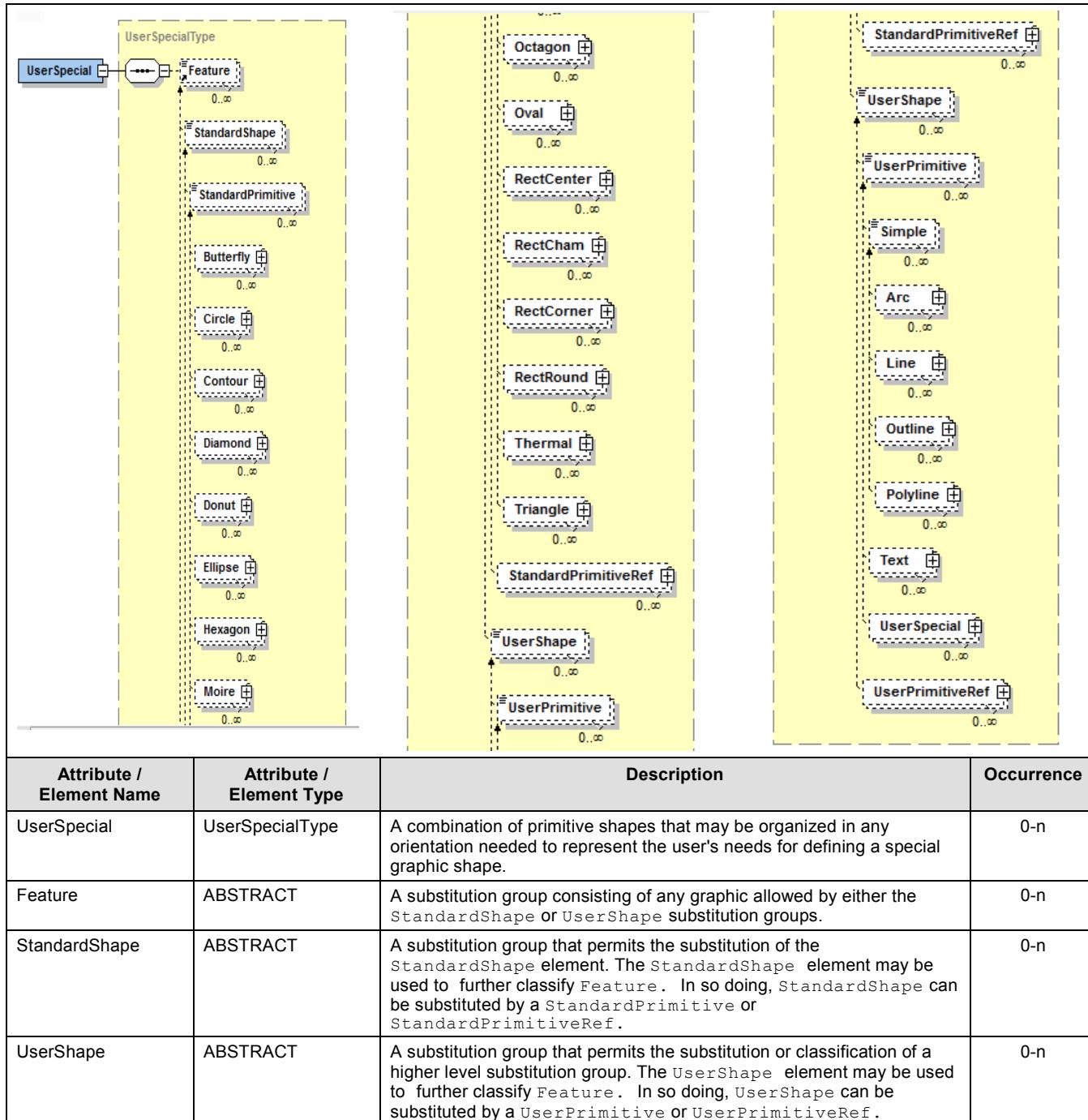


Figure 6 Rotation Angle

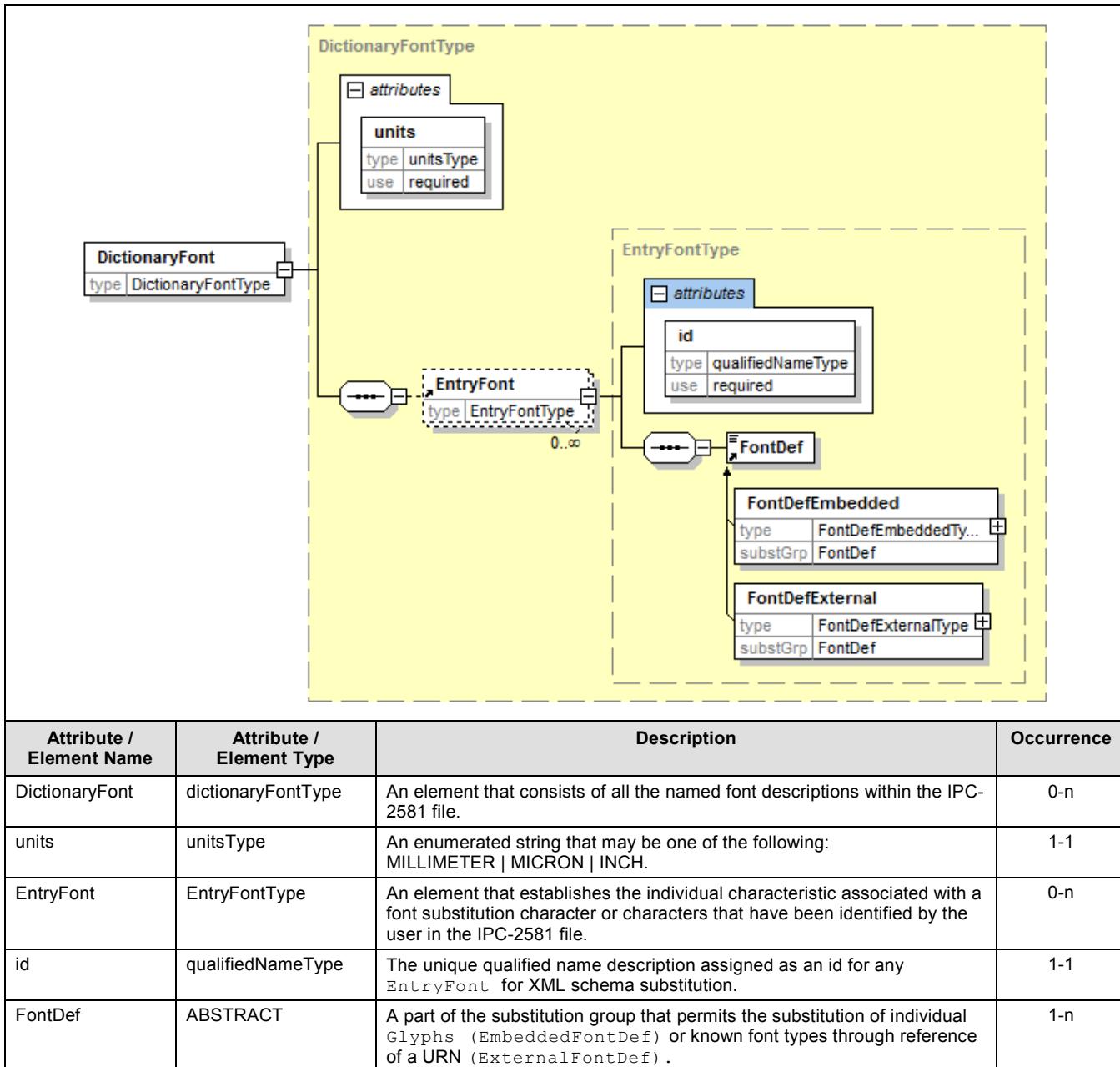
4.8.3 UserPrimitive: UserSpecial

Each UserSpecial entry (EntryUser) in the DictionaryUser **shall** have a unique id and consist of the following characteristics. The UserSpecial may be any combination of StandardShapes or UserShapes, and is used to develop logos, targets, drawing formats or other combination of shapes.



4.9 Content: DictionaryFont

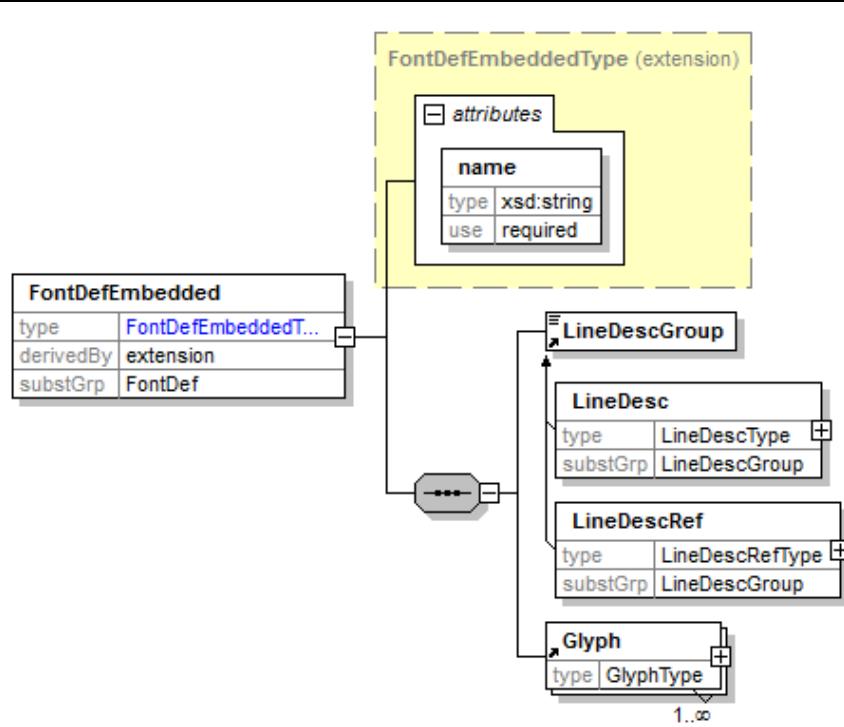
The `DictionaryFont` is intended to provide lookup information on predefined font descriptions when the standard Helvetica font is not used. The `DictionaryFont` is maintained as part of a substitution group schema. The intent is to have font descriptions available that are identified by their characteristics and a specific name (id). The reference is to individual `Glyph` characters or to a known font through reference to a URN. Font descriptions may be reused throughout the file as appropriate. The name (id) of a `FontDef` must be unique within the `DictionaryFont`.



The organization of the `DictionaryFont` is accomplished in accordance with the substitution group description criteria. The `FontDef` description may be any character represented as a `Glyph` according to the specific characteristics identified in the following paragraphs. `FontDef` may also be a known font through reference of a URN. The `FontRef` function is used in the body of the IPC-2581 file when a specific font has been predefined, assigned a name, and the unique "id" is referenced in the file. This feature permits the substitution of the standard Helvetica font; Font descriptions are only contained in the `DictionaryFont` and are not instantiated in the body of the IPC-2581 file.

4.9.1 FontDefEmbedded

The `FontDefEmbedded` element is used to capture individual characters and store them in the `DictionaryFont`.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
FontDefEmbedded	FontDefEmbeddedType	A substitution for <code>FontDef</code> that identifies an individual <code>Glyph</code> character by a specific name and the <code>Glyph</code> characteristics.	0-n
name	string	A unique name related to the <code>charCode</code> of the <code>Glyph</code> character.	0-n
LineDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that specifies the <code>LineWidth</code> and <code>LineEnd</code> characteristics of the <code>Font</code> by reference to a predefined <code>LineDesc</code> or specified when the <code>font</code> is instantiated.	1-1
Glyph	GlyphType	The element that contains the description of all the character definitions defined in the user developed font	1-n

4.9.2 FontDefExternal

The `FontDefExternal` element is used to capture known font characters and store the reference in the `DictionaryFont`.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
FontDefExternal	FontDefExternalType	A substitution for <code>FontDef</code> that identifies a known group of characters through their font style.	0-n
name	string	A unique name related to the character set of a known font.	0-n
urn	urn	A specific <code>urn</code> that makes reference to a known font that has the appropriate permission to use the font substitution in a 2581 file.	1-1

4.9.3 FontDef: Glyph

The `Glyph` character set is a group of user defined characters that will be reference by the text command in the file. `Glyph` permits the user to define a special set of characters that need description as a part of the IPC-2581 file. Each character is in a `BoundingBox` that contains all the line strokes needed to completely define each character in the set. The point of origin is the lower left hand corner of the `BoundingBox`. The `lowerLeftX` and `lowerLeftY` point of origin will be used to position, rotate or mirror image all `Glyph` characters.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Glyph	GlyphType	The element that contains the description of all the character definitions defined in the user developed font.	0-n
charCode	hexBinary	A code used by the user to identify a special character.	0-1
lowerLeftX	double	The lower left hand x dimension of the rectangular area encompassing the character.	1-1
lowerLeftY	double	The lower left hand y dimension of the rectangular area encompassing the character.	1-1
upperRightX	double	The upper right hand x dimension of the rectangular area encompassing the character.	1-1

upperRightY	double	The upper right hand y dimension of the rectangular area encompassing the text character.	1-1
Simple	ABSTRACT	A substitution set of simple primitive shapes that may be any one of four geometries: Arc, Line, Outline, or PolyLine. The LineWidth and LineEnd characteristics are established by the Simple substitution	0-n

4.9.4 FontDef: Glyph combination

The developers of individual **Glyph** characters are encouraged to consider the manner in which the characters will be used. Since the **BoundingBox** surrounding the character must entirely encompass the **Glyph**, it is important to leave room in the **BoundingBox** so that the spacing between characters is consistent with the character style.

Using individual **Glyph** characters does not present a problem, however **Glyph** combinations should match the style of **Glyph** chosen by the user. Since it is mostly the **Text** element that instantiates fonts, the **Glyph BoundingBox** must fit into the **Text BoundingBox**. This is a simple strategy when all the **Glyph** characters are of a similar height. In this instance the "Y" dimensional differences between **Glyph** characters bounding boxes and **Text** bounding boxes should be identical in order to keep the **Glyph** characters within the **Text** box. Under those circumstances, only the spacing between characters needs to be considered.

As an example consider the word simple instantiated in capital letters or lower case. When instantiating a **Text** string, the **Glyph** for "SIMPLE" would only require equal bounding boxes in the character height even though the character "I" would have a smaller character width than the character "M". A different strategy for **Glyph** development must be used if the **Text** string were to call for "Simple". Since character height is different, it is recommended that the **Glyph BoundingBox** consider its location position in a **Text BoundingBox** according to the rule that all characters must be inside the **Text** box.

Figure 7 shows an example of **Glyph** bounding boxes related to the **Text BoundingBox**. The characters line up even though they are positioned on the lower y-coordinate. They were designed along a construction line to have this condition occur.

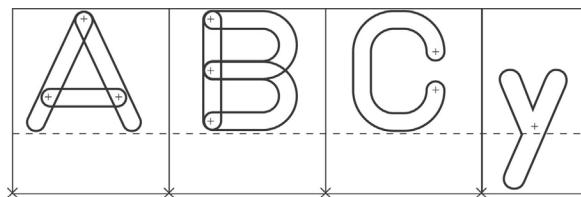
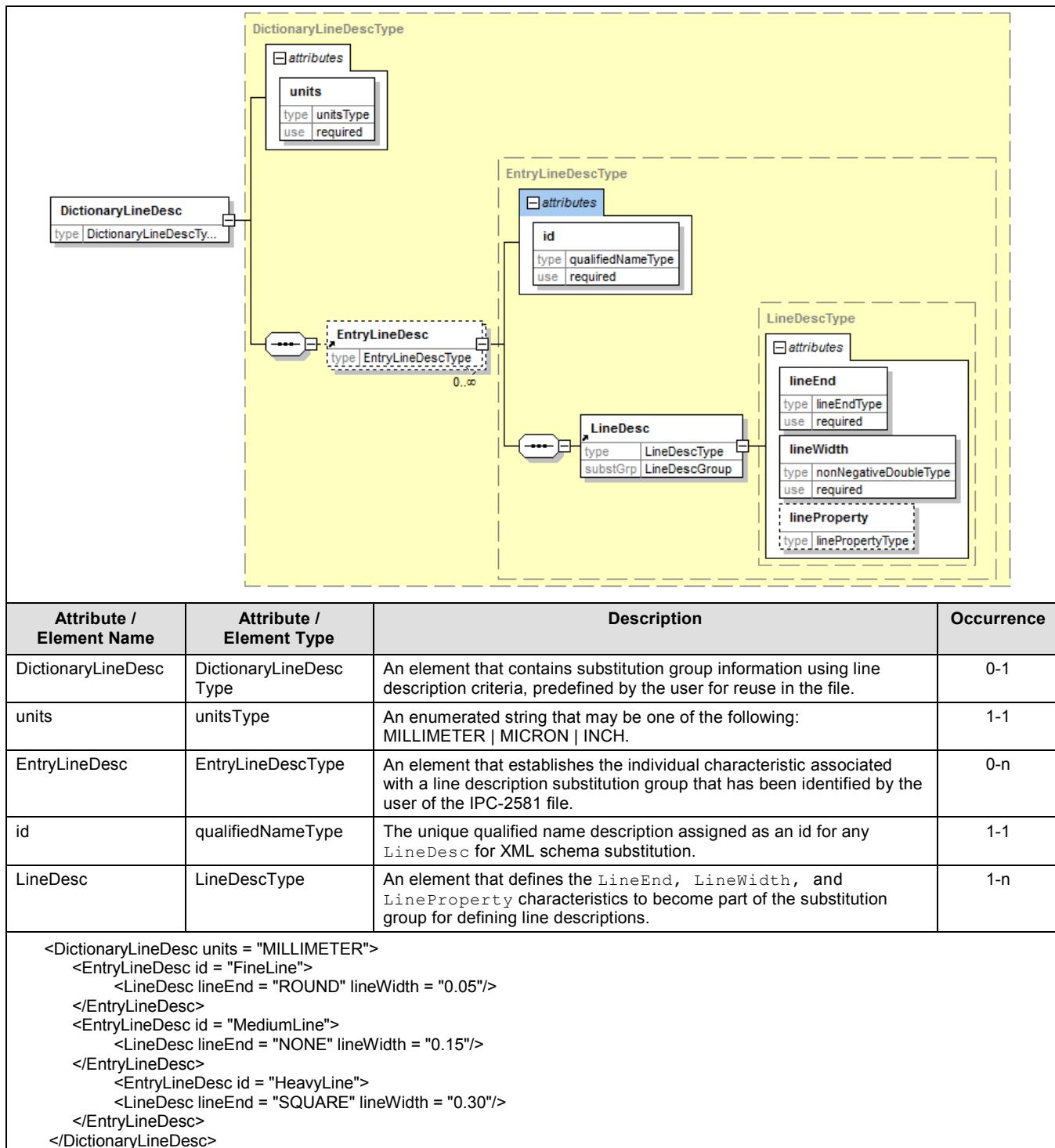


Figure 7 **Glyph** bounding rectangles to **Text** bounding box relationships

4.10 Content: DictionaryLineDesc

The **DictionarylineDesc** is intended to provide lookup information on predefined line descriptions. The **DictionarylineDesc** is maintained as part of a substitution group schema. The intent is to have line descriptions available that are identified by their characteristics and a specific name (id). They may be reused throughout the file as appropriate. The name (id) of a **LineDesc** must be unique within the **DictionaryLineDesc**.



The organization of the `DictionaryLineDesc` is accomplished in accordance with the substitution group description criteria. The `lineDesc` description defines the `LineEnd` and `LineWidth` according to the specific characteristics identified in the following paragraphs. The `LineDescRef` function is used in the body of the IPC-2581 file when a specific `LineDesc` has been predefined, assigned a name, and the unique "id" is referenced in the file. This feature permits the use of either a predefined `LineDesc`, or defining the details of a `LineDesc` within the file. The description in the file must contain all the features of a line description under the rules of the `LineDesc` definition.

4.10.1 LineDesc

The `LineDesc` element is used throughout the 2581 file to establish the characteristics of `lineEnd`, `lineWidth`, and `lineProperty` descriptions. The `LineDesc` definition is according to the following characteristics.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	
Occurrence			
LineDesc	LineDescType	An element that defines the characteristics of a line. The <code>Units</code> are defined when the <code>LineDesc</code> is instantiated; <code>Units</code> is a part of the characteristics when <code>LineDesc</code> is contained in the <code>DictionaryLineDesc</code> .	1-n
lineEnd	lineEndType	A description of the line ends used in any graphic description. The <code>lineEnd</code> description is an enumerated string that may be <code>ROUND</code> <code>SQUARE</code> <code>NONE</code> .	1-1
ROUND  SQUARE  NONE 		This diagram illustrates the <code>LineDesc/@lineEnd</code> attribute	
lineWidth	nonNegativeDouble Type	A dimensional characteristic that defines the nominal <code>lineWidth</code> of a <code>Line</code> , <code>Polyline</code> , or <code>Arc</code> element. The dimensions are in the same category as all dimensions contained in the IPC-2581 file.	1-1
lineProperty	linePropertyType	The <code>lineProperty</code> is one of <code>SOLID</code> , <code>DOTTED</code> , <code>DASHED</code> , <code>CENTER</code> , <code>PHANTOM</code> or (solid) <code>ERASE</code> . The default is <code>SOLID</code> .	0-1
SOLID  DOTTED  DASHED  CENTER  PHANTOM  ERASE 		This diagram illustrates the <code>lineProperty</code> attribute. <code>lineProperty</code> attributes require the following rules to define width, end, and spacing characteristics for the line segments, dashes and dots.	
SOLID Lines		Requires <code>lineWidth</code> with <code>lineEnd</code> default as <code>ROUND</code>	

DOTTED Lines	Dot Diameter 1X lineWidth; Space is 2X lineWidth as the default
DASHED Lines	Dash Length 3X lineWidth; space 3X line Width as the default
CENTER Lines	Length 6X lineWidth; space is 2X lineWidth; Dot =1X lineWidth
PHANTOM Lines	Length 6X lineWidth; Space is 2X lineWidth; Dots =1X lineWidth
ERASE Lines	Requires lineWidth with lineEnd default as NONE

4.10.2 LineDescRef

The `LineDescRef` element is used throughout the 2581 file to establish the relationship to a previously defined `LineDesc`. The `Units` of the predefined `LineDesc` must match the `Units` of the `Ecad` section in which it is instantiated. The `LineDescRef` definition is according to the following characteristics.

```

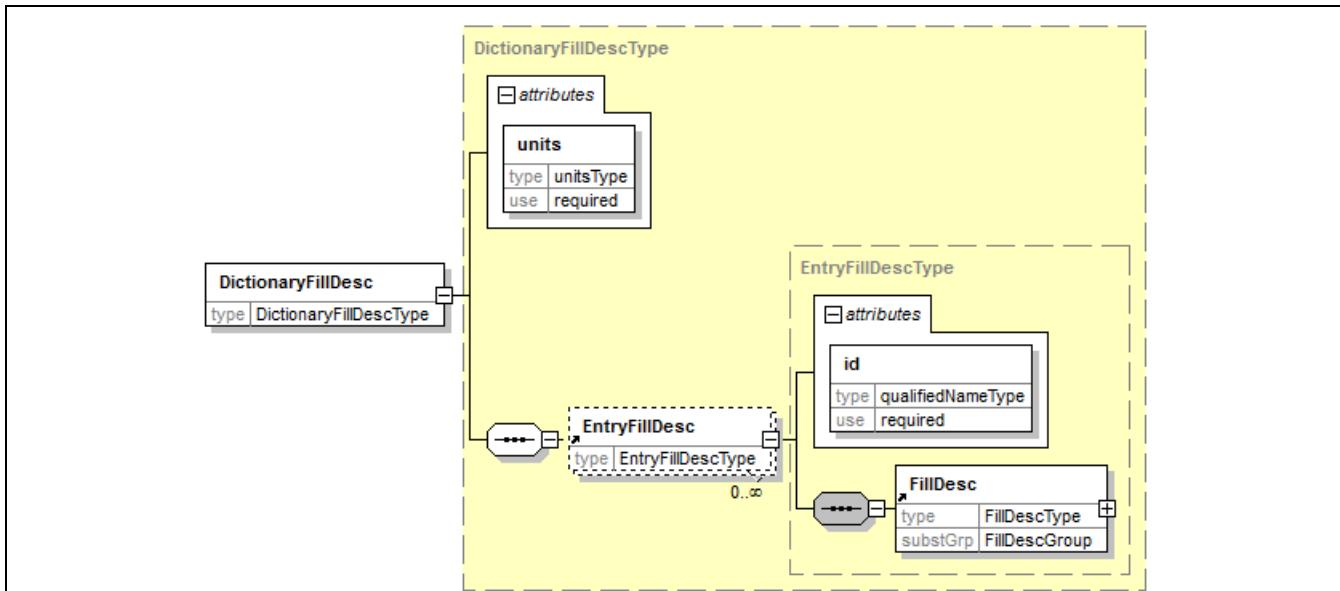
classDiagram
    class LineDescRef {
        type : LineDescRefType
        substGrp : LineDescGroup
    }
    class LineDescRefType {
        id : qualifiedNameType
        use : required
    }
    LineDescRef "1" -- "1" LineDescRefType

```

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
LineDescRef	LineDescRefType	An element used to reference a previously defined <code>LineDesc</code> , contained in the <code>DictionaryLineDesc</code> .	1-n
Id	qualifiedNameType	The identification of the <code>LineDesc</code> being referenced from the <code>DictionaryLineDesc</code> .	1-1

4.11 Content: DictionaryFillDesc

The `DictionaryFillDesc` is intended to provide lookup information on predefined fill descriptions. The `DictionaryFillDesc` is maintained as part of a substitution group schema. The intent is to have fill descriptions available that are identified by their characteristics and a specific name (`id`). They may be reused throughout the file as appropriate. The name (`id`) of a `FillDesc` must be unique within the `DictionaryFillDesc`.

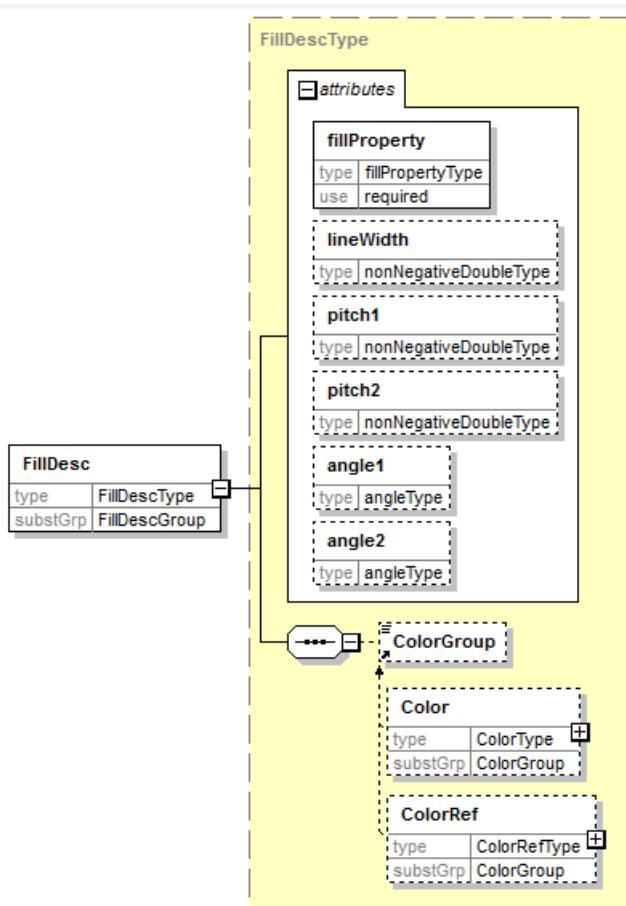


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
DictionaryFillDesc	DictionaryFillDescType	An element that contains substitution group information using fill description criteria, predefined by the user for reuse in the file.	0-1
units	unitsType	An enumerated string that may be one of the following: MILLIMETER MICRON INCH.	1-1
EntryFillDesc	EntryFillDescType	An element that establishes the individual characteristic associated with a fill description substitution group that has been identified by the user of the IPC-2581 file.	0-n
id	qualifiedNameType	The unique qualified name description assigned as an id for any <code>FillDesc</code> for XML schema substitution.	1-1
FillDesc	FillDescType	An element that defines the <code>FillProperty</code> and <code>Color</code> characteristics to become part of the substitution group for defining Fill descriptions.	1-n

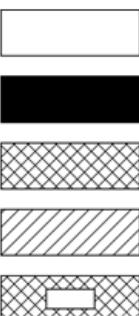
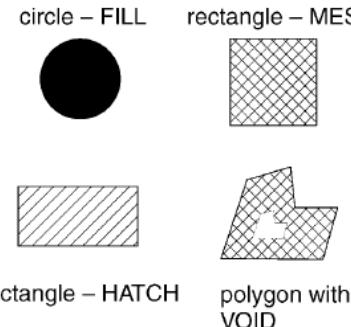
The organization of the `DictionaryFillDesc` is accomplished in accordance with the substitution group description criteria. The `FillDesc` description defines the `FillProperty` and `Color` according to the specific characteristics identified in the following paragraphs. The `FillDescRef` function is used in the body of the IPC-2581 file when a specific `FillDesc` has been predefined, assigned a name, and the unique “`id`” is referenced in the file. This feature permits the use of either a predefined `FillDesc`, or defining the details of a `FillDesc` within the file. The description in the file must contain all the features of a Fill description under the rules of the `FillDesc` definition.

4.11.1 FillDesc

The `FillDesc` element is used throughout the 2581 file to establish the characteristics of `FillProperty`, `lineWidth`, and `Color` descriptions. The `FillDesc` definition is according to the following characteristics.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
FillDesc	FillDescType	An element that defines the characteristics of a fill property. The <code>Units</code> are defined when the <code>LineDesc</code> is instantiated; <code>Units</code> is a part of the characteristics when <code>FillDesc</code> is contained in the <code>DictionaryFillDesc</code> .	1-n
fillProperty	fillPropertyType	The texture of the fill is one of HOLLOW, HATCH, MESH, FILL or VOID. The default is HOLLOW. The VOID feature is only applicable if it occurs within a previously defined HATCH, MESH, or FILL feature. All portions of the VOID must be contained within the previously defined feature.	0-1
lineWidth	nonNegativeDouble Type	The width of the lines used in a HATCH or MESH. (This attribute only applies to the fill types HATCH and MESH.)	0-1
pitch1	nonNegativeDouble Type	The distance between the first set of lines in a HATCH or MESH. The default pitch between the hatch lines is 4 times the <code>lineWidth</code> . (This attribute only applies to the fill types HATCH and MESH.)	0-1
pitch2	nonNegativeDouble Type	The distance between the second set of lines in a MESH. The default pitch between the hatch lines is 4 times the <code>lineWidth</code> . (This attribute only applies to the fill type MESH.)	0-1

angle1	angleType	The angle of a set of lines in a HATCH or a MESH. The angle is measured relative to the x-axis of the local coordinate system. The range of values is limited to between 0 and 180 degrees. The default is 45 degrees. (This attribute only applies to the fill types HATCH and MESH.)	0-1
angle2	angleType	The angle of the second set of lines in a MESH. The angle is measured relative to the x-axis of the local coordinate system. The angle must be between 90 and 180 degrees. The default is 135 degrees. (This attribute only applies to the fill type MESH.)	0-1
ColorGroup	ABSTRACT	An element that is a substitution group which can be used to define a particular Color for the surface finish, either in the body of the file or by reference to a predefined Color contained in DictionaryColor.	0-1
			This diagram illustrates the <code>FillDesc</code> type Attribute. The <code>FillDesc</code> type is set to SOLID in the examples to provide an outline around the shapes that are painted with MESH, HATCH, or VOID. The VOID rectangle feature is within a previously defined rectangle that has been defined with HATCH lines. As shown all of the VOID characteristics are within the boundaries of the larger HATCH rectangle feature
			This diagram illustrates the <code>FillDesc</code> type Attribute. The <code>fillDesc</code> type is set to SOLID in the examples to provide an outline around the shapes that are painted with MESH, HATCH, or VOID. The VOID within the polygon is completely contained within its boundaries as required.
			The example may be defined as a UserPrimitive using a Circle fill description with a circular VOID in its center. The User Primitive name may be used in the padstack descriptions.
<p>The <code>fillProperty</code> VOID means the element shape clears an area with respect to contours. Elements (and references to elements) with <code>fillProperty</code> VOID can appear only as elements in a Set element or a UserSpecial element shape. Elements with <code>fillProperty</code> VOID apply only to the elements that appear before the VOID element in the Set element or in the UserSpecial element. Elements with <code>fillProperty</code> VOID only clear filled contours.</p> <p>A contour is a polygon which is a closed shape whose edges do not cross. The edges of elements with <code>fillProperty</code> VOID do not cross other elements with <code>fillProperty</code> VOID and do not cross the edges of the owning contour element. The order of voids and polygons within Contours and Sets determines their containment order. The outermost polygon comes first. Polygons are before voids that are contained in them. Voids are before polygons that are contained inside them.</p>			

4.11.2 FillDescRef

The `FillDescRef` element is used throughout the 2581 file to establish the relationship to a previously defined `FillDesc`. The `Units` of the predefined `FillDesc` must match the `Units` of the `Ecad` section in which it is instantiated. The `FillDescRef` definition is according to the following characteristics.

FillDescRef

type	FillDescRefType
substGrp	FillDescGroup

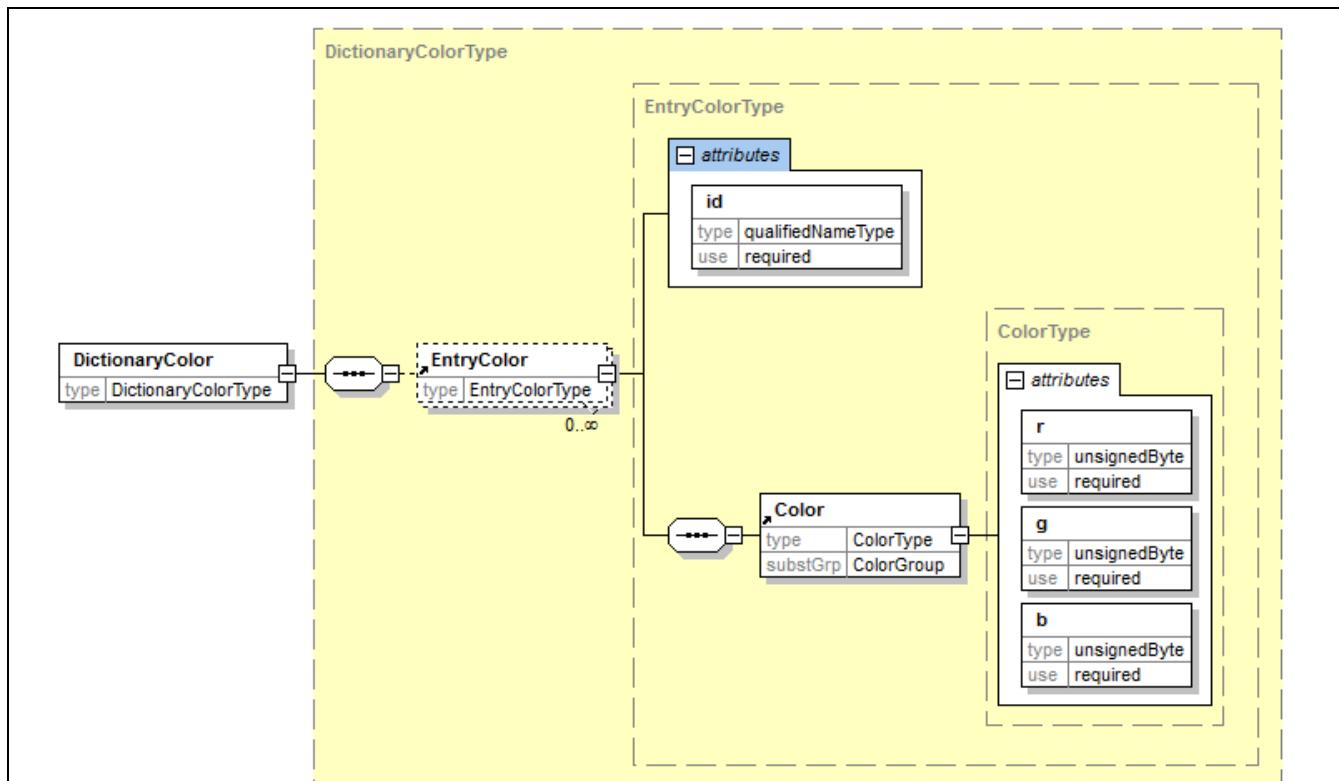
FillDescRefType

attributes	
id	
type	qualifiedNameType
use	required

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
FillDescRef	FillDescRefType	An element used to reference a previously defined <code>FillDesc</code> , contained in the <code>DictionaryFillDesc</code> .	1-n
Id	qualifiedNameType	The identification of the <code>FillDesc</code> being referenced from the <code>DictionaryFillDesc</code> .	1-1

4.12 Content: DictionaryColor

The **DictionaryColor** is intended to provide lookup information on predefined **Color** descriptions. The **DictionaryColor** is maintained as part of a substitution group schema. The intent is to have color descriptions available that are identified by their three color hues and intensity characteristics and a specific name (**id**). They may be reused throughout the file as appropriate. The name (**id**) of a **color** must be unique within the **DictionaryColor**.

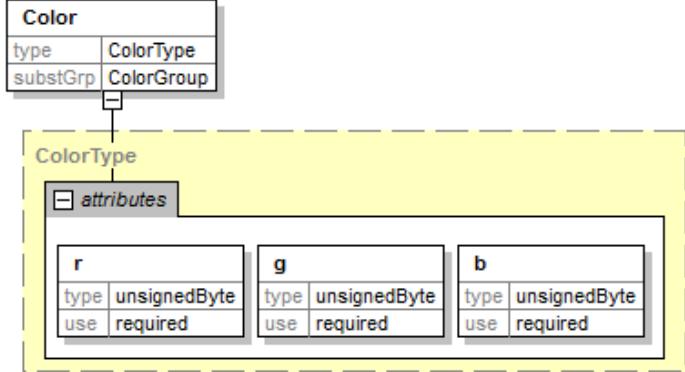


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
DictionaryColor	DictionaryColorType	An element that contains substitution group information using color description criteria, predefined by the user for reuse in the file.	0-1
EntryColor	EntryColorType	An element that establishes the individual characteristic associated with a color substitution that has been identified by the user in the IPC-2581 file.	0-n
id	qualifiedNameType	The qualified description name assigned as an id standard for XML schema color substitution.	1-1
Color	ColorType	A specific color identified through the instantiation of the three color spectrum as a part of the schema within the IPC-2581 file.	1-n

The organization of the **DictionaryColor** is accomplished in accordance with the substitution group description criteria. The **Color** description may be any combination of the three color hues (red, green and blue) at the appropriate intensity according to the specific characteristics identified in the following paragraphs. The **colorRef** function is used in the body of the IPC-2581 file when a specific **Color** has been predefined, assigned a name, and the unique “**id**” is referenced in the file. This feature permits the use of either a predefined **Color**, or defining the details of a **Color** within the file. The description in the file must contain all the features of a particular **Color** under the rules of the particular **color** definition.

4.12.1 Color

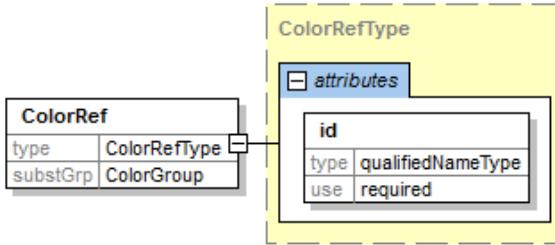
Color is defined by three values that represent the red, green and blue components of the composite color. If r, g, and b are all set to 0, the color is black. If all values are 255 then the color is white. The attributes of a Color element are defined as follows:



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Color	ColorType	The specific description of the color represented by the three attributes.	1-1
r	unsignedByte	Defines the red color intensity as a value between 0 and 255.	1-1
g	unsignedByte	Defines the green color intensity as a value between 0 and 255.	1-1
b	unsignedByte	Defines the blue color intensity as a value between 0 and 255.	1-1

4.12.2 ColorRef

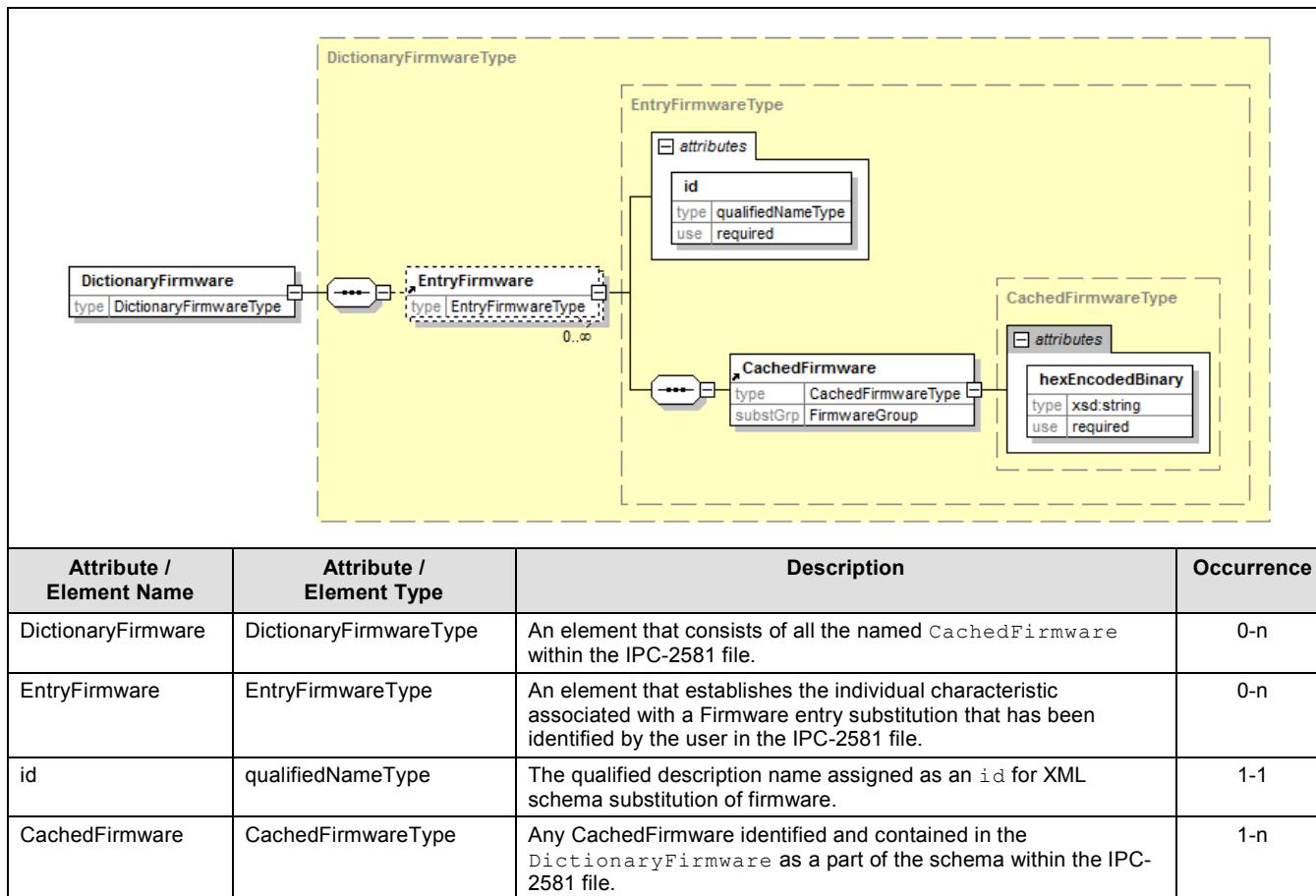
The ColorRef element is used throughout the 2581 file to establish the relationship to a previously defined Color. The ColorRef definition is according to the following characteristics.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
ColorRef	ColorRefType	The specific reference to a predefined color represented by the three attributes and contained in the DictionaryColor.	1-1
id	qualifiedNameType	The qualified description name assigned as an id standard for XML schema color substitution.	1-1

4.13 Content: DictionaryFirmware

The DictionaryFirmware is intended to provide lookup information on predefined CachedFirmware. The DictionaryFirmware is maintained as part of a substitution group schema. The intent is to have firmware descriptions available that are identified by their characteristics and a specific name (id). They may be reused throughout the file as appropriate. The name (id) of a CachedFirmware must be unique within the DictionaryFirmware.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
DictionaryFirmware	DictionaryFirmwareType	An element that consists of all the named CachedFirmware within the IPC-2581 file.	0-n
EntryFirmware	EntryFirmwareType	An element that establishes the individual characteristic associated with a Firmware entry substitution that has been identified by the user in the IPC-2581 file.	0-n
id	qualifiedNameType	The qualified description name assigned as an id for XML schema substitution of firmware.	1-1
CachedFirmware	CachedFirmwareType	Any CachedFirmware identified and contained in the DictionaryFirmware as a part of the schema within the IPC-2581 file.	1-n

The organization of the DictionaryFirmware is accomplished in accordance with the substitution group description criteria. The CachedFirmware description may be any hexEncodedBinary string according to the specific characteristics identified in the following paragraphs. The FirmwareRef function is used in the body of the IPC-2581 file when a specific CachedFirmware has been predefined, assigned a name, and the unique "id" is referenced in the file. This feature permits the use of either a predefined CachedFirmware, or defining the details of the Firmware associated with a particular Component identified by reference designator in the Step section within the file. The description in the file must contain all the features of a particular Firmware under the rules of the particular encoded definition.

4.13.1 CachedFirmware

The `CachedFirmware` element is used to describe firmware that will be contained in the `DictionaryFirmware`. The details are in accordance to the following characteristics.

```

  classDiagram
    CachedFirmware <|-- CachedFirmwareType
    CachedFirmware {
      type : CachedFirmwareType
      substGrp : FirmwareGroup
    }
    CachedFirmwareType {
      attributes
      hexEncodedBinary
      hexEncodedBinary {
        type : xsd:string
        use : required
      }
    }
  
```

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
CachedFirmware	CachedFirmwareType	The firmware description needed by a particular component that becomes part of the predefined firmware in the <code>DictionaryFirmware</code> .	1-1
hexEncodedBinary	string	An attribute defining the binary code that shall be added to a particular component and which is contained in the <code>DictionaryFirmware</code> .	1-1

4.13.2 FirmwareRef

The `FirmwareRef` element is used throughout the 2581 file to establish the relationship to a previously defined `CashedFirmware`. The `FirmwareRef` definition is according to the following characteristics.

```

  classDiagram
    FirmwareRef <|-- FirmwareRefType
    FirmwareRef {
      type : FirmwareRefType
      substGrp : FirmwareGroup
    }
    FirmwareRefType {
      attributes
      id
      id {
        type : qualifiedNameType
        use : required
      }
    }
  
```

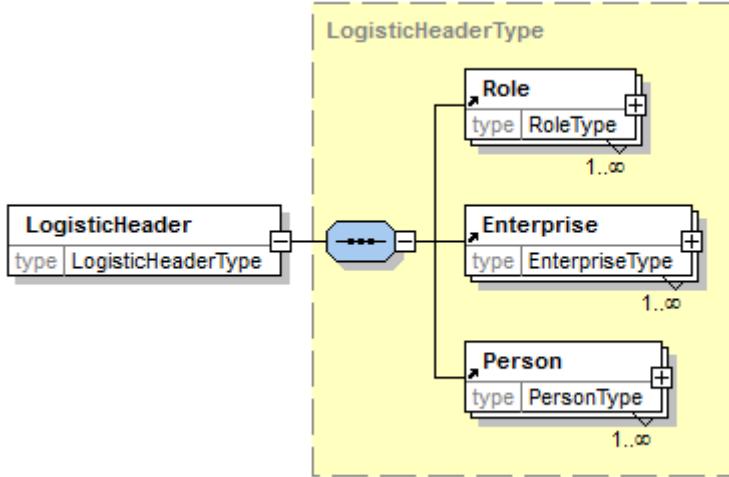
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
FirmwareRef	FirmwareRefType	The specific reference to firmware previously defined and contained in the <code>DictionaryFirmware</code> .	1-1
id	qualifiedNameType	The qualified name of <code>CashedFirmware</code> contained in the <code>DictionaryFirmware</code> .	1-1

5 LOGISTIC HEADER

The `LogisticHeader` element consists of information about the owner of the IPC-2581 file. It can be used for configuration management or contact information. The enterprise is also linked to the Bill of Material and the Approved Vendor List.

5.1 LogisticHeader

The `LogisticHeader` describes information pertaining to ordering and delivery. This includes the role played by the individual providing ordering and delivery information, the title of the person responsible and the address and particulars of the enterprise.

 <pre> classDiagram class LogisticHeader { type LogisticHeaderType } class LogisticHeaderType { class Role { type RoleType } class Enterprise { type EnterpriseType } class Person { type PersonType } } LogisticHeader "1..>" LogisticHeaderType Role "1..>" LogisticHeaderType Enterprise "1..>" LogisticHeaderType Person "1..>" LogisticHeaderType </pre>			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
LogisticHeader	LogisticHeaderType	The <code>LogisticHeader</code> describes information pertaining to ordering and delivery.	1-1
Role	RoleType	Defines the type of activity within the enterprise.	1-n
Enterprise	EnterpriseType	Provides information about the company identified in the BOM or Avl schema.	1-n
Person	PersonType	Identifies the person involved in sending receiving or having anything to do in the trading partner relationship.	1-n

```

<LogisticHeader>
  <Role name = "OWNER" description = "IPC Staff" publicKey = "x6d8rf7xd90mJHR13" authority = "25XX standard development"/>
  <Enterprise id = "IPC" name = "IPC Incorporated - Association Connecting Electronics Industries" code = "57834" codeType = "CAGE"
    address1 = "3000 Lakeside Drive " city = "Bannockburn" stateProvince = "Illinois" country = "US" postalCode = "60015" phone
    = "+1-847-597-2839" fax = "+1-847-597-2839" email = "Dieterbergman@ipc.org" url = "www.ipc.org"/>
  <Person name = "Dieter W. Bergman" enterpriseRef = "IPC" title = "Director Technology Transfer" email = "Bergdi@ipc.org" phone =
    "847-597-2839" fax = "847-615-7105" mailstop = "309S " roleRef = "Owner"/>
</LogisticHeader>
  
```

5.2 Role

A **Role** element declares a type of activity within an Enterprise. The attribute values of the **Role** based on the requirements of the activities performed by the role.

```

classDiagram
    class Role {
        type RoleType
    }
    class RoleType {
        attributes
        |+ id
        |+ roleFunction
        |+ description
        |+ publicKey
        |+ authority
    }
    Role "1" -- "1" RoleType
    RoleType "1" -- "1" attributes
    attributes "1" -- "1" id
    attributes "1" -- "1" roleFunction
    attributes "1" -- "1" description
    attributes "1" -- "1" publicKey
    attributes "1" -- "1" authority
    table {
        id
        roleFunction
        description
        publicKey
        authority
    }
    table {
        type xsd:string
        use required
    }
    table {
        type roleFunctionType
        use required
    }
    table {
        type xsd:string
        use required
    }
    table {
        type xsd:base64Binary
        use required
    }
    table {
        type xsd:string
        use required
    }

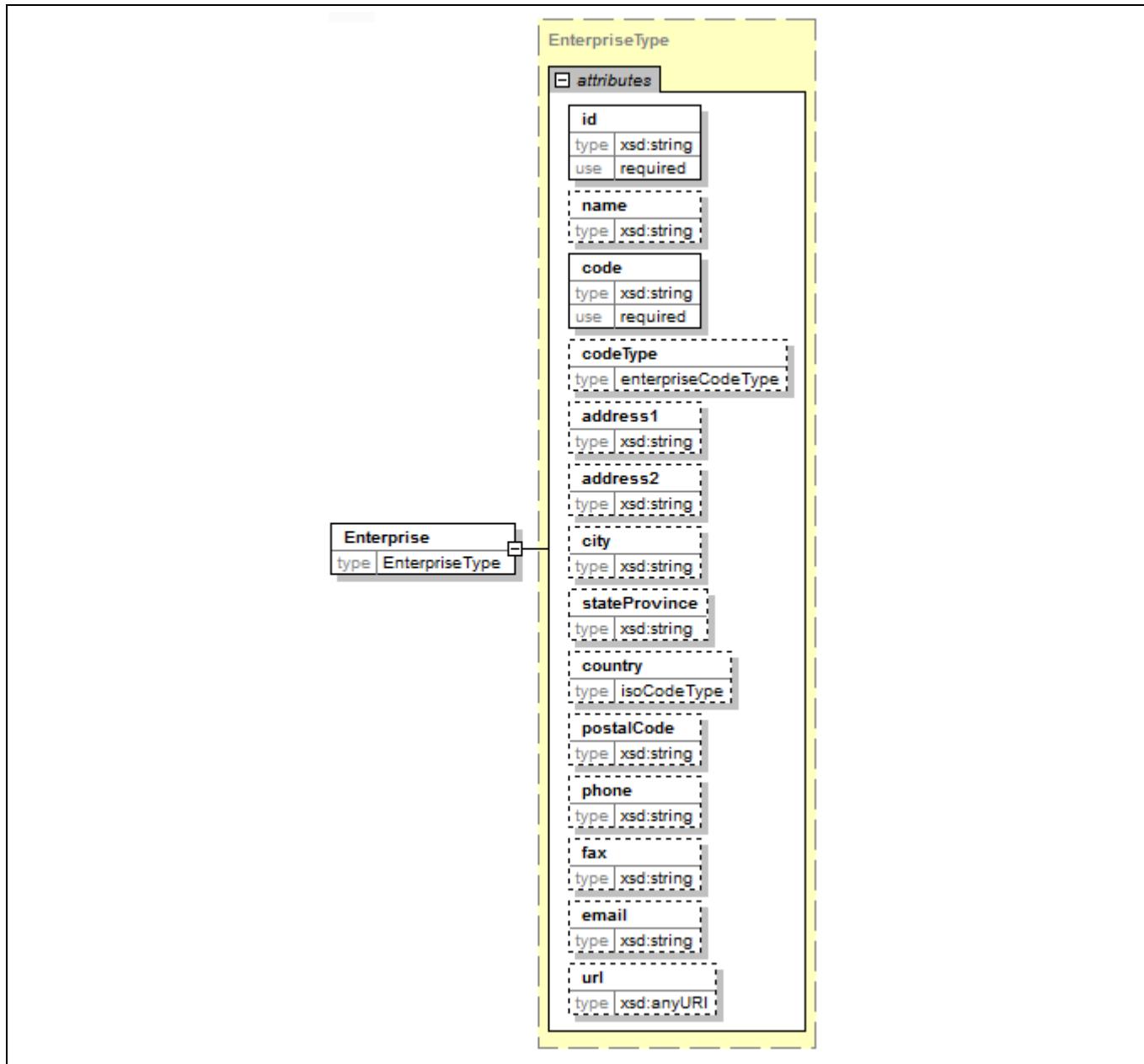
```

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Role	RoleType	Defines the type of activity within the enterprise.	1-n
id	shortNameType	A short name that must be consistent throughout the 2581 file that provides the identification of the role. A globally unique name that identifies the specific role responsibility associated with the general role descriptions.	1-1
roleFunction	roleFunctionType	<p>The attribute that defines a globally unique identification of the role within an enterprise. The description uniquely identifies a role type used by the enterprise. The name is a <code>roleType</code> (a restricted <code>xsd:string</code>) that must be unique within the global (top-level) namespace of the IPC-2581 file.</p> <p>The standard IPC role types are defined as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SENDER: Identifies the person sending out the IPC-2581 file. OWNER: Identifies the person who maintains the configuration management of the IPC-2581 file and has the right to increment the file history number of the IPC-2581 file. RECEIVER: Identifies the person receiving the IPC-2581 file. DESIGNER: Identifies the designer of the product described in the IPC-2581 file. ENGINEER: Identifies the engineer who is responsible for the product described in the IPC-2581 file. BUYER: Identifies the person who is responsible for payment. CUSTOMERSERVICE: Identifies the customer service representative who is responsible for the account. DELIVERTO: Identifies the person in the receiving department who takes possession of the shipment in the name of the enterprise. BILLTO: Identifies the person in the billing or purchasing department to whom the billing should be addressed. OTHER: Any other name however completing the description attribute is recommended 	1-1
description	string	The <code>description</code> attribute further defines a role within an enterprise in order to highlight the specific capabilities of the <code>roleFunction</code> in harmony with the <code>FunctionMode</code> of the file. (The <code>description</code> is optional if the IPC definition is to be used, but useful in order to differentiate between several <code>ENGINEER</code> functions.)	0-1
publicKey	base64Binary	The <code>publicKey</code> attribute of a role holds the public encryption key if one exists for the role. The key is base64 encoded. (See IETF RFC 1421 for the base64 algorithm) If a role <code>publicKey</code> is present it can be used instead of a Person/ <code>publicKey</code> to encrypt data. The role's <code>publicKey</code> is used to encrypt data so only that someone with access to the role's private key can access the data.	0-1

authority	string	The access level associated with this role as defined by the system referenced by <code>externalConfigurationControlEntryPoint</code>	0-1
<LogisticHeader> <Role id = "CircuitDesign" function = "ENGINEER" description = "In charge of Impedance Control"/> <Role id = "LayoutPerson" function = "ENGINEER"/> <Role id = "PurchasingNo1" function = "BUYER" description = "To be informed of cost modification"/> <Role id = "LayoutEngineer" function = "DESIGNER"/> </LogisticHeader>			

5.3 Enterprise

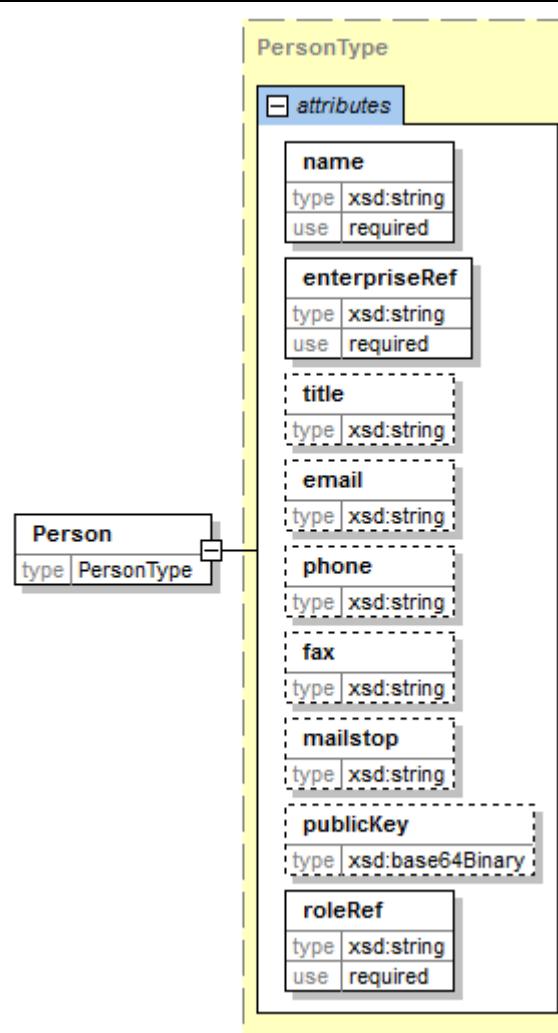
The `Enterprise` element provides information about an enterprise that will be referenced within the IPC-2581 file. The attributes of the `Enterprise` element are defined as follows:



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Enterprise	EnterpriseType	Provides information about the company identified in the <code>Bom</code> or <code>Avl</code> schema.	1-n
id	shortNameType	The id uniquely identifies an enterprise throughout the IPC-2581 file. The id is a <code>shortName</code> data type (a restricted xsd: string) that must be unique within the global (top-level) namespace of the IPC-2581 file. (Suggest "XYZ", "ACME" ...).	1-1
name	string	The full name of the enterprise.	0-1
code	string	Value of a CAGE or DUNS code. If no CAGE or DUNS code is available use "NONE" as the value of the code attribute.	1-1
codeType	enterpriseCodeType	One of DUNS or CAGE. The default is DUNS. If the DUNS codeType is selected, then the <code>code</code> attribute of <code>Enterprise</code> is the D-U-N-S Number of the enterprise. (See the reference to D&B D-U-N-S Number at http://www.dnb.com/) If the CAGE codeType is used then the CAGE code of the <code>Enterprise</code> is in the code attribute of <code>Enterprise</code> . (see http://www.dscc.dla.mil/offices/sourcedev/cage.html).	0-1
address1	string	The street address of the <code>Enterprise</code> .	0-1
address2	string	Additional address information for the <code>Enterprise</code> .	0-1
city	string	The <code>city</code> .	0-1
stateProvince	string	The state or province.	0-1
country	isoCodeType	The two-letter ISO country code from the ISO 3166 standard. (See ftp://info.ripe.net/iso3166-countrycodes). The default country is "US."	0-1
postalCode	string	The postal code.	0-1
phone	string	The general phone number for the <code>Enterprise</code> .	0-1
fax	string	The phone number of the <code>Enterprise</code> fax machine.	0-1
email	string	The email address for the <code>Enterprise</code> .	0-1
url	anyURI	The Internet HTTP Web address of the <code>Enterprise</code> .	0-1
<LogisticHeader>			
<Role name = "ENGINEER" description = "responsible for data in file"/>			
<Enterprise id = "Acme" name = "Acme Tool and Die Company Inc." code = "1433" codeType = "DUNNS" address1 = "7347 Concorde Ave." address2 = "suite 42" city = "Camden" stateProvince = "NJ" country = "US" postalCode = "08780" phone = "609-458-5943" fax = "609-458-5900" email = " AcmeCorp@mindspring.com " url = " www.AcmeProducts.com ">			
<Enterprise id = "Masters" name = "Master Spring Manufacturer" code = "NONE" address1 = "3793 Varembe Ave." address2 = "Room 412" city = "Geneva" stateProvince = "Switzerland" country = "CH" phone = "+ 49-22-47 64 84" email = " masters@swisscom.ch ">			
</LogisticHeader>			

5.4 Person

The `Person` element provides information about a person who will be referenced within the IPC-2581 file. The attributes of a `Person` element are defined as follows:



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Person	PersonType	Identifies the person involved in sending receiving or having anything to do in the trading partner relationship.	1-n
name	string	A string that uniquely identifies the person throughout the IPC-2581 file. The Name must be unique within the global (top-level) namespace of the IPC-2581 file. It may be the full legal name or a known abbreviation.	1-1
enterpriseRef	string	The shortName of the person's company or enterprise. If no enterprise exists, the term "SELF" should be used.	1-1
title	string	The job title of the person.	0-1
email	string	The email address of the person.	0-1
phone	string	The phone number of the person.	0-1
fax	string	The fax machine phone number of the person.	0-1

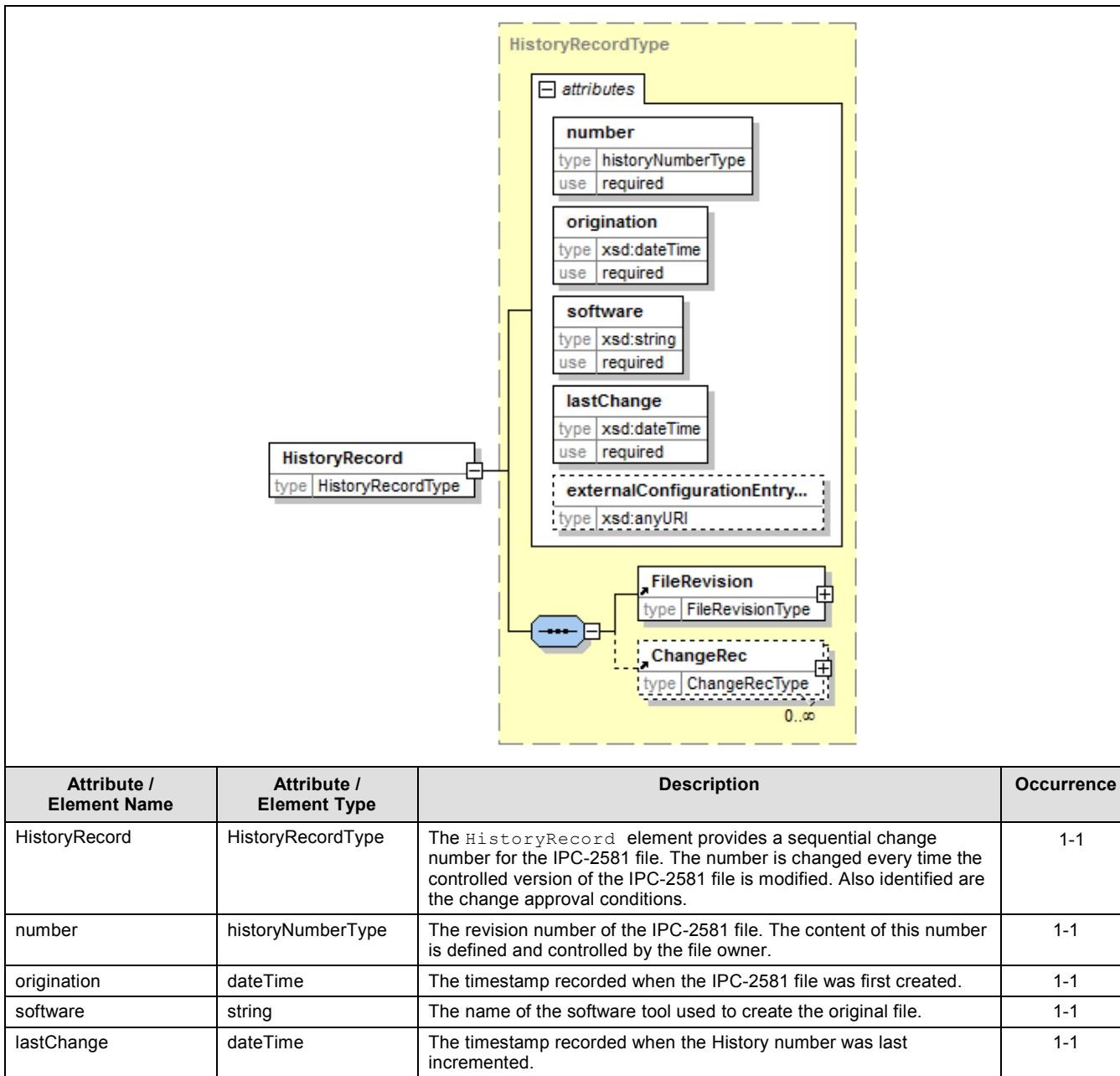
mailstop	string	The mail stop within the Enterprise, however this may be an alternate address from the Enterprise should the mail be directed somewhere else. In that event, the Enterprise shall be named, but contain no address or contact information.	0-1
publicKey	base64Binary	The publicKey attribute of a person holds the public encryption key if one exists for the person. The key is base64 encoded. (see IETF RFC 1421 for the base64 algorithm) The person's publicKey is used to encrypt data so only that person can access the data.	0-1
roleRef	string	A reference to a globally unique name (the Role "id" attribute) that identifies the specific role responsibility associated with the general "roleFunction" descriptions.	1-1
<pre> <LogisticHeader> <Person name = "Dilbert" enterpriseRef = "Acme" email = "jdilbert@acme.com" phone = "(301) 555-1212" roleRef = "Purchasing Manager"/> <Person name = "John Jones" enterpriseRef = "Philco Corp" title = "Consultant" email = jones@aol.com phone = "(301) 555-1212" mailstop = "37 Stringer Rd., Overland, OH, 56432" roleRef = "JJ Engineer" /> </LogisticHeader> </pre>			

6 HISTORY RECORD

The History Record element consists of changes performed on the file throughout its history. Several attributes are defined as part of the History as well as two elements. These are file revision and change records elements.

6.1 HistoryRecord

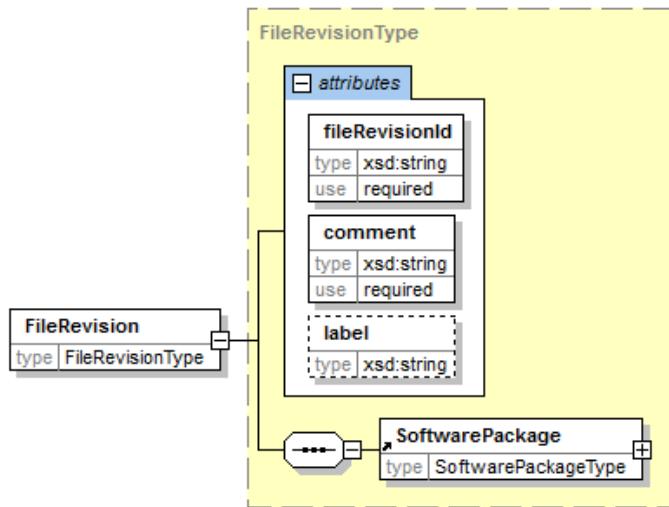
The HistoryRecord element provides a sequential change number for the IPC-2581 file. The number is changed every time the controlled version of the IPC-2581 file is modified. Only the file owner is allowed to change the value of HistoryRecord/number. The attributes of a HistoryRecord element are defined as follows:



externalConfiguration EntryPoint	anyURI	A URI referencing a configuration control system that "owns" the IPC-2581 file contents.	0-1
FileRevision	FileRevisionType	An element that tracks the changes that have been made to an IPC-2581 file. The revision identifier does not necessarily track the revision of the product but does establish the sequence and software tools used to make the changes.	1-1
ChangeRec	ChangeRecType	An element that is required to manage the configuration of the changes made to the product during its development phases and its final configuration in the field.	0-n
<pre><HistoryRecord number = "Example1" origination = "2004-02-11T12:53" software = "ECAD System" lastChange = "2004-02-13T13:24:00"> <FileRevision fileRevisionId = "Example1" comment = "Primitive layout positioning"> <SoftwarePackage name = "Manual Interpretation" vendor = "IPC" revision = "none"> <Certification certificationStatus = "ALPHA" certificationCategory = "DETAILED DRAWING"/> </SoftwarePackage> </FileRevision> </HistoryRecord></pre>			

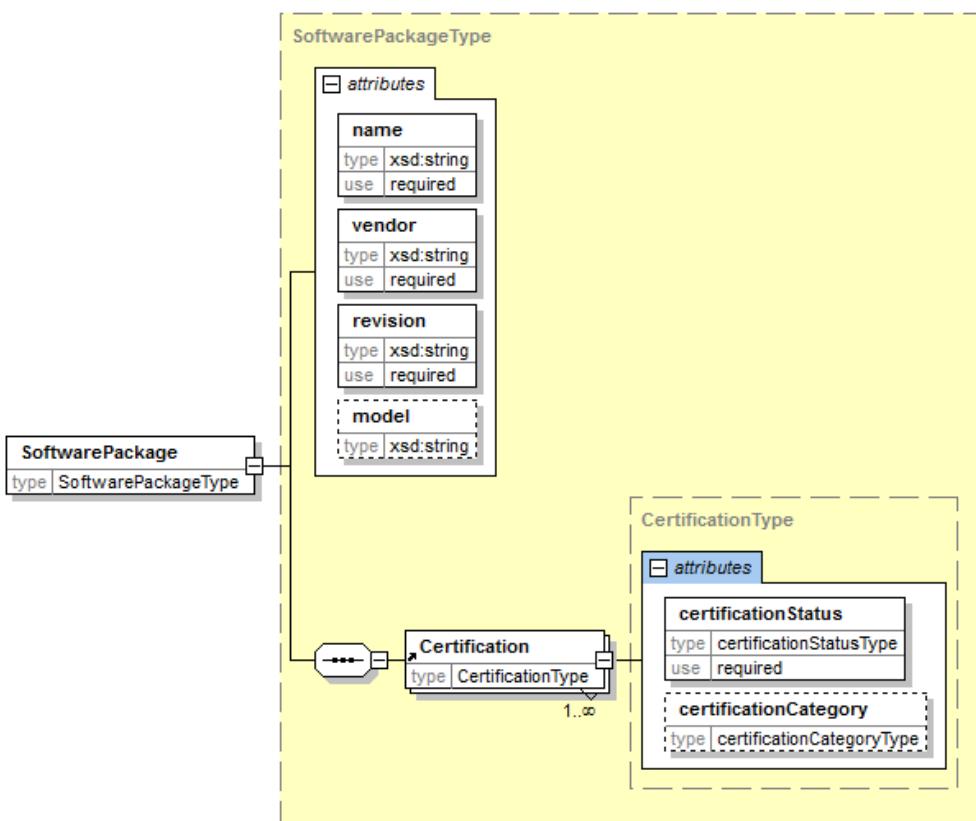
6.2 FileRevision

The `FileRevision` element tracks changes to the IPC-2581 file. The revision identifier does not necessarily track the revision of the product. The purpose of the `FileRevision` is to track which software tools were used to make changes to the file and the sequence in which the changes were made.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
			
FileRevision	FileRevisionType	An element that tracks the changes that have been made to an IPC-2581 file. The revision identifier does not necessarily track the revision of the product but does establish the sequence and software tools used to make the changes.	1-1
fileRevisionId	string	An identifier for the revision. This value may be supplied by a revision control system such as RCS, CVS, or SCCS.	1-1
comment	string	A short description of the revision, such as a changes statement entered by RCS or SCCS.	1-1
label	string	A label that can be applied to a branch head. The label can be used to associate a file revision of special significance.	0-1
SoftwarePackage	SoftwarePackageType	A nested element, the software package that wrote this revision of the file.	1-1

6.3 SoftwarePackage

The `SoftwarePackage` element is the description of the software package that was used to create the revision to the file. This includes the revision of the software that wrote the file as well as the vendor name and platform model. Also added to the `SoftwarePackage` schema is any certification that has occurred of the software's ability to meet the requirements of the IPC-2581 standard.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
SoftwarePackage	SoftwarePackageType	A nested element, the software package that wrote this revision of the file.	1-1
name	string	The name of the software package that wrote the revision to the file.	1-1
vendor	string	The tool providers name both system and software package.	1-1
revision	string	The revision of the software that wrote the file.	1-1
model	string	The model of the software or release number.	0-1
Certification	CertificationType	The different certifications that the tool or software package has acquired.	1-n
certificationStatus	certificationStatusType	An enumerated string that defines the status as one of four types. ALPHA BETA CERTIFIED SELFTEST.	1-1

certificationCategory	certificationCategory Type	The various categories that exist for certification of the type of activities related to building electronic assemblies. An enumerated string consisting of: ASSEMBLYDRAWING ASSEMBLYFixtureGeneration ASSEMBLYPANEL ASSEMBLYPRETOOLS ASSEMBLYTESTFixtureGeneration ASSEMBLYTESTGeneration BOARDFabrication BOARDFixtureGeneration BOARDPanel BOARDTESTGeneration COMPONENTPlacement DETAILEDdrawing FABRICATIONdrawing GENERALASSEMBLY GLUEDOT MECHANICALHARDWARE MULTIBOARDPARTLIST PHOTOTOOLS SCHEMATICDRAWINGS SINGLEBOARDPARTLIST SOLDERSTENCILPASTE SPECSCOURCECONTROLDRAWING EMBEDDEDCOMPONENT OTHER	0-1
-----------------------	-------------------------------	--	-----

6.4 ChangeRec

The `ChangeRec` element is the information needed for configuration management of the changes made to the product that the data file represents. The characteristics are stored by the `datecode` that the change record was executed. The information can also be used to obtain approval of a suggested change.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
ChangeRec	ChangeRecType	An element that is required to manage the configuration of the changes made to the product during its development phases and its final configuration in the field.	0-n
datetime	dateTime	The timestamp recorded when the change was made to the file.	1-n
personRef	qualifiedNameType	The pointer to the 'name' of the person listed in the <code>LogisticHeader</code> who initiated the change.	1-1
application	string	The effectiveness of the change indicating when it becomes active, such as after so many completed units.	1-1
change	string	A short description of the change.	1-1
Approval	ApprovalType	A nested element that signifies who approved the suggested change submitted by the design, fabrication, assembly or test operation.	0-n
datetime	dateTime	The timestamp recorded when the change made to the file was approved.	0-n 1-1
personRef	qualifiedNameType	The pointer to the 'name' of the person listed in the <code>LogisticHeader</code> who approved the change.	1-1
<pre> <ChangeRec datetime = "2010-06-12T13:20:00" personRef = "Harry Jones" application = "The change is to be implemented immediately with all produced items reworked" change = "Replace the chip resistors with new part number 34-67-95, sixteen places"/> <Approval datetime = "2010-06-13T10:32:30" personRef = "John Smithy"/> </pre>			

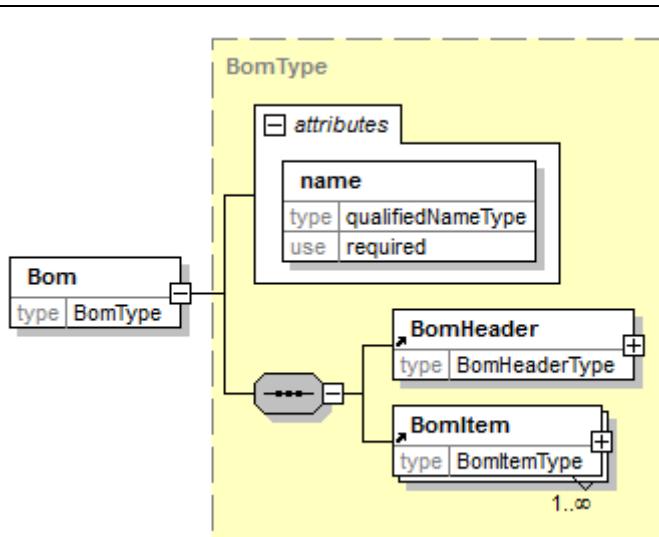
7 BOM (Material List)

This section describes the Bill of Materials for the printed board and printed board assembly. A bill of materials is a list of all the different materials and components to be used in the manufacture of the electronic assembly. The information is arranged by a specific category of material or components and then by the OEM Design Number (ODN). This is the number assigned by the owner of the file. Each ODN has a list of attributes and is accompanied by a list of the various specific uses of the materials or components on the electronic assembly, each with its private name or reference designator.

The `BOM` dataset represents the list of materials or components found on a particular board, keyed by the OEM Design Number (ODN). The original `BOM` is delivered by the owner of the file (OEM, EMS, etc.) in the early stages of the design. The `Bom` element is composed of the `BomHeader` and the `BomData`.

For example, ODN **348324-001** can be of package **pqfp100**, has an Internal Part Number (IPN) **30020A** and may have four occurrences on the board, labeled **U14**, **U15**, **U75**, **U76**. Each occurrence is called a Reference Designator (RefDes for short).

The IPC-2581 file can contain several `BOM` elements. Each one has a `BomHeader` sub-element with board and date/time information. The main data resides in the sub-element `BomData`.

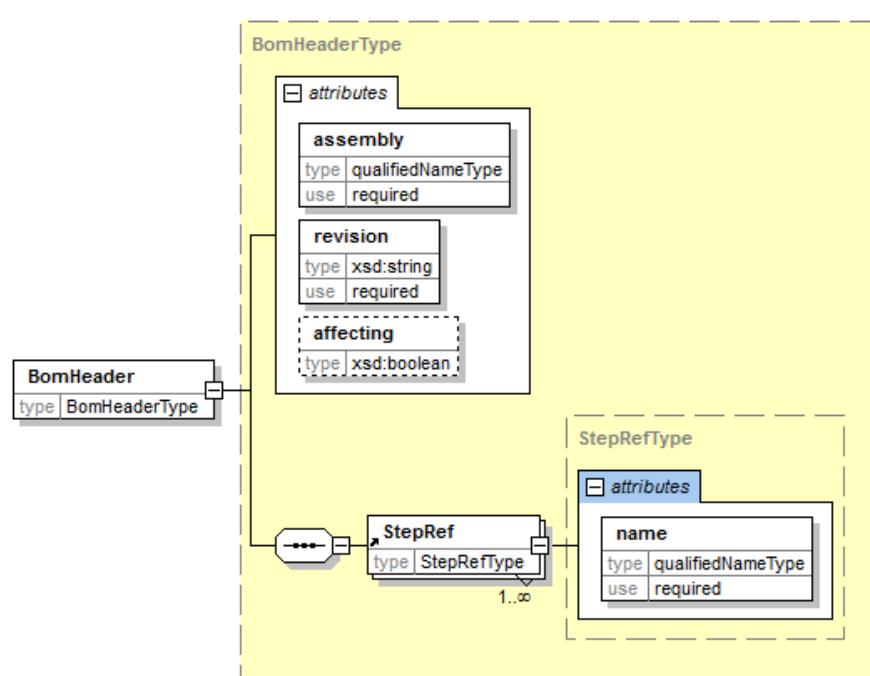


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Bom	BomType	The <code>Bom</code> element describes the Bill of Materials for the printed board and printed board assembly. A bill of materials is a list of all the different materials and components to be used in the manufacture of the electronic assembly.	1-1
name	qualifiedNameType	The name string that identifies the specific <code>Bom</code> section. This name is referenced in the <code>AvlDataHeader</code> element.	1-1
BomHeader	BomHeaderType	A nested element containing identification and logistical information about the <code>Bom</code> .	1-1
BomItem	BomItemType	The individual elements that define the details of each of the items in the <code>Bom</code> .	1-n

```
<Bom name = "TestBoard1">
<BomHeader assembly = "Karens Design" revision = "Prototype" stepListRef = "KarensBoard"/>
  <BomItem OEMDesignNumberRef = "Fabricated" quantity = "1" pinCount = "4" category = "ELECTRICAL"  description = "Card Edge
Connector">
    <RefDes name = "J1" populate = "FALSE"/>
    <Characteristics category = "ELECTRICAL"/>
  </BomItem>
  <BomItem OEMDesignNumberRef = "Sample1234" quantity = "1" pinCount = "8" category = "ELECTRICAL" internalPartNumber =
    "Molex 354892" description = "Bifurcated Thru-hole connector"/>
    <RefDes name = "J2" packageRef ="Connector1" populate = "TRUE"/>      <Characteristics category = "ELECTRICAL"/>
  </BomItem>
  <BomItem OEMDesignNumberRef = "SOIC129867" quantity = "1" pinCount = "8" category = "ELECTRICAL" internalPartNumber =
    "Phillips IC2436" description = "SOIC 1.27 pitch">  /
    <RefDes name = "U1" packageRef = "SOIC12" populate = "TRUE"/>      <Characteristics category = "ELECTRICAL">
      <Textual definitionSource = "Pretested Logic" textualCharacteristicName = "Per Supplier Data Sheet"/>
    </Characteristics>
  </BomItem>
  <BomItem OEMDesignNumberRef = "CAP 24A1846" quantity = "1" pinCount = "2" category = "ELECTRICAL" internalPartNumber =
    "Phillips Cap1235" description = "3225 Surface Mount Capacitor">
    <RefDes name = "C1" packageRef = "Capacitor1" populate = "TRUE" />      <Characteristics category = "ELECTRICAL">
      <Measured measuredCharacteristicName = "Capacitance" measuredCharacteristicValue = "20"
        engineeringUnitOfMeasure = "Microfarads" engineeringNegativeTolerance = "3 " engineering
        PositiveTolerance = "3"/>
```

7.1 BOM Header

Each `Bom` in the IPC-2581 file has a `BomHeader` element. This is a mandatory requirement as a part of the `Bom` element. The following characteristics are necessary to properly describe a `Bom`.

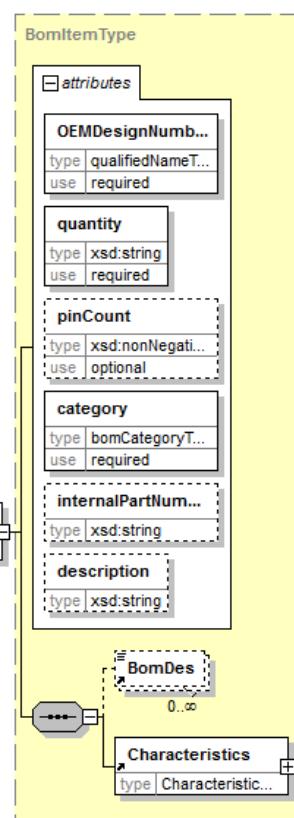


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
<code>BomHeader</code>	<code>BomHeaderType</code>	A nested element containing identification and logistical information about the <code>Bom</code> .	1-1
<code>assembly</code>	<code>qualifiedNameType</code>	Electronic assembly name as parsed from the <code>Bom</code> file.	1-1
<code>revision</code>	<code>string</code>	Revision as parsed from the <code>Bom</code> file.	1-1
<code>affecting</code>	<code>boolean</code>	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). True equals that the current BOM was used in the assembly merge process in the job and therefore was the affecting one. This is due to the fact that there can be multiple BOMs in a job, but only one has been used to affect the current top and bottom component placements sections.	0-1
<code>stepRef</code>	<code>qualifiedNameType</code>	Identification of specific steps used to help describe the <code>BomItem</code> within the category of materials	1-n

7.2 BomItem

Each `BomItem` is a part of the `BomItem` list. A `BomItem` consists of a variety of attributes. `BomItem` contains the reference to the OEM Design Number (ODN), the line item of the ODN, a quantity of parts or material required, an optional pin count for component mounting, a required category of the `BomItem` an optional `internalPartNumber` (IPN), and an optional description of the `BomItem`. The `BomItem` also contains two additional elements that include the list of the bill of material designators (`BomDes`) associated with the `BomItem`, and the characteristics (Characteristics) associated with describing how the bom item is measured, ranged, enumerated, or identified in textual information. Multiple `BomDes` lists may be maintained since there may be several designator file locations.

The attributes are shown in the following table and are a part of the `Bom` section of the IPC-2581 file.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
BomItem	BomItemType	The individual elements that define the details of each of the items in the Bom.	1-n
OEMDesignNumberRef	qualifiedNameType	A qualified name referencing the OEM part number data.	1-1
quantity	string	The amount of the instances of this item in the board or assembly. This may be a length in the units of the 2581 file, a nonNegativeInteger or an As Required (AR) designation to signify as needed quantity.	1-1
pinCount	nonNegativeInteger	The number of physical pin terminations on the package shown as a lineitem. The number includes power and ground and thermal pads whether connected or not connected to a net.	0-n
category	bomCategoryType	The category of the bomItem as an enumerated string being either ELECTRICAL PROGRAMMABLE MECHANICAL MATERIAL DOCUMENT	1-1
internalPartNumber	string	Internal or warehouse stock part identifier.	1-1
description	string	The description of the BomItem.	0-1
BomDes	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the designation of Bom Items as they relate to the category identified by the LayerFunction. The substitution includes Reference designators (for components), Material designators (for Material call-outs), Documentation designators (for drawings, graphics or specifications) and Tool Designators (for tools, fixtures or templates) required to be identified in the Bill of Material.	0-n
Characteristics	CharacteristicsType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together and also a reference to a describing line in an external file.	1-1

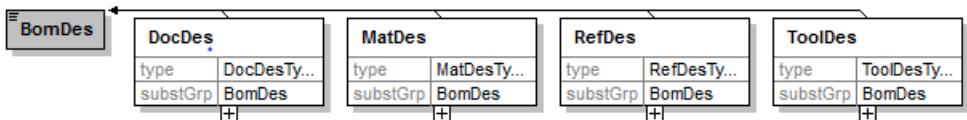
```

<Bom name = "TestBoard1">
  <BomHeader assembly = "Karens Design" revision = "Prototype" stepListRef = "KarensBoard"/>
  <BomItem OEMDesignNumberRef = "Fabricated" quantity = "1" pinCount = "4" category = "ELECTRICAL" description = "Card Edge Connector">
    <RefDes name = "J1" populate = "FALSE"/>
    <Characteristics category = "ELECTRICAL"/>
  </BomItem>
  <BomItem OEMDesignNumberRef = "Sample1234" quantity = "1" pinCount = "8" category = "ELECTRICAL" internalPartNumber =
    "Molex 354892" description = "Bifurcated Thru-hole connector">
    <RefDes name = "J2" packageRef = "Connector1" populate = "TRUE"/>
    <Characteristics category = "ELECTRICAL"/>
  </BomItem>
  <BomItem OEMDesignNumberRef = "SOIC129867" quantity = "1" pinCount = "8" category = "ELECTRICAL" internalPartNumber =
    "Phillips IC2436" description = "SOIC 1.27 pitch">
    <RefDes name = "U1" packageRef = "SOIC12" populate = "TRUE"/>
    <Characteristics category = "ELECTRICAL">
      <Textual definitionSource = "Pretested Logic" textualCharacteristicName = "Per Supplier Data Sheet"/>
    </Characteristics>
  </BomItem>
  <BomItem OEMDesignNumberRef = "CAP 24A1846" quantity = "1" pinCount = "2" category = "ELECTRICAL" internalPartNumber =
    "Phillips Cap1235" description = "3225 Surface Mount Capacitor">
    <RefDes name = "C1" packageRef = "Capacitor1" populate = "TRUE"/>
    <Characteristics category = "ELECTRICAL">
      <Measured measuredCharacteristicName = "Capacitance" measuredCharacteristicValue = "20"
        engineeringUnitOfMeasure = "Microfarads" engineeringNegativeTolerance = "3"
        engineeringPositiveTolerance = "3"/>
    </Characteristics>
  </BomItem>
</Bom>

```

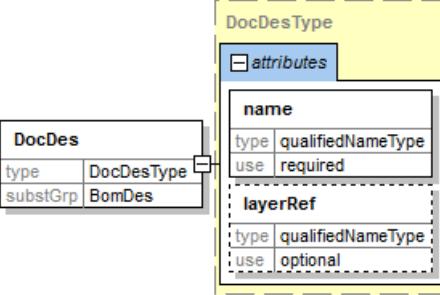
7.2.1 BomDes

The Bill of Material Designations (BomDes) are intended to identify items that may be contained in the Bom and need a specific designation based on their characteristics. There are four groups of designations which include documents, materials, components, and tools/fixtures.

		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">BomDes</th></tr> </thead> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">MatDes</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>type</td><td>MatDesTy...</td></tr> <tr> <td>substGrp</td><td>BomDes</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">RefDes</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>type</td><td>RefDesTy...</td></tr> <tr> <td>substGrp</td><td>BomDes</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">ToolDes</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>type</td><td>ToolDesTy...</td></tr> <tr> <td>substGrp</td><td>BomDes</td></tr> </tbody> </table>				BomDes		MatDes		type	MatDesTy...	substGrp	BomDes	RefDes		type	RefDesTy...	substGrp	BomDes	ToolDes		type	ToolDesTy...	substGrp	BomDes
BomDes																									
MatDes																									
type	MatDesTy...																								
substGrp	BomDes																								
RefDes																									
type	RefDesTy...																								
substGrp	BomDes																								
ToolDes																									
type	ToolDesTy...																								
substGrp	BomDes																								
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence																						
BomDes	BomDescType	A substitution group that permits the designation of Bom Items as they relate to the category identified by the LayerFunction.	0-n																						
DocDes	DocDesType	A Bom item designation used to identify “Documents” that are contained in the Bill of Material and may be referenced throughout the 2581 file.	0-n																						
MatDes	MatDesType	A Bom item designation used to identify “Materials” that are contained in the Bill of Material and may be referenced throughout the 2581 file.	0-n																						
RefDes	RefDesType	A Bom item designation used to identify “Components” that are contained in the Bill of Material and may be referenced throughout the 2581 file.	0-n																						
ToolDes	ToolDesType	A Bom item designation used to identify “Tools & Fixtures” that are contained in the Bill of Material and may be referenced throughout the 2581 file.																							

7.2.1.1 DocDes

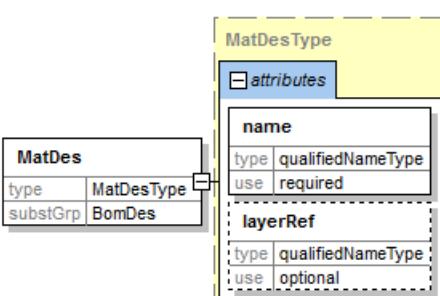
A Bom item designation used to identify “**Documents**” that are contained in the Bill of Material and may be referenced throughout the 2581 file.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
DocDes	BomDesType	A Bom item designation used to identify the properties of specific documents contained in a 2581 file.	0-n
Name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned as a designation for documents consisting of a combination of letter(s) and number(s)	1-1
layerRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to the identification of the unique name assigned to a specific layer which identifies a layerFunction describing the documents being identified in the CadData.	0-1

7.2.1.2 MatDes

A Bom item designation used to identify “**Materials**” that are contained in the Bill of Material and may be referenced throughout the 2581 file.

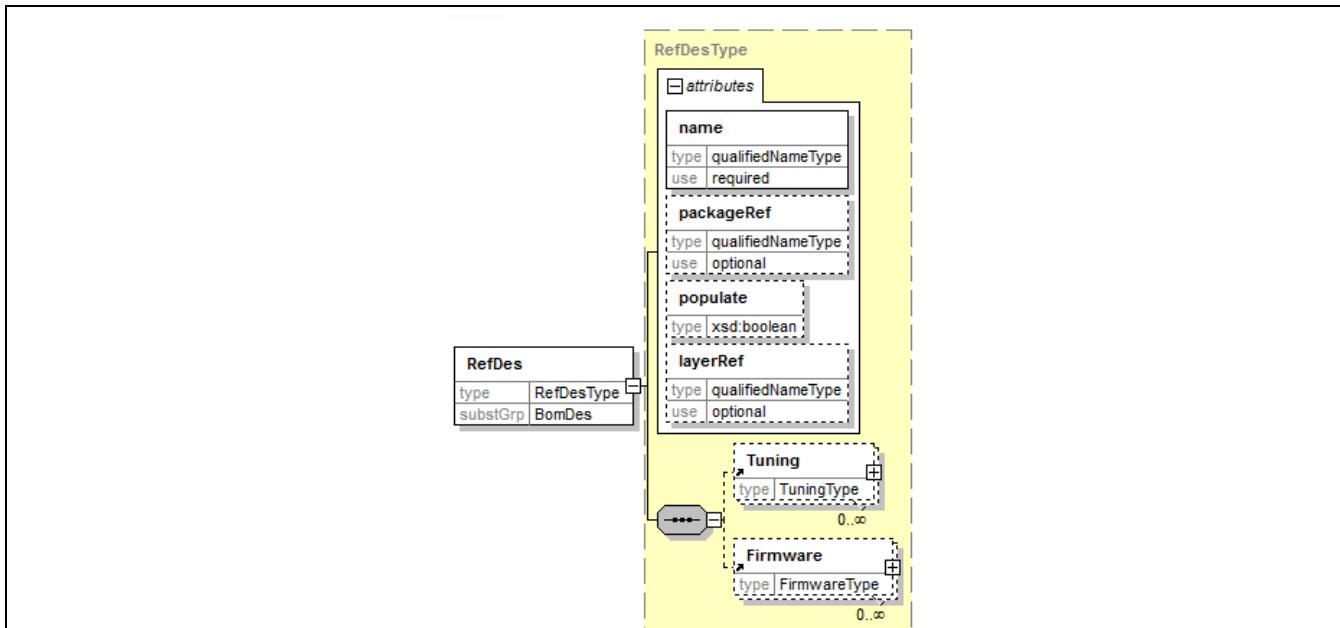


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
MatDes	BomDesType	A Bom item designation used to identify the properties of specific materials contained in a 2581 file.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned as a designation for materials consisting of a combination of letter(s) and number(s)	1-1
layerRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to the identification of the unique name assigned to a specific layer which identifies a layerFunction describing the materials being identified in the CadData.	0-1

7.2.1.3 RefDes

A Bom item designation used to identify “Components” that are contained in the Bill of Material and may be referenced throughout the 2581 file.

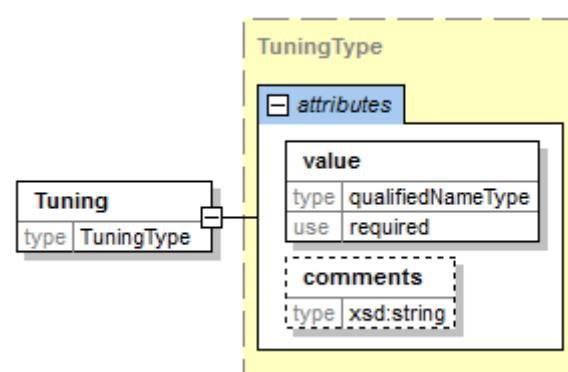
The RefDes is an element that represents the specific reference designator associated with a component that becomes a part of the electronic assembly. This is a mandatory requirement for all BomItems that have a reference designator associated with their ELECTRICAL descriptions. In this instance the standard set of reference designator letters **shall** be used. i.e., R = Resistor, C = Capacitor, CR = Diode etc. The prefix letter M **shall** be used for all MECHANICAL parts, (e.g., terminals, latches, heatsinks, etc.), and S for all Software PROGRAMMABLE BomItems.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
RefDes	RefDesType	A nested element containing the reference designator strings for the individual parts identified in the file for a one to one relationship with the quantity listed for the BomItem.	0-1
name	qualifiedNameType	The qualifiedNameType that identifies the reference designator used as the attribute refDes of the Component element in Step.	1-1
packageRef	qualifiedNameType	The name assigned to the package describing the physical outlines, documentation, and land patterns features related to package pin assignment.	0-1
populate	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). True equals that the RefDes was populated; False indicates that it was not. TRUE is the default.	0-1
layerRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to the identification of the unique name assigned to a specific layer which identifies a layerFunction describing the components being identified in the CadData mounted on the top, bottom or internal to the printed board.	0-1
Tuning	TuningType	A number of conditions that determine any adjustment that is needed for a particular BomItem.	0-n
Firmware	FirmwareType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe the software implementation for an individual BomItem.	0-n

7.2.1.3.1 Tuning

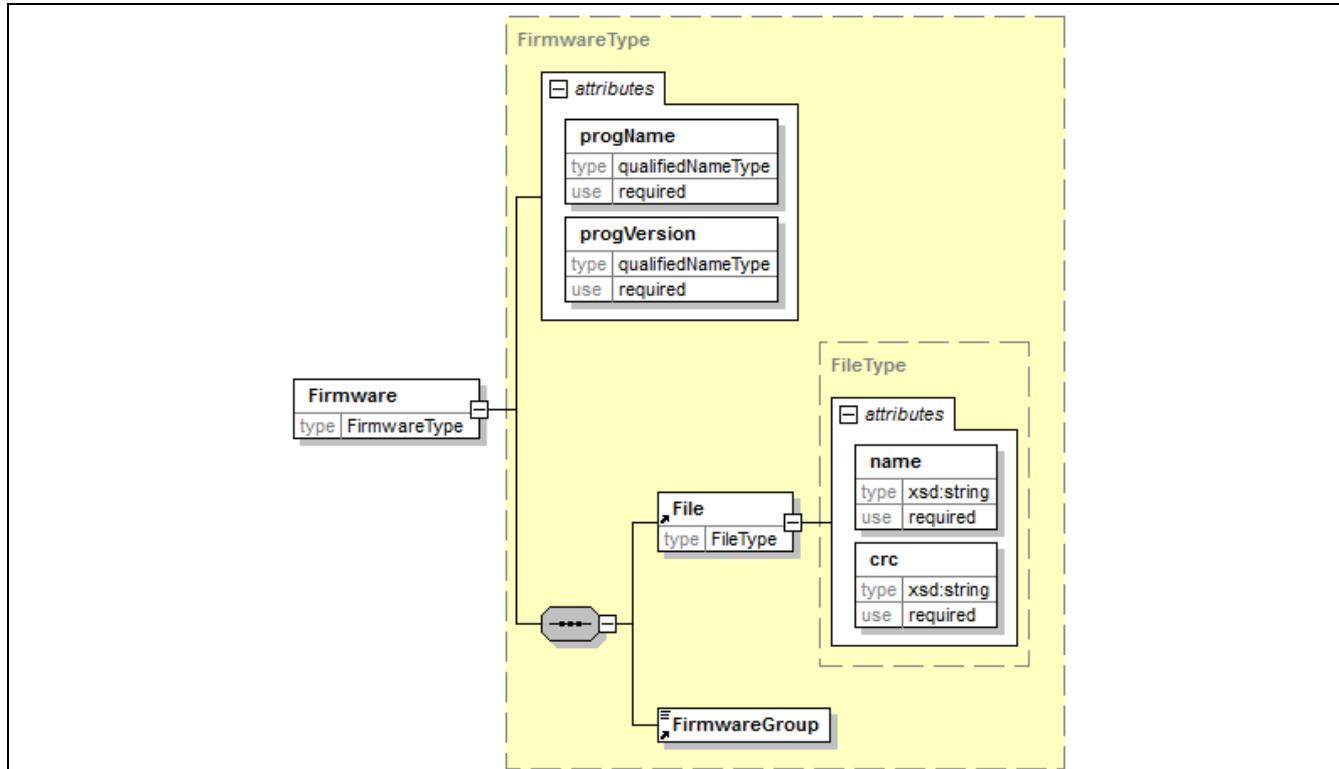
The **Tuning** element represents conditions that determine any adjustment that is needed for a particular **BomItem**.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Tuning	TuningType	A number of conditions that determine any adjustment that is needed for a particular BomItem .	0-n
value	qualifiedNameType	The value of the tuning characteristics and its relationship to the other prescribed values.	1-1
comments	string	Any instructions or comments needed to prescribe the proper tuning.	0-n

7.2.1.3.2 Firmware

A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe the software implementation for an individual `BomItem` and associates the characteristics of the specific reference designators to which the programmable information is to be included.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Firmware	FirmwareType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe the software implementation for an individual <code>BomItem</code> .	0-n
progName	qualifiedNameType	Name of the program to be embedded in the <code>BomItem</code> .	0-1
progVersion	qualifiedNameType	Version of program or revision status.	0-1
File	FileType	Computer file containing the program code to be inserted.	1-1
name	string	Name of the file.	1-1
crc	string	Certification status to verify correct program elements.	1-1
FirmwareGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that specifies the <code>CachedFirmware</code> which has been stored by the user in the <code>DictionaryFirmware</code> .	0-1

7.2.1.3.3 Firmware Group

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
FirmwareGroup	Abstract	A substitution group that specifies the CachedFirmware which has been stored by the user in the DictionaryFirmware.	0-1
CachedFirmware	CashedFirmwareType	The firmware description needed by a particular component that becomes part of the predefined firmware in the DictionaryFirmware.	1-1
hexEncodedBinary	string	An attribute defining the binary code that shall be added to a particular component and which is contained in the DictionaryFirmware.	1-1
FirmwareRef	FirmwareRefType	The specific reference to firmware previously defined and contained in the DictionaryFirmware.	1-1
id	shortNameType	The id uniquely identifies a firmware that has been stored in the firmware dictionary and is used throughout the IPC-2581 file. The id is a shortName data type (a restricted xsd: string) that must be unique within the global (top-level) namespace of the IPC-2581 file.	1-1

7.2.1.4 ToolDes

A Bom item designation used to identify “Tools or Fixtures” that are contained in the Bill of Material and may be referenced throughout the 2581 file.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
ToolDes	ToolDesType	A Bom item designation used to identify the properties of specific tools or fixtures contained in a 2581 file.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned as a designation for tools or fixtures consisting of a combination of letter(s) and number(s)	1-1
layerRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to the identification of the unique name assigned to a specific layer which identifies a layerFunction describing the tools or fixtures being identified in the CadData.	0-1

7.2.2 Characteristics

A group of specific characteristics applicable to a particular `BomItem`; they all relate to one of the categories to which the `BomItem` belongs. Each characteristic has its own level of requirements and are defined under the major element `Characteristics`.

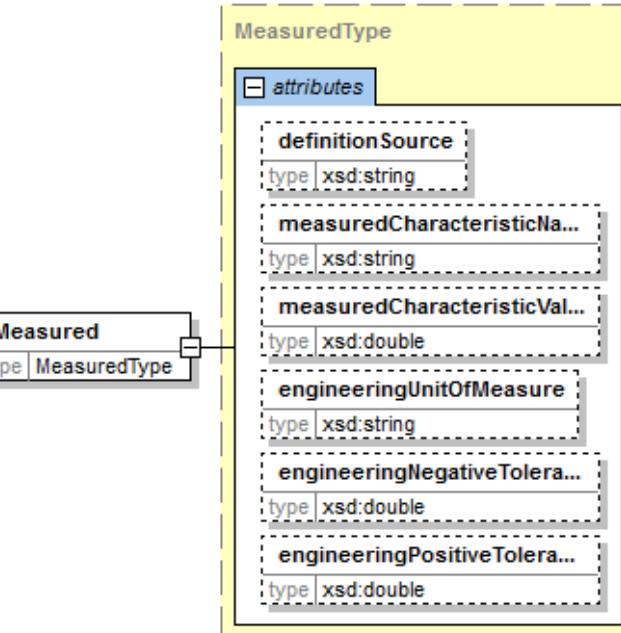
```

classDiagram
    class Characteristics {
        type CharacteristicsType
    }
    Characteristics <|-- CharacteristicsType
    CharacteristicsType <|-- attributes
    attributes <|-- category
    category <|-- type: bomCategoryType
    category <|-- use: required
    category --> Measured
    category --> Ranged
    category --> Enumerated
    category --> Textual
    Measured <|-- type: MeasuredType
    Measured <|-- multiplicity: 0..∞
    Ranged <|-- type: RangedType
    Ranged <|-- multiplicity: 0..∞
    Enumerated <|-- type: EnumeratedType
    Enumerated <|-- multiplicity: 0..∞
    Textual <|-- type: TextualType
    Textual <|-- multiplicity: 0..∞
  
```

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Characteristics	CharacteristicsType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together and also a reference to a describing line in an external file.	1-1
category	bomCategoryType	Defines the type of material or component category to which the <code>BomItem</code> belongs. The <code>bomCategoryType</code> enumerations may be either ELECTRICAL PROGRAMMABLE MECHANICAL MATERIAL DOCUMENT	1-1
Measured	MeasuredType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe the measurable characteristics for an individual <code>BomItem</code> .	0-n
Ranged	RangedType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe the tolerances or ranges of variation that can be applied to the characteristics for an individual <code>BomItem</code> .	0-n
Enumerated	EnumeratedType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe those values that define the numerical characteristics and the source for that information for an individual <code>BomItem</code> .	0-n
Textual	TextualType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe any textual characteristics and their source for an individual <code>BomItem</code> .	0-n

7.2.2.1 Measured

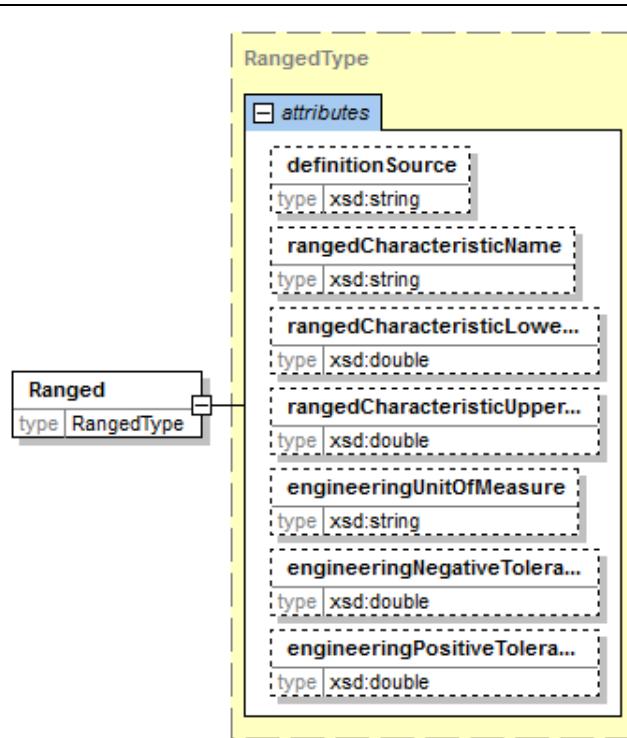
The Measured elements are those properties that when linked together describe the measurable characteristics for an individual BomItem. These characteristics provide the nominal value and also include the tolerances on the measurement.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Measured	MeasuredType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe the measurable characteristics for an individual BomItem.	0-n
definitionSource	string	The source of the information about the measurements.	0-1
measuredCharacteristicName	string	A unique name applied to the characteristic (e.g., capacitance)	0-1
measuredCharacteristicValue	double	The value of the measured property at its nominal or target value.	0-1
engineeringUnitOfMeasure	string	The engineering unit of measure.	0-1
engineeringNegativeTolerance	double	The negative tolerance on the value identified.	0-1
engineeringPositiveTolerance	double	The positive tolerance on the value identified.	0-1

7.2.2.2 Ranged

The **Ranged** elements are those properties that when linked together describe the ranges that a **BomItem** must meet. These range characteristics include the upper and lower limit of the range as well as the tolerances on the measurement. These values are compared against those that have been measured to ascertain that the **BomItem** is within specifications.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Ranged	RangedType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe the tolerances or ranges of variation that can be applied to the characteristics for an individual BomItem .	0-n
definitionSource	string	The source of the information about the measurement ranges.	0-1
rangedCharacteristicName	string	A unique name applied to the characteristic.	0-1
rangedCharacteristicLowerValue	double	The lower value of a ranged characteristic.	0-1
rangedCharacteristicUpperValue	double	The upper value of a ranged characteristic.	0-1
engineeringUnitOfMeasure	string	The engineering unit of measure.	0-1
engineeringNegativeTolerance	double	Any negative tolerance that can may be applied to the range in order to affix the target value of the BomItem .	0-1
engineeringPositiveTolerance	double	Any positive tolerance that can may be applied to the range in order to affix the target value of the BomItem .	0-1

7.2.2.3 Enumerated

The **Enumerated** elements are those properties that, when linked together, describe the enumerated value of a **BomItem** as well as the source of that information.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Enumerated	EnumeratedType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe those values that define the numerical characteristics and the source for that information for an individual BomItem .	0-n
definitionSource	string	The source of the information about the enumerated value.	0-1
enumeratedCharacteristicName	string	A unique name applied to the characteristic.	0-1
enumeratedCharacteristicValue	string	The enumerated value identified for the BomItem .	0-1

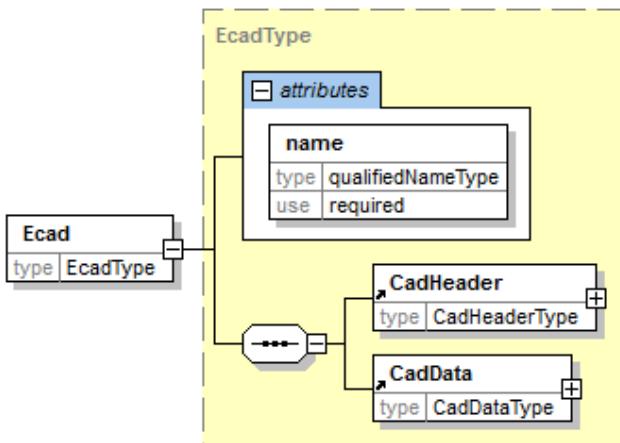
7.2.2.4 Textual

The **Textual** elements are those properties that when linked together describe the textual value of a **BomItem** as well as the source of that information.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Textual	TextualType	A nested element containing descriptive strings that can be linked together to describe any textual characteristics and their source for an individual BomItem .	0-n
definitionSource	string	The source of the information about the textual value.	0-1
textualCharacteristicName	string	A unique name applied to the characteristic.	0-1
textualCharacteristicValue	string	The textual value identified for the BomItem .	0-1

8 ELECTRONIC COMPUTER AIDED DESIGN (ECAD)

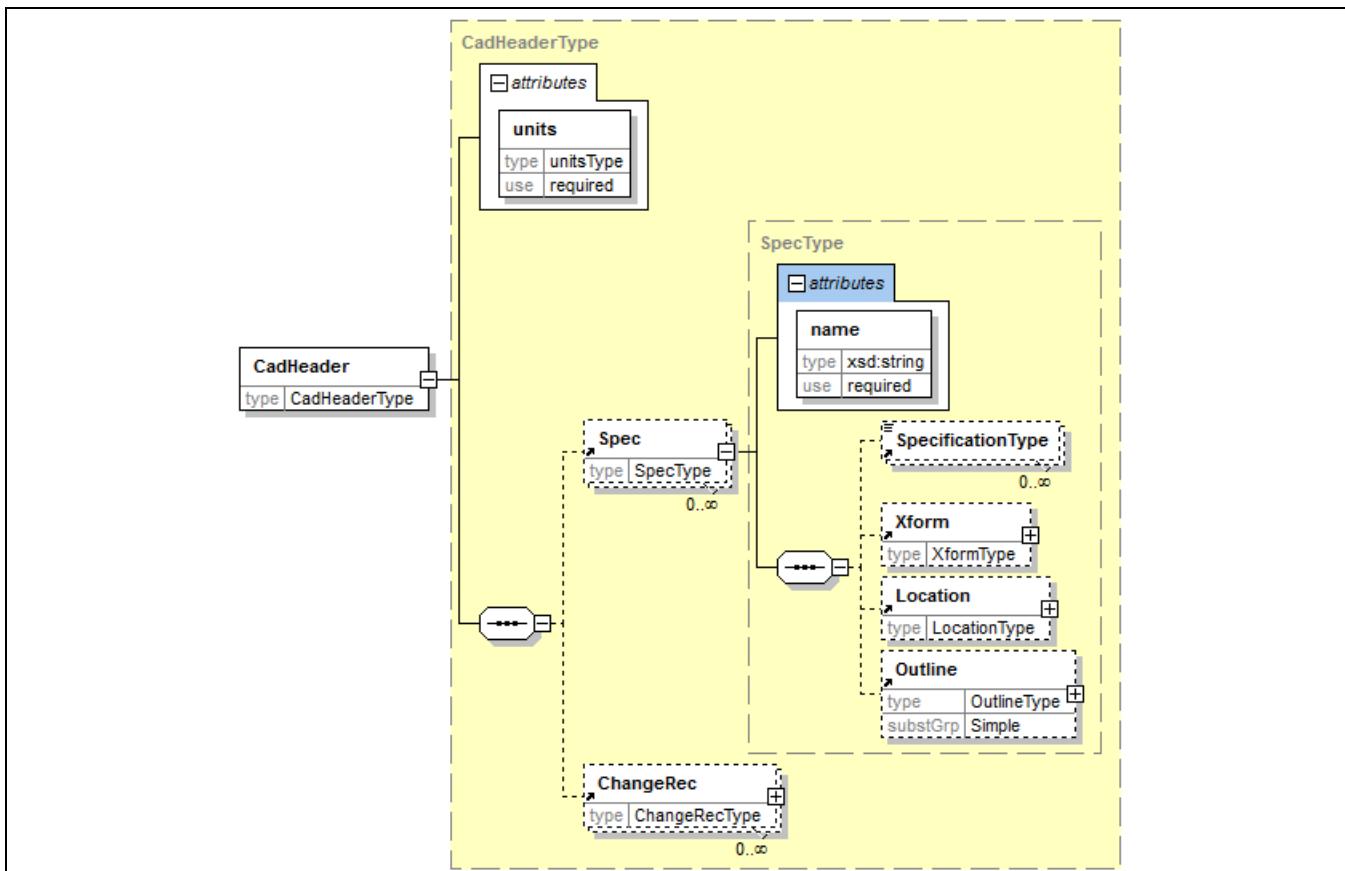
The `Ecad` section describes the Computer Aided Design data of the job, including all the graphical description of the layers, component location, panel design, etc. In most cases, the `Ecad` section is by far the largest body of data inside the 2581 file. To understand how the `Ecad` section is organized, it is important to be familiar with the `Layers` and `Step` elements.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Ecad	EcadType	The <code>Ecad</code> section describes the Computer Aided Design data of the job, including all the graphical description of the layers, component location, panel design, etc.	1-1
name	qualifiedNameType	The qualified name related to identify the specific <code>Ecad</code> information based on the electronic assembly(s) in the 2581 file.	1-1
CadHeader	CadHeaderType	A nested element containing identification and information about the description of the data in the file.	1-1
CadData	CadDataType	A nested element containing the actual Cad data describing the printed board and printed board assembly characteristics.	1-1

8.1 CadHeader

The `CadHeader` element is mandatory. Inside the `CadHeader` there are general attributes that describe the printed board, characteristics of the assembly, tooling, or documentation as defined by the `CadData`. The `Spec` element helps to define special instructions, tolerances, location where these apply, or any other comments that relate to the `CadData`. Dimensions are defined by the `units` attribute and may be in imperial (inch) or metric (mm or μm) units. Once defined the unit descriptions apply to all ecad data; however the units may be modified by the incorporation of a specification such that the specification may apply to the information or instructions provided by the `Spec`. This condition has no impact on the Units established for the 2581 file and only applies to the specification details. Any feature imported from any dictionary file **shall** be configured in the same units as defined by the `Ecad` `units` attribute.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
CadHeader	CadHeaderType	A nested element containing identification and information about the description of the data in the file.	1-1
units	unitsType	An enumerated string that may be one of the following: MILLIMETER MICRON INCH.	1-1
Spec	SpecType	Contains information related to the characteristics of the printed board, the assembly, material or any other layer function and may include the values for conductor width and spacing, compliance requirements, dielectric information, thermal characteristics or other attributes and instructions. The specification is instantiated where it is required through the unique name of the specification which establishes the SpecType and the detailed requirements	0-n
ChangeRec	ChangeRecType	A nested element containing identification and information about the description of the data in the Ecad section of the file.	0-n

8.1.1 Spec

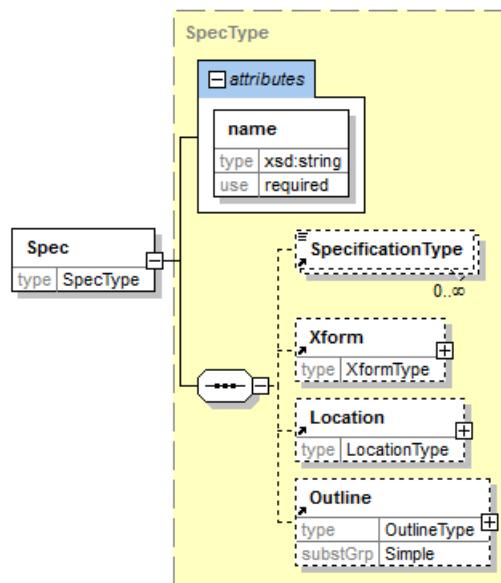
The `Spec` element contains various types of information related to the characteristics of the board or assembly. The concepts may include values for:

- width, spacing, component spacing, component to edge, etc.
- impedance, capacitance and resistance values.
- dimensions between edge/feature/hole to edge/feature/hole, V Cut or backdrill dimensions.

The instance of invoking a specification is provided through the option of including the elements as a part of a characteristic describing the board, assembly or a feature of their manufacturing such as the material or a

physical condition of the final product. The Spec provides that information that clearly identifies the goal conditions of the final product.

Up to two sub-elements may describe the specific Location or Outline where the spec is to be applied. The xform element permits changing of the original point of origin, scaling of features, rotation or mirror imaging of the spec requirements.

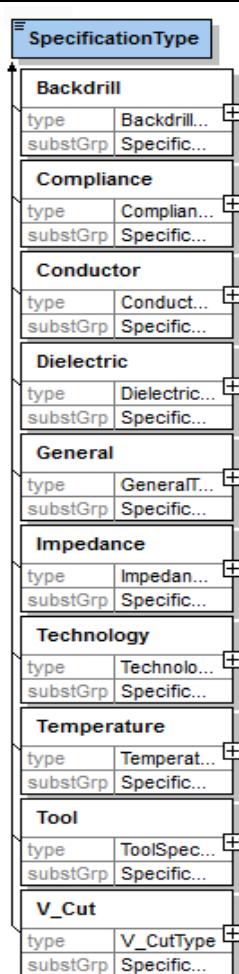


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Spec	SpecType	Contains information that applies to the board or assembly fabrication and relates to the end product capability of the product being produced. Instructions may include various values for conductor width and spacing, component spacing, component to board edge conditions, impedance values, capacitance values, resistance values, compliance to regulations and other requirement dimensions.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	The qualified name of the specification. The name must be unique and should indicating to which product in the file the specification pertains.	1-1
SpecificationType	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the SpecificationType with the specific elements and their characteristics that identify the purpose of the specification in order to focus the application of the descriptions to where they should apply. Examples of the specificationtypes include: Backdrill, Compliance, Conductor, Dielectric, General, Impedance, Technology, Temperature, Tool, and V_Cut.	0-n
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined area that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. See 3.3	0-1
Location	LocationType	The image defined by Outline or a pre-defined image is located to identify where the specification applies. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	0-1
x	double	The x coordinate of the location to which the specification applies	1-1
y	double	The y coordinate of the location to which the specification applies	1-1
Outline	OutlineType	A nested element containing a specific area(s) to which the specification(s) apply. The Outline is a closed polygon configuration	0-1

Polygon	PolygonType	The standard description for the <code>Polygon</code> characteristic must be a closed shape. The point of origin of the shape is identified as the 0:0 coordinate. The element includes the start of the polygon definition (<code>PolyBegin</code>) and the appropriate number of <code>PolyStep</code> 's to complete the closed shape. The <code>lineWidth</code> is through the <code>LineDesc</code> substitution group or defined at a time when the <code>Polygon</code> is instantiated.	0-n
PolyBegin	PolyBeginType	The <code>PolyBegin</code> element defines the starting point of the polygon.	1-1
x	double	The X starting point of the first polygon line.	1-1
y	double	The Y starting point of the first polygon line.	1-1
PolyStep	ABSTRACT	The <code>PolyStep</code> element is a substitution group that defines a circular (<code>PolyStepCurve</code>) or straight line (<code>PolyStepSegment</code>) continuation of the polygon. The <code>polystep</code> direction may be clockwise or counterclockwise which must be consistent when any <code>Arc</code> description is used as one of the <code>PolyStep</code> elements. Straight or curved line segments must not cross. The final X and final Y coordinate must match those of the <code>PolyBegin</code> element to signify that the shape is closed.	1-n
LineDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that specifies the <code>lineWidth</code> and <code>lineEnd</code> characteristics of the <code>Line</code> by reference to a predefined <code>LineDesc</code> or specified when the <code>Outline</code> is instantiated.	1-1

8.1.1.1 SpecificationType

The SpecificationType is an Abstract substitution feature that permits various specification functions to be defined within the concept of the Spec element.

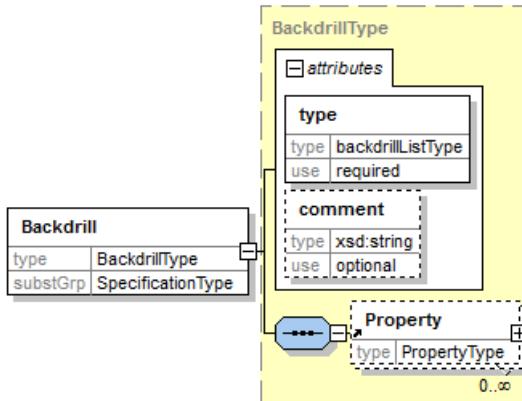


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
SpecificationType	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of the SpecificationType with any specific elements and their characteristics that identify the purpose of the specification in order to focus the application of the descriptions to where they should apply. Examples of the specificationtypes include Backdrill, Compliance, Conductor, Dielectric, General, Impedance, Technology, Temperature, Tool, and V_Cut.	0-n
Backdrill	BackdrillType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the backdrill of plated-through holes or vias in order to remove some of the plating without disturbing the interconnection structure.	0-n
Compliance	ComplianceType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to compliance to regulations that are being imposed on the materials or the final product of the board, or the assembly. The requirements may be regional or customer based and may include reclamation or disposal.	0-n
Conductor	ConductorType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the conductor used to carry signals throughout the printed board assembly describing the characteristics, surface finish or other properties related to the conductor shape or material.	0-n

Dielectric	DielectricType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the dielectric properties of the material which includes their electrical characteristics as well as their physical makeup such as resin or reinforcement styles and also the processing temperature that they can withstand.	0-n
General	GeneralType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to any general requirements that may be necessary to impose on any feature or product identified through the layer function and which allows instantiation of a spec onto the requirements	0-n
Impedance	ImpedanceType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the impedance requirements of a stackup construction or an printed board assembly in order to define the characteristics or the relationship to material separation or layering	0-n
Technology	TechnologyType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the technology being used in the construction of the printed board or the assembly or any process concepts that help identify the process control sensitive areas	0-n
Temperature	TemperatureType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the thermal capabilities or requirements that are necessary in order to meet the coefficient of expansion of material or parts in an effort to establish reliability conditions	0-n
Tool	ToolType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the tooling used in the manufacture of a printed board, printed board panel, printed board assembly or a printed board pallet and may be a single cutter or a template used for ensuring process consistency	0-n
V_Cut	V_CutType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the scoring of printed board panels or pallets in order to allow the removal of individual board or coupon products identifying the cut size or material remaining.	0-n

8.1.1.2 Backdrill

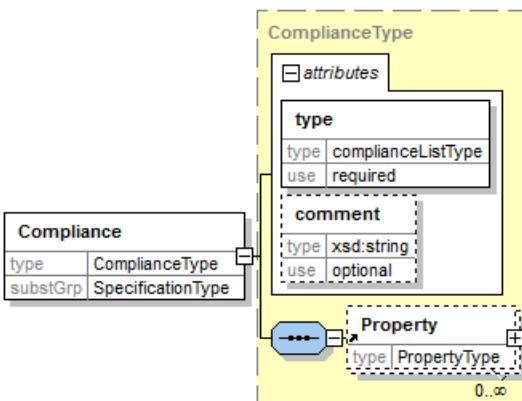
The Backdrill specification feature is intended to define the dimensions and characteristics of backdrilling some of the plated through holes.

			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Backdrill	BackdrillType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the backdrill of plated-through holes or vias in order to remove some of the plating without disturbing the interconnection structure.	0-n
type	backdrillListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the condition of the backdrill requirement. They consist of START_LAYER MUST_NOT_CUT_LAYER MAX_STUB_LENGTH OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
comment	string	A description of the requirements for backdrilling that are different or supplement the backdrillListType enumerations	0-1

Property	.PropertyType	A nested element containing numerical attribute descriptions that relate to the backdrill requirements and permit the references to alternate conditions that may apply. Unit descriptions apply only to the specificationType and do not impact the requirements of the overall 2581 file Unit descriptions	0-n
<pre> <Spec name="backdrill_1"> <Backdrill type="START_LAYER"> <Property layerOrGroupRef="L12"/> </Backdrill> <Backdrill type="MUST_NOT_CUT_LAYER"> <Property layerOrGroupRef="L8"/> </Backdrill> <Backdrill type="MAX_STUB_LENGTH"> <Property value="0.5" unit="MM" plusTol="0" minusTol="5" tolPercent="TRUE"/> </Backdrill> </Spec> </pre>			

8.1.1.3 Compliance

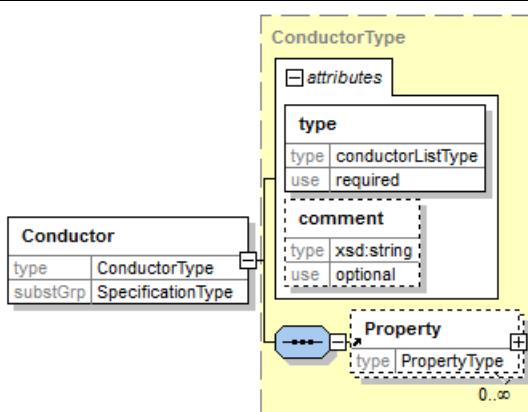
The Compliance specification feature is intended to define the legal requirements imposed under certain conditions and to define the characteristics that need to be adhered to in developing or providing the product defined in the 2581 file.

			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Compliance	ComplianceType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the backdrill of plated through holes or vias in order to remove some of the plating without disturbing the interconnection structure.	0-n
type	complianceListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the condition of the compliance requirement. They consist of ROHS CONFLICT_MINERALS WEEE REACH HALOGEN_FREE OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
comment	string	A description of the requirements for meeting compliance regulations that are different or supplement the complianceListType enumerations	0-1
Property	PropertyParams	A nested element containing numerical attribute descriptions that relate to the compliance requirements and permit the references to alternate conditions that may apply. Unit descriptions apply only to the specificationType and do not impact the requirements of the overall 2581 file Unit descriptions	0-n

```
<Spec name="compliances">
  <Compliance type="ROHS">
  </Compliance>
  <Compliance type="HALOGEN_FREE">
  </Compliance>
</Spec>
```

8.1.1.4 Conductor

The Conductor specification feature is intended to define the specific characteristics of conductors, or conductor surfaces that need to be provided in the product defined in the 2581 file.

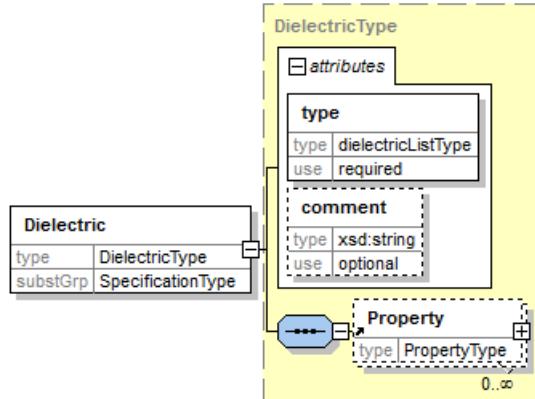


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Conductor	ConductorType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the conductor characteristics such as dimensions, surface conditions and electrical properties.	0-n
type	conductorListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the condition of the conductor requirement. They consist of CONDUCTIVITY SURFACE_ROUGHNESS_UPFACING SURFACE_ROUGHNESS_DOWNFACING SURFACE_ROUGHNESS_TREATED ETCH_FACTOR FINISHED_HEIGHT OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
comment	string	A description of the requirements for conductors that are different or supplement the conductorListType enumerations	0-1
Property	.PropertyType	A nested element containing numerical attribute descriptions that relate to the conductor requirements and permit the references to alternate conditions that may apply. Unit descriptions apply only to the specificationType and do not impact the requirements of the overall 2581 file Unit descriptions	0-n

```
<Spec name="copper_foil2">
  <Conductor type="CONDUCTIVITY">
    <Property value="0.059" unit="MHO/CM" refValue="25" refUnit="CELCIUS"/>
  </Conductor>
  <Conductor type="SURFACE_ROUGHNESS_UPFACING">
    <Property value="3" unit="MICRON" refUnit="RMS"/>
  </Conductor>
</Spec>
```

8.1.1.5 Dielectric

The Dielectric specification feature is intended to define the specific characteristics of dielectric material, or characteristics that need to be provided in the product defined in the 2581 file.



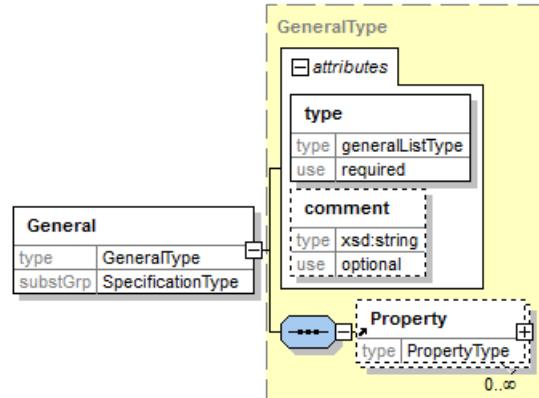
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Dielectric	DielectricType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the dielectric characteristics such as electrical properties, physical makeup, and process temperature restrictions.	0-n
type	dielectricListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the condition of the conductor requirement. They consist of DIELECTRIC_CONSTANT LOSS_TANGENT GLASS_TYPE GLASS_STYLE RESIN_CONTENT PROCESSABILITY_TEMPERATURE OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
comment	string	A description of the requirements for dielectric material that are different or supplement the dielectricListType enumerations	0-1
Property	PropertyType	A nested element containing numerical attribute descriptions that relate to the dielectric requirements and permit the references to alternate conditions that may apply. Unit descriptions apply only to the specificationType and do not impact the requirements of the overall 2581 file Unit descriptions	0-n

```

<Spec name="dielec4_15">
    <Dielectric type="DIELECTRIC_CONSTANT">
        <Property value="4.150" refValue="10.0e9" refUnit="Hz"/>
        <Property value="4.148" refValue="15.0e9" refUnit="Hz"/>
    </Dielectric>
    <Dielectric type="LOSS_TANGENT">
        <Property value="0.035" refValue="10.0e9" refUnit="Hz"/>
        <Property value="0.034" refValue="15.0e9" refUnit="Hz"/>
    </Dielectric>
    <Dielectric type="RESIN_CONTENT">
        <PropertyNum value="50" unit="PERCENT"/>
    </Dielectric>
    <Dielectric type="PROCESSABILITY_TEMP">
        <Property text="A" refText="270-300" refUnit="CELCIUS"/>
        <Property text="B" refText="230-270" refUnit="CELCIUS"/>
        <Property text="C" refText="210-230" refUnit="CELCIUS"/>
        <Property text="D" refText="150-210" refUnit="CELCIUS"/>
    </Dielectric>
    <Dielectric type="GLASS_STYLE">
        <Property text="1080"/>
    </Dielectric>
</Spec>
  
```

8.1.1.6 General

The General specification feature is intended to define any general characteristics related to the final product and may be grouped as electrical, thermal, material requirements or identify instructions or standards that influence the product defined in the 2581 file.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
General	GeneralType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to any general characteristics such as electrical, thermal or material properties, as well as special instructions or standards that the product must meet.	0-n
type	generalListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify any general requirements. The general groupings consist of ELECTRICAL THERMAL MATERIAL INSTRUCTION STANDARD OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
comment	string	A description of any general requirements that are a different category or supplement the generalListType enumerations	0-1
Property	PropertyType	A nested element containing numerical attribute descriptions that relate to the general requirements and permit the references to alternate conditions that may apply. Unit descriptions apply only to the specificationType and do not impact the requirements of the overall 2581 file Unit descriptions	0-n

```

<General type="STANDARD">
  <Property text="Telcordia Standard XYZ" refUnit="CLASS" refValue="3" />
  </General>
  <General type="STANDARD">
    <Property text="IPC-4101" refUnit="SECTION" refText="8.2.1.13" />
    </General>
  </Spec>
  <Spec name="designer_notes">
    <General type="INSTRUCTION">
      <Property text="Line neckdowns are intentional, build as is." refUnit="ITEM" refValue="1" />
      <Property text="100 ohm differential pair traces that violate the specified separation are
intentional, build as is." refUnit="ITEM" refValue="2" />
    </General>
  </Spec>

```

8.1.1.7 Impedance

The Impedance specification feature is intended to define any impedance characteristics related to the final product and includes the transmission and structure characteristics that the product defined in the 2581 file must meet.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Impedance	ImpedanceType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the impedance characteristics and structure such as the electrical requirements, relationship to surrounding plane and specific structure properties that the product must meet.	0-n
type	impedanceListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the impedance requirements. The descriptions consist of IMPEDANCE LINEWIDTH SPACING REF_PLANE_LAYER_ID OTHER. If OTHER is noted, a comment attribute is required.	1-1
transmission	transmissionListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the transmission requirements. They consist of SINGLE_ENDED EDGE_COUPLED BROADSIDE_COUPLED OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
structure	structureListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the impedance structure requirements. They consist of STRIPLINE PLANE_LESS_STRIPLINE MICROSTRIP_EMBEDDED MICROSTRIP_NO_MASK MICROSTRIP_MASK_COVERED MICROSTRIP_DUAL_MASK_COVERED COPLANAR_WAVEGUIDE_STRIPLINE COPLANAR_WAVEGUIDE_EMBEDDED COPLANAR_WAVEGUIDE_NO_MASK COPLANAR_WAVEGUIDE_MASK_COVERED COPLANAR_WAVEGUIDE_DUAL_MASKED_COVERED OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
comment	string	A description of any impedance requirements that are different or supplement the impedanceListType, transmissionListType or structureListType enumerations.	0-1
Property	PropertyType	A nested element containing numerical attribute descriptions that relate to the impedance requirements and permit the references to alternate conditions that may apply. Unit descriptions apply only to the specificationType and do not impact the requirements of the overall 2581 file Unit descriptions	0-n

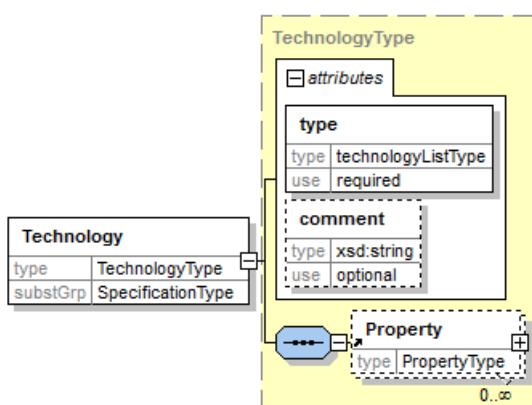
```

<Spec name="controlled_impedance_requirements_TOP">
  <Impedance type="IMPEDANCE" transmission="SINGLE_ENDED" structure="STRIPLINE">
    <Property value="50" unit="OHMS" plusTol="10" minusTol="10" tolPercent="TRUE"/>
  </Impedance>
  <Impedance type="LINEWIDTH" transmission="SINGLE_ENDED" structure="STRIPLINE">
    <Property value="0.5" unit="MM"/>
  </Impedance>
  <Impedance type="IMPEDANCE" transmission="EDGE_COUPLED" structure="STRIPLINE">
    <Property value="100" unit="OHMS" plusTol="10" minusTol="10" tolPercent="TRUE"/>
  </Impedance>
  <Impedance type="LINEWIDTH transmission="EDGE_COUPLED" structure="STRIPLINE">
    <Property value="0.3" unit="MM"/>
  </Impedance>
  <Impedance type="SPACING transmission="EDGE_COUPLED" structure="STRIPLINE">
    <Property value="0.2" unit="MM"/>
  </Impedance>
  <Impedance type="REF_PLANE_LAYER_ID transmission="SINGLE_ENDED" structure="STRIPLINE">
    <Property layerOrGroupRef="L8"/>
    <Property layerOrGroupRef="L11"/>
  </Impedance>
  <Impedance type="REF_PLANE_LAYER_ID transmission="EDGE_COUPLED" structure="STRIPLINE">
    <Property layerOrGroupRef="L8"/>
    <Property layerOrGroupRef="L11"/>
  </Impedance>
</Spec>

```

8.1.1.8 Technology

The Technology specification feature is intended to define the mounting platform technology so that the specifications applied relate to those materials and structures identified by the technology type in order to further influence the product defined in the 2581 file.

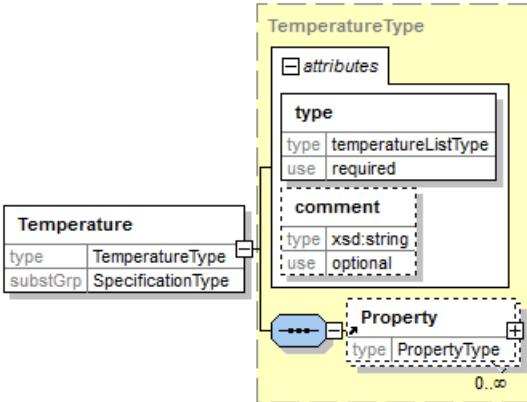


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Technology	TechnologyType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the category of the product used for mounting components identified by the structure technology of the product identified in the 2581 file.	0-n
type	technologyListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the mounting platform technology requirements. The description categories consist of RIGID RIGID_FLEX FLEX HDI EMBEDDED_COMPONENT OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
comment	string	A description of any technology requirements that are a different category or supplement the technologyListType enumerations	0-1

Property	.PropertyType	A nested element containing numerical attribute descriptions that relate to the technology requirements and permit the references to alternate conditions that may apply. Unit descriptions apply only to the specificationType and do not impact the requirements of the overall 2581 file Unit descriptions	0-n
<Spec name="board_technology"> <Technology type="RIGID"> </Technology> </Spec>			

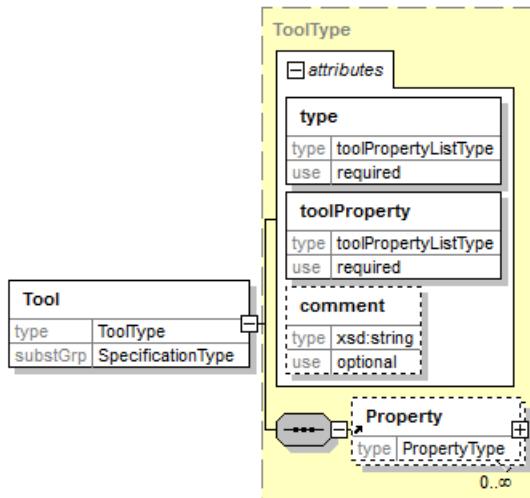
8.1.1.9 Temperature

The Temperature specification feature is intended to define the products' ability to withstand high temperatures in order to maintain its physical characteristics within the requirements identified in the 2581 file.

			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Temperature	TemperatureType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the temperature impact on the product identified in the 2581 file and its' ability to maintain the physical properties needed for reliable performance.	0-n
type	temperatureListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the temperature extremes at which the material changes state. The description categories are THERMAL_DELAMINATION EXPANSION_Z_AXIS EXPANSION_X_Y_AXIS OTHER. If OTHER is noted, a comment attribute is required.	1-1
comment	string	A description of any temperature impact characteristic that is different or supplements the TemperatureListType enumerations	0-1
Property	.PropertyType	A nested element containing numerical attribute descriptions that relate to the temperature impact characteristics and permit the references to alternate conditions that may apply. Unit descriptions apply only to the specificationType and do not impact the requirements of the overall 2581 file Unit descriptions	0-n
<Spec name="minimum_Td"> <Temperature type="THERMAL_DELAMINATION"> <Property value="180" unit="CELCIUS"/> </Temperature> </Spec>			

8.1.1.10 Tool

The Tool specification feature is intended to define the type of tool(s) needed in the fabrication of the board or the assembly and includes those necessary to prepare the products for separation from a panel or pallet as well as providing holes or cutouts needed within the product structure.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Tool	ToolType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the tools needed to manufacture the product identified in the 2581 file and includes both hard tools and photo (Laser) ablation requirement.	0-n
type	toolListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the tool types required in the manufacturing of the boards or the assemblies. The tool types include CARBIDE ROUTER LASER FLATNOSE EXTENSION V_CUTTER OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
toolProperty	toolPropertyListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the tool properties required in the manufacturing of the boards or the assemblies. The tool properties include DRILL_SIZE FINISHED_SIZE BIT_ANGLE OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
comment	string	A description of any tool characteristic that is different or supplements the toolListType or toolPropertyListType enumerations	0-1
Property	PropertyType	A nested element containing numerical attribute descriptions that relate to the tool descriptions and permits the references to alternate conditions that may apply. Unit descriptions apply only to the specificationType and do not impact the requirements of the overall 2581 file Unit descriptions	0-n

```

<Spec name="drill_1">
  <Tool type="CARBIDE" toolProperty="DRILL_SIZE">
    <Property text="B" unit="GAUGE"/>
  </Tool>
  <Tool type="CARBIDE" toolProperty="FINISHED_SIZE">
    <Property value="0.5" unit="MM" plusTol ="0.05" minusTol="0.05"/>
  </Tool>
</Spec>

<Spec name=" v_cutter_tool">
  <Tool type="V_CUTTER" toolProperty="BIT_ANGLE">
    <Property value="90" unit="DEGREES"/>
  </Tool>
</Spec>

```

8.1.1.11 V_Cut

The V_Cut specification feature is intended to define the limits and detail descriptions of the scoring requirements when using a diamond wheel cutter intended to remove material from a board or panel in order to reduce the total thickness. This always implies cuts on both the top and bottom of the board. The specification type OFFSET can be used to define the vertical distance and/or tolerance between top and bottom cuts.

```

<Spec name="vcut_all">
  <V_Cut type="ANGLE">
    <Property value="90" unit="DEGREES" plusTol="5" minusTol="5"
    tolPercent="TRUE"/>
  </V_Cut>
  <V_Cut type="THICKNESS_REMAINING">
    <Property value="0.5" unit="MM" plusTol="0.1" minusTol="0.1"/>
  </V_Cut>
  <V_Cut type="OFFSET">
    <Property value="0.0" unit="MM" plusTol="0.1" minusTol="0.1"/>
  </V_Cut>
</Spec>

```

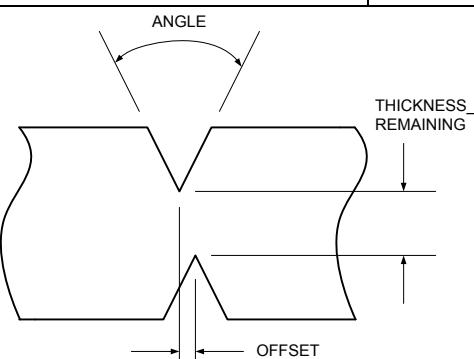
V_Cut

type	V_CutType
substGrp	SpecificationType

V_CutType

attributes	
type	vCutListType
use	required
comment	
type	xsd:string
use	optional
Property	
type	PropertyType
0..∞	

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
V_Cut	V_CutType	The identification of a SpecificationType related to the scoring or groove cutting into a board, panel or pallet where a certain amount of material remains so that the product can be further processed before final separation.	0-n
type	vCutListType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the characteristics of the groove or V cut as related to the thickness of the material. The description categories are ANGLE THICKNESS_REMAINING OFFSET OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	1-1
comment	string	A description of any V cut characteristic that is different or supplements the vCutListType enumerations	0-1
Property	PropertyType	A nested element containing numerical attribute descriptions that relate to the temperature impact characteristics and permit the references to alternate conditions that may apply. Unit descriptions apply only to the specificationType and do not impact the requirements of the overall 2581 file Unit descriptions	0-n



The diagram illustrates a V-Cut with the following dimensions labeled:

- ANGLE**: The angle of the V-groove.
- THICKNESS_REMAINING**: The thickness of the material remaining on the sides of the V-groove.
- OFFSET**: The vertical distance between the top and bottom of the V-groove.

8.1.2 Property

The Property element provides a group of attributes that may be used in order to describe the conditions that are to be associated with a particular specification. The attributes describe values, tolerances instructions and when they apply to a stackup, a reference is provided to which specific stackup layer the requirements apply. When the properties need to take into account other units or values a reference to those is also included. All attributes that are instantiated become a mandatory part of the specification to which they apply.

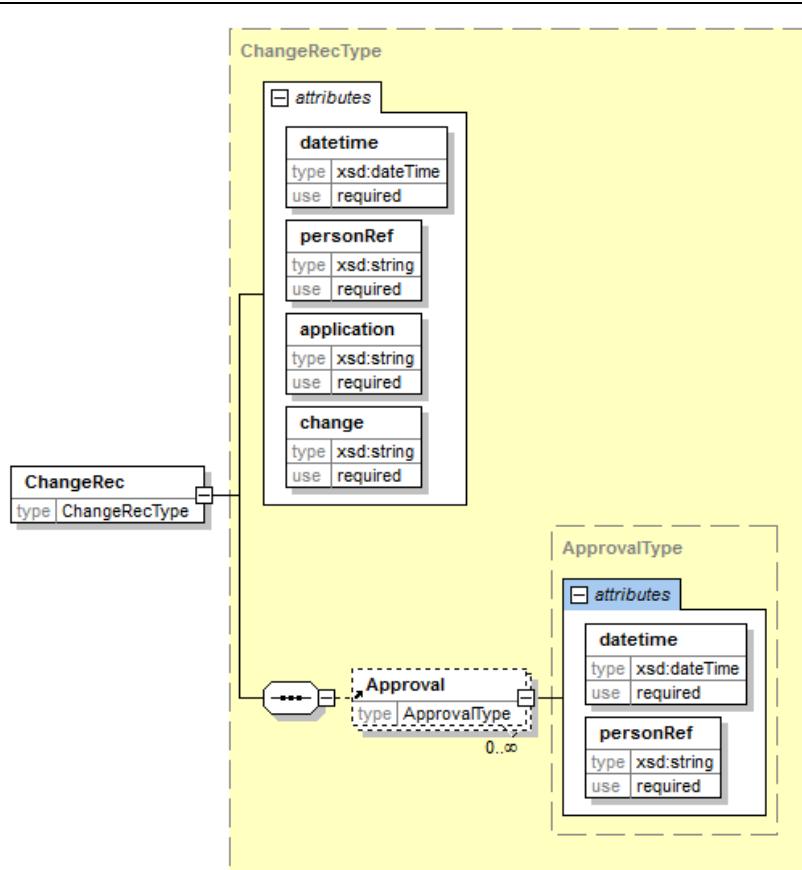
```

classDiagram
    class Property {
        <<PropertyType>>
    }
    class PropertyType {
        <<attributes>>
        value
        text
        unit
        tolPlus
        tolMinus
        tolPercent
        refUnit
        refValue
        refText
        layerOrGroupRef
        comment
    }
    Property <|-- PropertyType
  
```

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Property	PropertyType	A set of attributes that becomes a mandatory requirement to a specification and include values, tolerances, units and instructions. Appropriate references may also be provided. Since a specification may include several Property elements any ambiguity must be resolved prior to considering the impact the specification has on the products identified in the 2581 file.	1-1
value	double	A number that identifies the characteristics of the Value to be applied to any specified Unit attribute identified from the propertyUnitType enumerations.	0-1
text	string	Specific conditions or instructions that can be used as a property value when the value is non numeric or can be applied to the combination of Unit, Value and any tolerance attribute conditions.	0-1
unit	propertyUnitType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the Unit properties of the Value attribute requirement. They consist of MM INCH MICRON OHMS MHO/CM SIEMENS/M CELCIUS FARANHEIT PERCENT Hz DEGREES RMAX RZ RMS SECTION CLASS ITEM GAUGE OTHER. If OTHER is noted a comment attribute is required.	0-1
tolPlus	nonNegativeDouble	The plus tolerance that may be applied to the nominal number defined in the Value attribute setting the upper control limit.	0-1
tolMinus	nonNegativeDouble	The minus tolerance that may be applied to the nominal number defined in the Value attribute setting the lower control limit.	0-1
tolPercent	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the attribute(s) "tolPlus" and/or "tolMinus" are a percentage. FALSE indicates that they represent a nonNegativeDouble. The Default is FALSE	0-1
refUnit	propertyUnitType	A second Unit set of enumerated string descriptions that are to be used as reference Unit properties of the basic attribute requirement. They consist of MM INCH MICRON OHMS MHO/CM SIEMENS/M CELCIUS FARANHEIT PERCENT Hz DEGREES RMAX RZ RMS SECTION CLASS ITEM GAUGE OTHER. If OTHER is noted, a comment attribute is required.	0-1
refValue	double	A second Value number that is to be used as reference Value in considering the properties of the basic attribute requirement.	0-1
refText	string	A second set of instructions that need to be applied when considering the references established for the Value number, unit, tolerances or instructions applied to the properties of the basic attribute requirement.	0-1
layerOrGroupRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to the identification of the unique name assigned to a specific layerOrGroup to which the properties of the specification are to be applied.	0-1
comment	string	A description of any unit or refUnit characteristic that is different or supplements the propertyUnitType enumerations	0-1

8.1.3 ChangeRec

The ChangeRec element contains the ChangeRec elements specifying deviations requested by the manufacturer and approved by the customer (OEM, EMS, other).



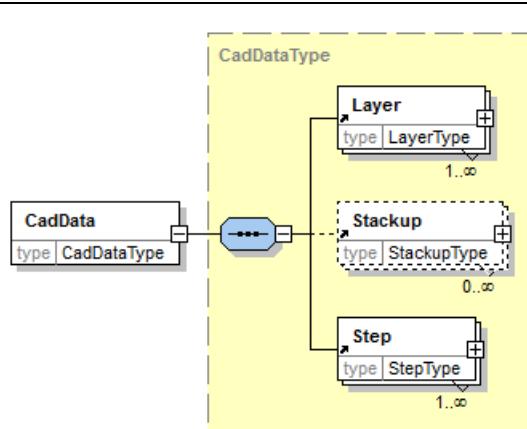
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
ChangeRec	ChangeRecType	A nested element containing identification and information about the description of the data in the Ecad section of the file.	0-n
datetime	dateTime	The standard date and time indication of the change request.	1-1
personRef	string	The name of the person to whom the request was made.	1-1
application	string	The effectivity of the change and exactly where the change was to be made.	1-1
change	string	A detailed description of the change, including a reference to a URL if graphic descriptions are involved.	1-1
Approval	ApprovalType	A nested element that signifies who approved the suggested change submitted by the design, fabrication, assembly or test operation.	0-n
datetime	dateTime	The standard date and time indication of the change approval.	1-1
personRef	string	The name of the person who approved the change request.	1-1

8.2 CadData

The `CadData` element is the three-dimensional structure of the design that is retrieved from the Cad system as a group of layers. The information is contained in the `Layer` elements. The layers are listed in the correct order inside `CadData` and are grouped by name, and `layerFunction`.

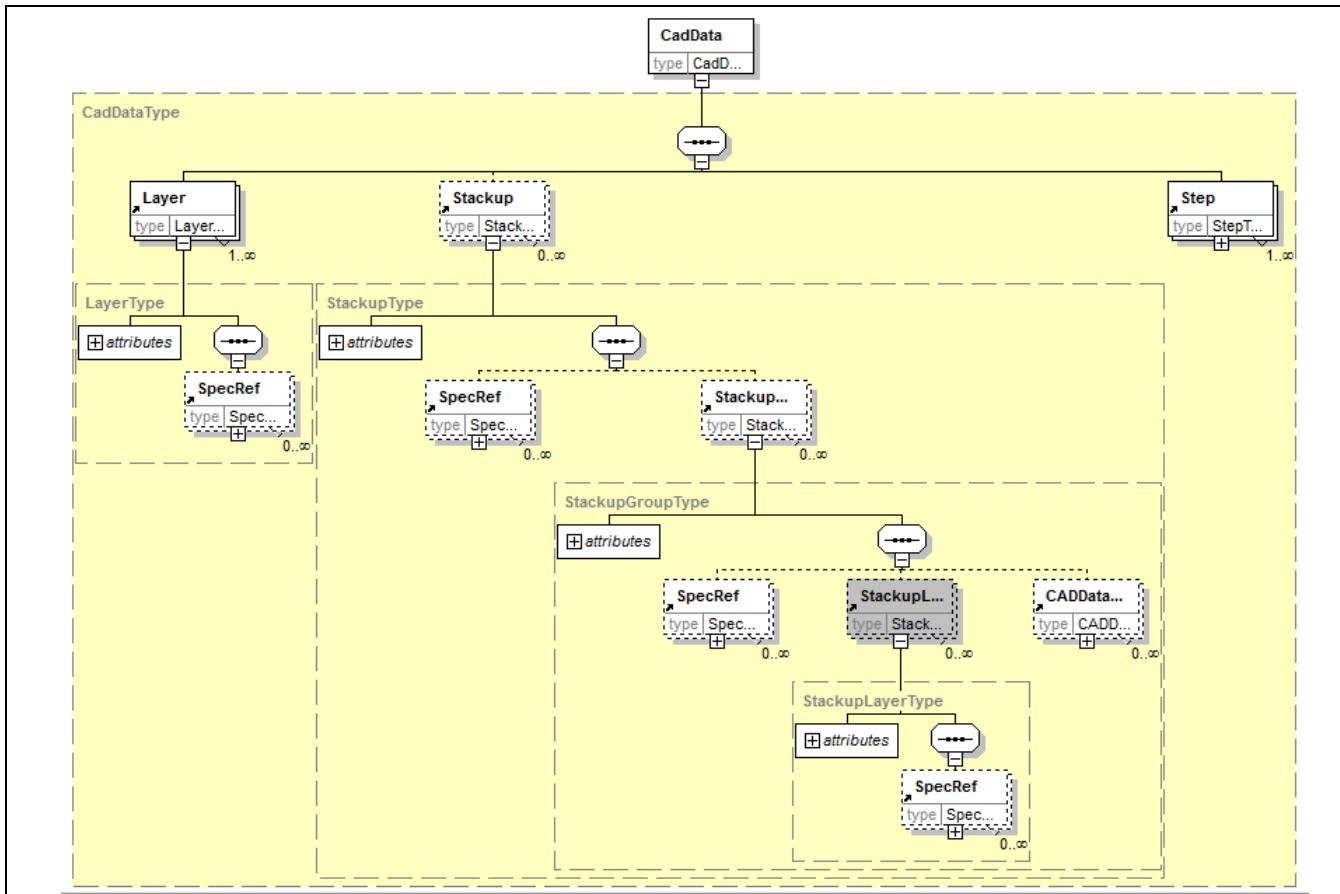
Layers are also identified by, `side`, `polarity`, `span`, and `SpecRef` that can be applied to help define each layer. CAD data layers are required in 2581 to successfully hold ECAD layout information. These layers are not necessarily physical layers, but the myriad of layers that can be represented in the `Ecad` data but not actually fabricated into the bare board.

Layers, as the name implies, are sheets of two-dimensional data which, when laid on top of each other, create the Printed Circuit Assembly (unpopulated PCB and components or other related information). Some layers are physical layers that are laminated together to form the board. Other layers represent masks, films or phototools used to expose the board in a process that applies materials selectively on the outer layers of the boards. Some layers contain only drawings and annotations, which are not put physically on the board but can be used to further define it. These layers are organized in the IPC-2581 file by their specific type.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
CadData	CadDataType	A nested element containing the actual Cad data describing the printed board and printed board assembly characteristics.	1-1
Layer	LayerType	A nested element containing the different layer information represented in the CAD data base which describes the electronic assembly to be manufactured.	1-n
Stackup	StackupType	A nested element containing the construction information for the printed board. If the file contains more than one Stackup the unique name assignment is required for each board configuration	0-n
Step	StepType	The Step element consists of multiple sub-elements each intended to help describe the different steps needed in the board fabrication, or assembling the electronic product.	1-n

Everything about the design starts in `CadData`. The relationships are expanded through the hierarchy of the layer and stackup elements.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
CadData	CadDataType	A nested element containing the actual Cad data describing the printed board and printed board assembly characteristics.	1-1
Layer	LayerType	A nested element containing the different layer information represented in the CAD data base which describes the electronic assembly to be manufactured.	1-n
Stackup	StackupType	A nested element containing the construction information for the printed board. If the file contains more than one Stackup the unique name assignment is required for each board configuration	0-n
Step	StepType	The Step element consists of multiple sub-elements each intended to help describe the different steps needed in the board fabrication, or assembling the electronic product.	1-n

8.2.1 Layer

The `Layer` element describes the characteristics of specific layers. The layers may be for the board or the assembly and may be individual characterization or those of the board fabrication panel and the arrangement of boards in the assembly pallet. There are also documentation, tooling and miscellaneous layers. The `layerFunction` helps to identify the purpose of the layer.

```

classDiagram
    class LayerType {
        name: qualifiedNameType
        layerFunction: layerFunctionType
        side: sideType
        polarity: polarityType
        SpecRef* SpecRef
        Span Span
    }
    class Layer {
        type: LayerType
    }
    Layer <|-- LayerType
  
```

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Layer	LayerType	A nested element containing the different layer information represented in the CAD data base which describes the electronic assembly to be manufactured.	1-n
name	qualifiedNameType	The identification of the Cad data element identifying a particular layer. If the <code>layerFunction</code> <code>STACKUP_COMPOSITE</code> is indicated the unique name assigned shall match the name assigned to the related <code>Stackup</code> element	1-1
layerFunction	layerFunctionType	The type of layer and its main use as established by the following: COATINGCOND COATINGNONCOND DIELBASE DIELCORE DIELPREG DIELADHV SOLDERBUMP RESISTIVE CAPACITIVE COMPONENT_EMBEDDED SOLDERPASTE CONDOFOIL CONDFILM STACKUP_COMPOSITE LEGEND SOLDERMASK CONDUCTOR PLANE SIGNAL MIXED PASTEMASK DRILL ROUTE SCORE CONDUCTIVE_ADHESIVE GLUE SOLDERBUMP HOLEFILL PROBE REWORK FIXTURE ASSEMBLY SILKSCREENCOURTYARD GRAPHIC DOCUMENT LANDPATTERN COMPONENT_TOP COMPONENT_BOTTOM BOARD_OUTLINE OTHER	1-1
side	sideType	A fixed field parameter that defines the side of the layer. The fixed attribute is one of the following TOP BOTTOM BOTH INTERNAL ALL NONE	1-1
polarity	polarityType	Applies for layers of type signal, power/ground or mixed. In such layers, positive means that the layer features represent copper. NEGATIVE means that the layer features represent laminate. For example, on a negative power/ground layer, features represent clearances. All other layers should be defined as positive. POSITIVE is the default.	1-1

SpecRef	SpecRefType	The identification of a particular specification(s) from the SpecificationType that is able to provide additional details or instructions that apply to the board or assembly descriptions of the Layer. The linkage is provided through the specific "specificationId" (spec Name)	0-n
Span	SpanType	A nested element where the field may be added to layers of type drill and route that are either buried or blind. In such a case, it represents the start and end board layers between which drilling/routing is done. If the drill is going through the board a span subsection will NOT be included.	0-1

There is a close relationship between the **Layer** and **Step** elements of the 2581 format. The correlation exists between the **Step** elements and attributes and the **layerFunction** attribute of the particular layer.

In general, the **Step** elements and their respective attributes have a significant purpose. Since there may be many steps in a 2581 file, users usually identify the **step name** attribute as a method to group steps that relate to a particular purpose. The following are the recommended organizational structures:

BOARD for all the 'important' steps representing the graphics of the board itself.

BOARDPANEL for all the 'important' steps representing the graphics of the board panel itself.

ASSEMBLY for all the 'important' steps representing the graphics of the assembly itself.

ASSEMBLYPALLET for all the 'important' steps representing the graphics of the assembly pallet itself.

DOCUMENTATION for all the 'important' steps representing the documentation of the board or the assembly.

TOOLING for all the 'important' steps representing the tooling used on the board or the assembly.

COUPON for test coupons that are embedded in the design of the board or assembly.

MISCELLANEOUS, for all the remaining steps that do not have a home in any of the other context identification.

The purpose of a group of step elements should relate to the layer descriptions which are identified by their attributes that include the mandatory requirements of name, layerFunction, side, and polarity. Due to the **layerRef** attributes of several Step elements, the recommendations shown in Table 5 apply to good file management. Table 5 shows all possible combinations of the **layerFunction** attributes and their potential characteristics. The appropriate designation to make the link to the Bill of Material has been added to the table where appropriate and consists of Material Designations (MatDes), Document Designations (DocDes), Component Designations (RefDes) and Tooling Designations (ToolDes). Table 5-1 indicates the recommendations of layer attributes to the Step elements that are intended to describe the board or board panel. Table 5-2 shows the recommendations related to assembly and assembly pallet. Table 5-3 shows the recommendations related to the coupon step elements. Step documentation, tooling, and miscellaneous element recommendations are shown in Table 5-4.

Table 5 Step Elements to Layer Attribute Recommendations

Step elements that describe:	Layer Attributes			
	name	layerFunction	side letters for reference only	Polarity numbers for reference only
All Possible Combinations	A unique name in a 2581 file	MATERIAL MatDes	COATINGCOND	A_TOP
		MatDes	COATINGNONCOND	B_BOTTOM
		MatDes	DIELBASE	C_BOTH
		MatDes	DIELCORE	D_INTERNAL
		MatDes	DIELPREG	E_ALL
		MatDes	DIELADHV	F_OTHER
		MatDes	SOLDERBUMP	
		MatDes	RESISTIVE	
		MatDes	CAPACITIVE	
		RefDes	COMPONENT_EMBEDDED	
		MatDes	SOLDERPASTE	
		MatDes	CONDFOIL	
		MatDes	CONDIFILM	
		BOARD	STACKUP_COMPOSITE	A_TOP
		RefDes	LEGEND	B_BOTTOM
		MatDes	SOLDERMASK	C_BOTH
		MatDes	CONDUCTOR	D_INTERNAL
		MatDes	PLANE	E_ALL
		MatDes	SIGNAL	F_OTHER
		MatDes	MIXED	
		ToolDes	PASTEMASK	
		RefDes	COMPONENT_EMBEDDED	
		ToolDes	DRILL	
		ToolDes	ROUTE	
		MatDes	CONDUCTIVE_ADHESIVE.	
		ToolDes	SCORE	
		PROCESS	GLUE	A_TOP
		MatDes	SOLDERBUMP	B_BOTTOM
		MatDes	HOLEFILL	C_BOTH
		ToolDes	PROBE	D_INTERNAL
		ToolDes	REWORK	E_ALL
		ToolDes	FIXTURE	F_OTHER
		MatDes	COATINGCOND	
		MatDes	COATINGNONCOND	
		RefDes	ASSEMBLY	
		ToolDes	SILKSCREEN	
		DOCUMENTATION	COURTYARD	A_TOP
		DocDes	GRAPHIC	B_BOTTOM
		DocDes	DOCUMENT	C_BOTH
		DocDes	LANDPATTERN	D_INTERNAL
		DocDes	COMPONENT_TOP	E_ALL
		DocDes	COMPONENT_BOTTOM	F_OTHER
		DocDes	BOARD_OUTLINE	
		(TBD)	OTHER	

Table 5-1 Step Elements to Layer Attribute Recommendations for Board or Board Panel

Step elements that describe:	Layer Attributes			
	name	layerFunction	side letters for reference only	Polarity numbers for reference only
BOARD AND BOARD PANEL	MATERIAL	COATINGCOND	A B C D E	1
		COATINGNONCOND	A B C D E	1 2
	BOARD	DIELBASE	A B C D	1 2
		DIELCORE	A B C D	1 2
		DIELPREG	D	1 2
		DIELADHV	A B C D	1
		SOLDERBUMP	A B C D	1 2
		RESISTIVE	D	1 2
		CAPACITIVE	D	1 2
		COMPONENT_EMBEDDED	D	1
		SOLDERPASTE	A B	1
		CONDFOIL	A B C D E	1 2
	PROCESS	CONDFOIL	A B C D E	1 2
		STACKUP_COMPOSITE	A B C D	1 2
		LEGEND.	A B C D	1 2
		SOLDERMASK	A B C	1 2
		CONDUCTOR	A B C D	1 2
		PLANE	A B C D	1 2
		SIGNAL	A B C D	1 2
		MIXED	A B C D	1 2
		PASTEMASK	A B C	1 2
		COMPONENT_EMBEDDED	D	1
		DRILL	A B C D E	1
	DOCUMENTATION	ROUTE	A B C D E	1 2
		CONDUCTIVE_ADHESIVE	A B C D	1
		SCORE	A B C D E	1 2
		GLUE	A B	1
		SOLDERBUMP	A B	1
		HOLEFILL	A B C	1
		PROBE	A B C	1
		REWORK	F	1
		FIXTURE	F	1
		COATINGCOND	A B C D E	1
		COATINGNONCOND	A B C D E	1 2
		ASSEMBLY	F	1
		SILKSCREEN	F	1 2
		COURTYARD	F	1
		GRAPHIC	A B C D E	1 2
		DOCUMENT	A B C D E	1
		LANDPATTERN	A B C D E	1
		COMPONENT_TOP	A	1
		COMPONENT_BOTTOM	B	1
		BOARD_OUTLINE	A B C D E	1
		OTHER	A B C D E	1

Table 5-2 Step Elements to Layer Attribute Recommendations for Assembly and AssemblyPallet

Step elements that describe:	Layer Attributes			
	name	layerFunction	Side letters for reference only	Polarity numbers for reference only
ASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY PALLET	A unique name in a 2581 file	MATERIAL	COATINGCONDMAT	A B C E
			COATINGNONCONDMAT	A B C E
			DIELADHV	A B C
			SOLDERBUMP	A B
			RESISTIVE	A B C
			CAPACITIVE	A B C
			SOLDERPASTE	A B C
		BOARD	STACKUP_COMPOSITE	A B C E
			PASTEMASK	A B C
			EMBEDDED COMPONENT	A B C
			CONDUCTIVE_ADHESIVE	A B C
			CONDUCTOR	A B C
			PLANE	A B C D
			SIGNAL	A B C D
			MIXED	A B C D
		PROCESS	GLUE	A B
			SOLDERBUMP	A B
			PROBE	A B C
			REWORK	F
			FIXTURE	F
			COATINGNONCOND	A B C D E
		DOCUMENTATION	ASSEMBLY.	A B C D E
			COURTYARD	A B C
			GRAPHIC	A B C D E
			DOCUMENT	A B C D E
			COMPONENT_TOP	A
			COMPONENT_BOTTOM	B
			BOARD_OUTLINE	C
			OTHER	A B C D E

Table 5-3 Step Element to Layer Attribute Recommendations for Coupon

Step elements that describe:	Layer Attributes			
	name	layerFunction	Side letters for reference only	Polarity numbers for reference only
COUPON	A unique name in a 2581 file	MATERIAL	COATINGCOND	A B C D E
			COATINGNONCOND	A B C D E
			DIELBASE	A B C D
			DIELCORE	A B C D
			DIELPREG	D
			DIELADHV	A B C D
			RESISTIVE	D
			CAPACITIVE	D
			CONDFOIL	A B C D E
			CONDFFILM	A B C D E
	BOARD	COMPONENT_EMBEDDED	D	1 2
		STACKUP_COMPOSITE	A B C D E	1 2
		LEGEND	A B C D	1 2
		SOLDERMASK	A B C	1 2
		CONDUCTOR	A B C D	1 2
	PROCESS	PLANE	A B C D	1 2
		SIGNAL	A B C D	1 2
		MIXED	A B C D	1 2
		COMPONENT_EMBEDDED	D	1
		DRILL	A B C D E	1
		ROUTE	A B C D E	1 2
		SCORE	A B C D E	1 2
		GLUE	A B	1
		SOLDERBUMP	A B	1
		HOLEFILL	A B C	1
	DOCUMENTATION	PROBE	A B C	1
		REWORK	F	1
		Fixture	F	1
		COATINGCOND	A B C D E	1
		COATINGNONCOND	A B C D E	1 2
		ASSEMBLY	F	1
		COURTYARD	F	1
		GRAPHIC	A B C D E	1 2

Table 5-4 Step Purpose to Layer Restrictions for Documentation, Tooling and Miscellaneous

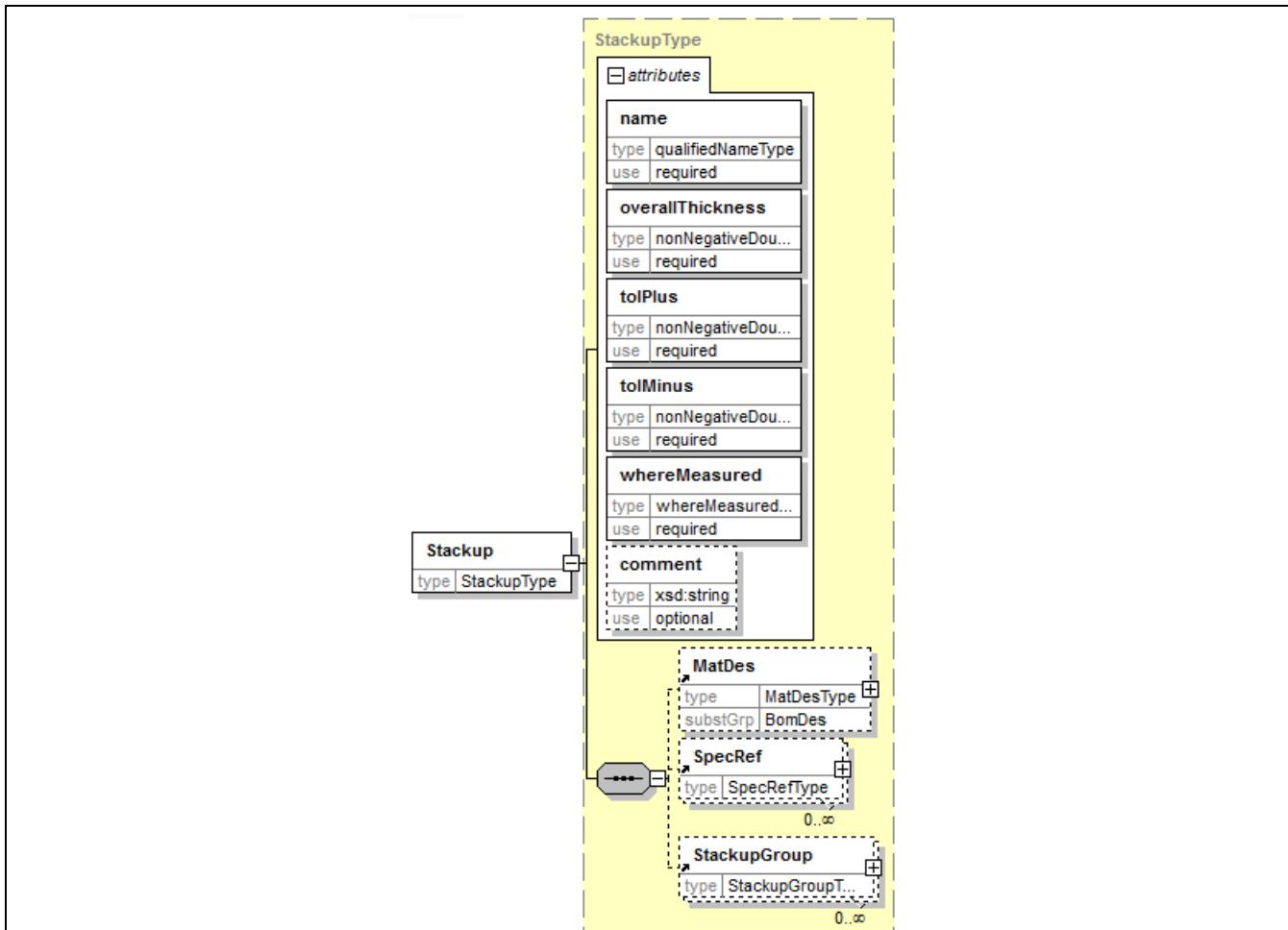
Step elements that describe:	Layer Attributes			
	name	layerFunction	Side letters for reference only	Polarity numbers for reference only
DOCUMENTATION	A unique name in a 2581 file	DOCUMENTATION	COURTYARD	A B C
			GRAPHIC	A B C D E
			DOCUMENT	A B C D E
			COMPONENT_TOP	A
			COMPONENT_BOTTOM	B
			BOARD_OUTLINE	E
			OTHER	A B C D E
TOOLING	A unique name in a 2581 file	PROCESS	GLUE	A B C
			SOLDERBUMP	A B
			PROBE	A B
			REWORK	A B C
			Fixture	F
			COATINGNONCOND	A B
			ROUTE	A B C D E
			SCORE	A B C D E
MISCELLANEOUS	A unique name in a 2581 file	DOCUMENTATION	OTHER	A B C D E F

When combining steps that describe BOARD and COUPON information on the same PANEL, the layer construction **shall** be identical between those elements being instantiated on the same panel. They also refer to the layering so that it is consistent such that the top layer is identical for all steps referenced in the panel construction.

The viewer should always display the graphical features but store the layer polarity as an attribute.

8.2.2 Stackup

The Stackup element represents the construction for the printed board. The Stackup element consists of several sub-elements that help to define various sections of the construction permitting the description of core material or prepreg definition. These are accomplished in the StackupGroup element. The attributes of the Stackup element represent the finished board and apply to the entire board characteristics. The reference in the Bill of Material is to the finished board and as such uses theMatDes identification as the BomDesType.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Stackup	StackupType	A nested element containing the construction information for the printed board.	0-1
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned by the user to the printed board. The name must be unique and match the name used for the layerFunction STACKUP_COMPOSITE assigned by the CadData element	1-1
overallThickness	nonNegativeDoubleType	Describes the overall nominal thickness of the finished printed board including all plating and coatings.	1-1
tolPlus	nonNegativeDoubleType	The plus tolerance that may be applied to the nominal thickness to set the printed board upper control limit.	1-1
tolMinus	nonNegativeDoubleType	The minus tolerance that may be applied to the nominal thickness to set the printed board lower control limit.	1-1
whereMeasured	whereMeasuredType	An enumerated string that may be one of the following: LAMINATE METAL MASK OTHER that defines the location on the printed board, panel, or assembly where the overall thickness is to be measured.	1-1
comment	Xsd:string	An optional attribute used to provide any special instructions about the layering, specification requirements or stackup of an HDI, multilayer, single-sided, or double-sided printed board.	0-1
MatDes	MatDesType	A unique reference designator that is part of the BomDes substitution using the letters in Appendix C followed by a number in order to represent a particular material or layer pair that could be called for in a Bill of Material for the printed board construction	0-1

SpecRef	SpecRefType	The identification of a particular specification(s) from the SpecificationType that is able to provide additional details or instructions that apply to the board or assembly descriptions of the Stackup. The linkage is provided through the specific "specificationId" (spec Name)	0-n																																																																				
StackupGroup	StackupGroupType	A nested element containing information of the printed board construction. StackupGroup elements should be defined within the Stackup before they are referenced in the 2581 file.	0-n																																																																				
CAD View			BOM View																																																																				
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">Layer</th> <th style="width: 33%; text-align: center; padding: 2px;"> </th> <th style="width: 33%; text-align: center; padding: 2px;"> </th> <th style="width: 33%; text-align: center; padding: 2px;"> </th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L1</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">D1_2</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L2</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">D2_3</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: blue; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: blue; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L3</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">D3_4</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L4</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">D4_5</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: blue; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: blue; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L5</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">D5_6</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L6</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> </tbody> </table>			Layer				L1				D1_2				L2				D2_3				L3				D3_4				L4				D4_5				L5				D5_6				L6				<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 10%; text-align: left; padding: 2px;">sequence</th> <th style="width: 90%; text-align: left; padding: 2px;">MatDes name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">1</td><td style="padding: 2px;">CF1</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">2</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DP1</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">3</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DC1</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">4</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DP2</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">5</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DP3</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">6</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DP2</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">7</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DC1</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">8</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DP1</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">9</td><td style="padding: 2px;">CF1</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	sequence	MatDes name	1	CF1	2	DP1	3	DC1	4	DP2	5	DP3	6	DP2	7	DC1	8	DP1	9	CF1
Layer																																																																							
L1																																																																							
D1_2																																																																							
L2																																																																							
D2_3																																																																							
L3																																																																							
D3_4																																																																							
L4																																																																							
D4_5																																																																							
L5																																																																							
D5_6																																																																							
L6																																																																							
sequence	MatDes name																																																																						
1	CF1																																																																						
2	DP1																																																																						
3	DC1																																																																						
4	DP2																																																																						
5	DP3																																																																						
6	DP2																																																																						
7	DC1																																																																						
8	DP1																																																																						
9	CF1																																																																						
SpecRef	SpecRefType	The identification of a particular specification(s) from the SpecificationType that is able to provide additional details or instructions that apply to the board or assembly descriptions of the Stackup. The linkage is provided through the specific "specificationId" (spec Name)	0-n																																																																				
StackupGroup	StackupGroupType	A nested element containing information of the printed board construction. StackupGroup elements should be defined within the Stackup before they are referenced in the 2581 file.	0-n																																																																				
CAD View			BOM View																																																																				
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">Layer</th> <th style="width: 33%; text-align: center; padding: 2px;"> </th> <th style="width: 33%; text-align: center; padding: 2px;"> </th> <th style="width: 33%; text-align: center; padding: 2px;"> </th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L1</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">D1_2</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L2</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">D2_3</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: blue; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: blue; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L3</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">D3_4</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L4</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">D4_5</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: blue; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: blue; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L5</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">D5_6</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: green; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">L6</td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td><td style="width: 33%; background-color: red; height: 10px;"></td></tr> </tbody> </table>			Layer				L1				D1_2				L2				D2_3				L3				D3_4				L4				D4_5				L5				D5_6				L6				<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 10%; text-align: left; padding: 2px;">sequence</th> <th style="width: 90%; text-align: left; padding: 2px;">MatDes name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">1</td><td style="padding: 2px;">CF1</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">2</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DP1</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">3</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DC1</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">4</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DP2</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">5</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DP3</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">6</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DP2</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">7</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DC1</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">8</td><td style="padding: 2px;">DP1</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">9</td><td style="padding: 2px;">CF1</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	sequence	MatDes name	1	CF1	2	DP1	3	DC1	4	DP2	5	DP3	6	DP2	7	DC1	8	DP1	9	CF1
Layer																																																																							
L1																																																																							
D1_2																																																																							
L2																																																																							
D2_3																																																																							
L3																																																																							
D3_4																																																																							
L4																																																																							
D4_5																																																																							
L5																																																																							
D5_6																																																																							
L6																																																																							
sequence	MatDes name																																																																						
1	CF1																																																																						
2	DP1																																																																						
3	DC1																																																																						
4	DP2																																																																						
5	DP3																																																																						
6	DP2																																																																						
7	DC1																																																																						
8	DP1																																																																						
9	CF1																																																																						

Initial Draft From Designer

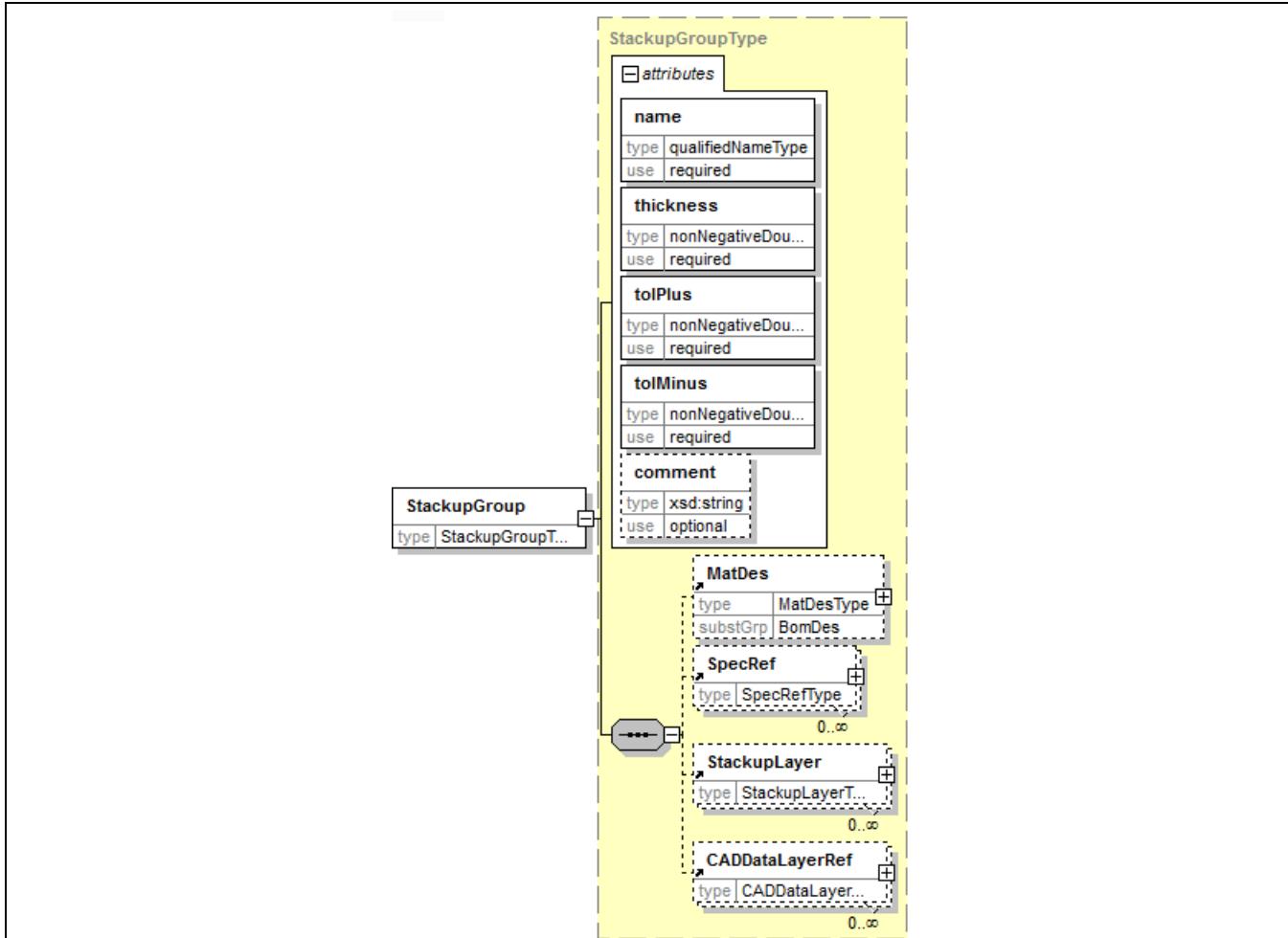
```
<Stackup overallThickness="1.1778" tolPlus="0.0" tolMinus="0.0" whereMeasured="OTHER">
  <StackupGroup name="AllStackupLayers" thickness="1.1778" tolPlus="0.0" tolMinus="0.0">
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L1" sequence="1" thickness="0.0559">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="D1_2" sequence="2" thickness="0.1321">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L2" sequence="3" thickness="0.0559">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="D2_3" sequence="4" thickness="0.1625">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L3" sequence="5" thickness="0.0559">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="D3_4" sequence="6" thickness="0.2532">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L4" sequence="7" thickness="0.0559">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="D4_5" sequence="8" thickness="0.1625">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L5" sequence="9" thickness="0.0559">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="D5_6" sequence="10" thickness="0.1321">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L6" sequence="11" thickness="0.0559">
      </StackupLayer>
  </StackupGroup>
</Stackup>
```

Stackup back from FAB Vendor

```
<Stackup overallThickness="1.1778" tolPlus="0.0" tolMinus="0.0" whereMeasured="OTHER">
  <StackupGroup name="AllStackupLayers" thickness="1.1778" tolPlus="0.0" tolMinus="0.0">
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L1" sequence="1" thickness="0.0559">
      <MatDes name="CF1"/>
    </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="D1_2" sequence="2" thickness="0.1321">
      <MatDes name="DP1"/>
    </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="FabMe1st" thickness="0.7018">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="D5_6" sequence="8" thickness="0.1321">
      <MatDes name="DP1"/>
    </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L6" sequence="9" thickness="0.0559">
      <MatDes name="CF1"/>
    </StackupLayer>
  </StackupGroup>
  <StackupGroup name="FabMe1st" thickness="0.7018" tolPlus="0.0" tolMinus="0.0">
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="laminate1" sequence="3" thickness="0.2243">
      <MatDes name="DC1"/>
    </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="inner_prepreg" thickness="0.2532">
      </StackupLayer>
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="laminate2" sequence="7" thickness="0.2243">
      <MatDes name="DC1"/>
    </StackupLayer>
  </StackupGroup>
  <StackupGroup name="laminate1" thickness="0.2243" tolPlus="0.0" tolMinus="0.0">
    <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L2" thickness="0.0559">
      </StackupLayer>
      <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="D2_3" thickness="0.1625">
        </StackupLayer>
        <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L3" thickness="0.0559">
        </StackupLayer>
      </StackupLayer>
    </StackupGroup>
    <StackupGroup name="laminate2" thickness="0.2243" tolPlus="0.0" tolMinus="0.0">
      <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L4" thickness="0.0559">
        </StackupLayer>
        <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="D4_5" thickness="0.1625">
          </StackupLayer>
          <StackupLayer layerOrGroupRef="L5" thickness="0.0559">
          </StackupLayer>
        </StackupLayer>
      </StackupGroup>
      <StackupGroup name="inner_prepreg" thickness="0.2532" tolPlus="0.0" tolMinus="0.0" >
        <CADDaLayerRef layerRef="D3_4"/>
        <StackupLayer sequence="4" thickness="0.1015">
          <MatDes name="DP2"/>
        </StackupLayer>
        <StackupLayer sequence="5" thickness="0.0502">
          <MatDes name="DP3"/>
        </StackupLayer>
        <StackupLayer sequence="6" thickness="0.1015">
          <MatDes name="DP2"/>
        </StackupLayer>
      </StackupGroup>
    </StackupGroup>
  </Stackup>
```

8.2.2.1 StackupGroup

The StackupGroup represents all the layers of the printed board and defines the order of their occurrence in the board construction. Individual layers may be identified as layer pairs. In this manner the user has the ability to define the characterization of the multilayer construction as well as preparing layer prelamination sequences. The order, however, must be in accordance with the description of the final board. If StackupGroup represents the finished board the attributes apply to the entire finished board; if StackupGroup identifies layer pairs the attributes apply to the specific layer pair only and that product is called for in the stackup by its qualified name in the order of occurrence in the total stackup.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
StackupGroup	StackupGroupType	A nested element containing in formation of the printed board construction.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned to an individual or group of layers that make up the printed board. The name must be unique so that when a group becomes nested in the over all board it is referenced in the proper order of occurrence in the stackup.	1-1
thickness	nonNegativeDoubleType	The nominal thickness of the stackup group. If the stackup group represents the total board rather than a subset the thickness must match the information provided in the stackup element attributes.	1-1
tolPlus	nonNegativeDoubleType	The plus tolerance that may be applied to the nominal thickness to set the stackupGroup upper control limit.	1-1

tolMinus	nonNegativeDouble Type	The minus tolerance that may be applied to the nominal thickness to set the stackupGroup lower control limit.	1-1
comment	string	An optional attribute used to provide any special instructions about the layering, layer pairs or stackupGroup	0-1
MatDes	MatDesType	A unique reference designator that is part of the BomDes substitution using the letters in Appendix C followed by a number in order to represent a particular material or layer pair that could be called for in a Bill of Material for the printed board construction	0-1
SpecRef	SpecRefType	The identification of a particular specification(s) from the SpecificationType that is able to provide additional details or instructions that apply to the board or assembly descriptions of the StackupGroup. The linkage is provided through the specific "specificationId" (spec Name)	0-n
StackupLayer	StackupLayerType	A nested element containing in all the layer formation as to how the printed board is constructed. If layer pairs are produced separately possibly containing buried vias they are defined as a separate group and then positioned in the appropriate order of their occurrence in the stackup. A relationship to the particular BOMItem should be established through use of the appropriate RefDes description provided in bomItem such as DB2 for a dielectric base material type. See Appendix C.	0-n
CADDATAlayerRef	LayerType	A single or set of layer names that have been assigned by the CAD system and represent a link or comparison to the names assigned to the layers shown in the stackupGroup	0-n

Example of Property References for a Stackup Spec

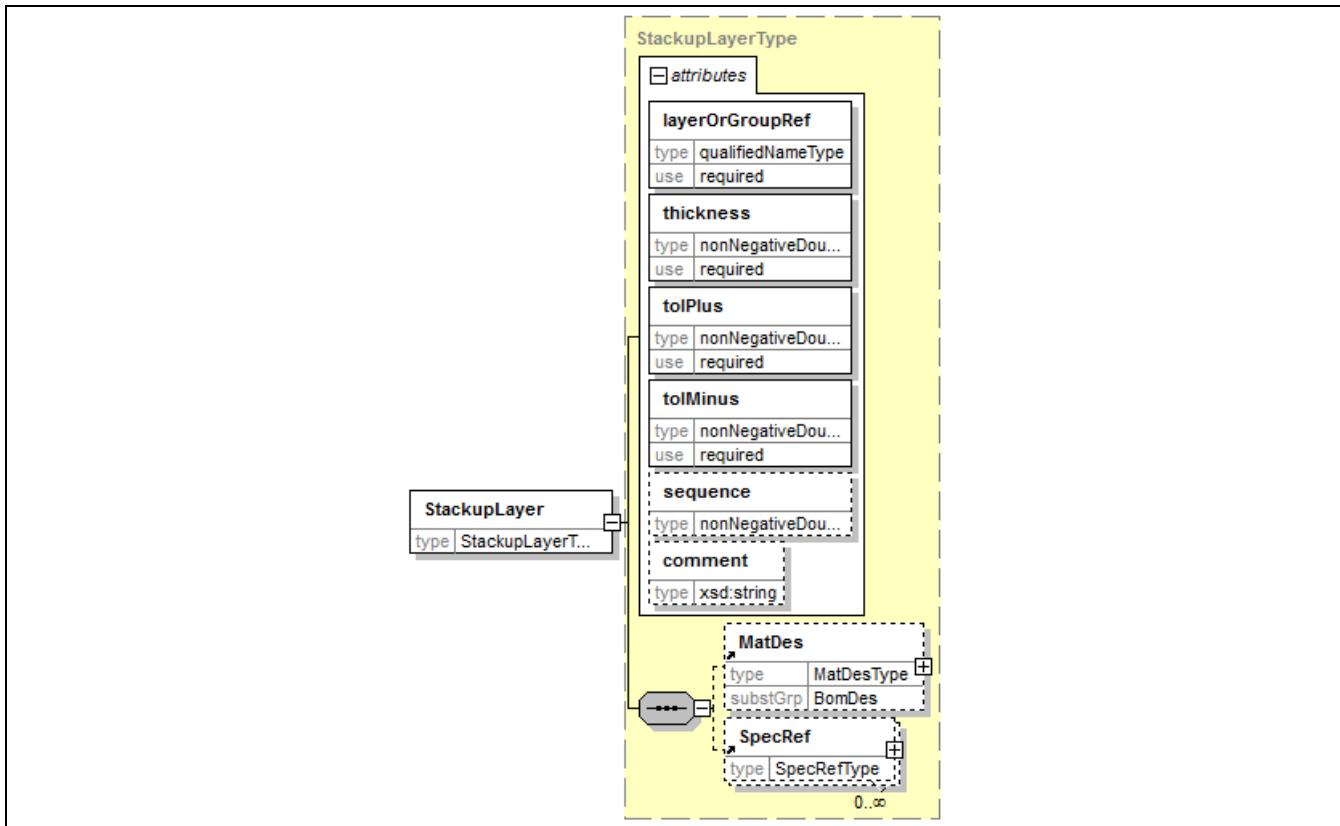
The example below shows:

- a. A given Spec definition can contain multiple Specification Types
- b. When a Specification Type for a StackupLayer Spec contains multiple values at different refValues, which could be required for simulation purposes (see DIELECTRIC_CONSTANT example in section 8.1.1.5) then a refValue can be assigned within a Spec referenced at the Stackup level, to indicate a reference value for board fabrication

```
<Spec name = "property_references">
  <Dielectric type="DIELECTRIC_CONSTANT">
    <Property refValue="10.0e9" refUnit="Hz"/>
  </Dielectric>
  <Dielectric type="LOSS_TANGENT">
    <Property refValue="10.0e9" refUnit="Hz"/>
  </Dielectric>
  <Conductor type="CONDUCTIVITY">
    <Property refValue="25" refUnit="CELCIUS"/>
  </Conductor>
  <Impedance type="IMPEDANCE">
    <Property refValue="25" refUnit="CELCIUS"/>
  </Impedance>
</Spec>
```

8.2.2.1.1 StackupLayer

The Stackuplayer represents all the layers of the printed board. Individual layers may be identified as material layers and are used to help define the layer pairs designated in StackupGroup.



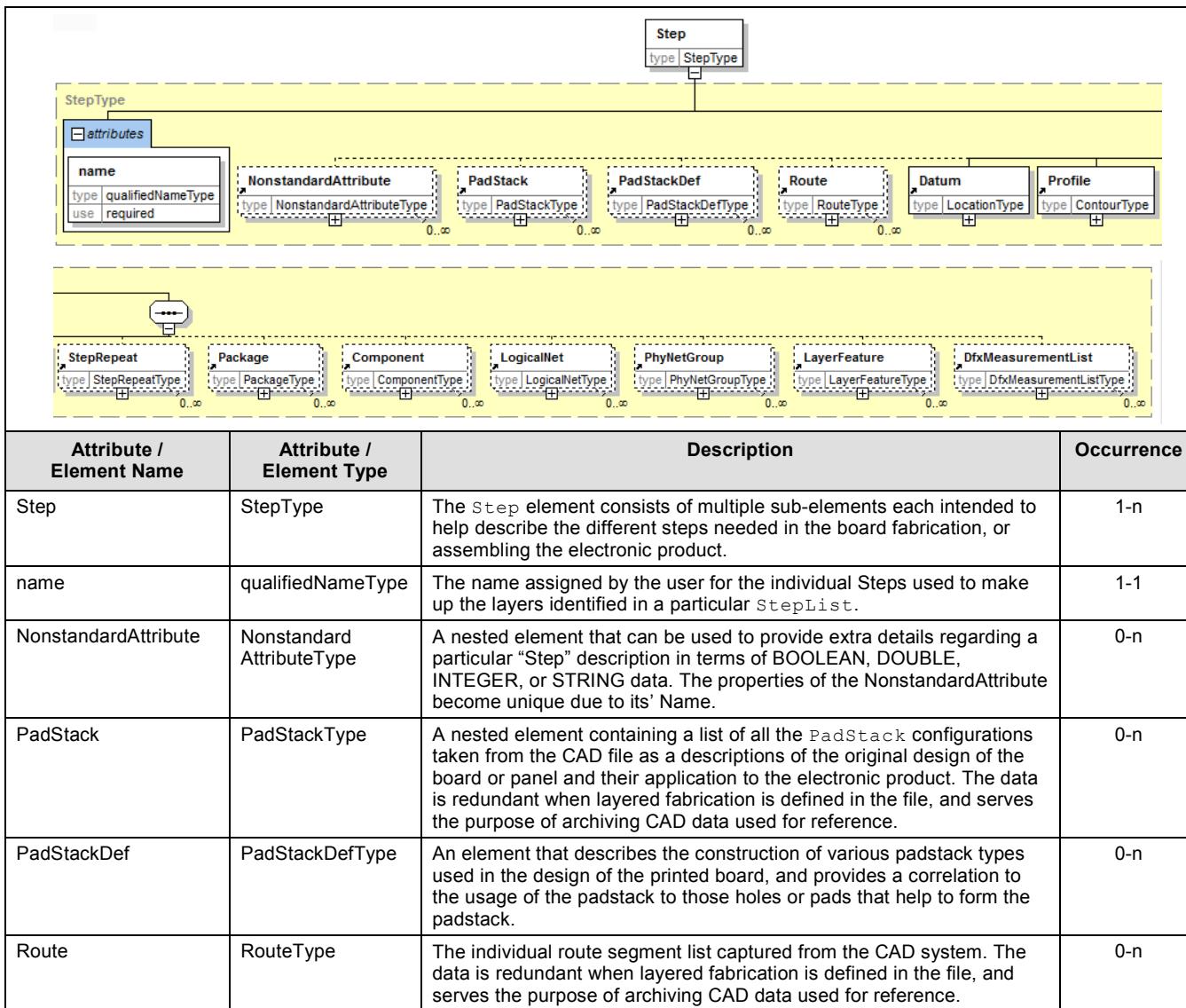
LayerOrGroupRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to an individual layer or a group that has been previously identified. A single sheet of copper foil may be a named layer and would thus apply to the group, as would a layer pair of copper clad laminate purchased from a laminator.	1-1
thickness	nonNegativeDoubleType	The thickness of the particular material being defined. The thickness matches nominal thickness of a predefined StackupGroup.	1-1
tolPlus	nonNegativeDoubleType	The plus tolerance that may be applied to the nominal thickness to set the layer upper control limit. If this is a stackupGroup the tolerances shall match those indicated in the group description	1-1
tolMinus	nonNegativeDoubleType	The minus tolerance that may be applied to the nominal thickness to set the layer lower control limit. If this is a stackupGroup the tolerances shall match those indicated in the group description	1-1
sequence	nonNegativeDoubleType	The specific order in which the layer materials or layer pairs are positioned in the stackup stating with the top of the board as sequence 1 followed by the entire board construction of imaged or un imaged layers/layer pairs.	0-1
comment	string	An optional attribute used to provide any special instructions about the layering or stackup of a multilayer single-sided, or double-sided printed board.	0-1
MatDes	MatDesType	A unique reference designator that is part of the BomDes substitution using the letters in Appendix C followed by a number in order to represent a particular material or layer pair that could be called for in a Bill of Material for the printed board construction	0-1
SpecRef	SpecRefType	The identification of a particular specification(s) from the SpecificationType that is able to provide additional details or instructions that apply to the board or assembly descriptions of the Stackup Layer. The linkage is provided through the specific "specificationId" (spec Name)	0-n

8.2.3 Step

The **Step** element represents a collection of layers, each with a profile that defines its outer shape. The basic step is the Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA), the unpopulated board or other related information (e.g., documentation). In manufacturing, this basic step is often step and repeated (nested) inside a larger step (called array, or sub-panel). This array step can be further nested into another step; called a production panel. The **Ecad** element always contains at least one **Step**, but may contain several, some basic ones and others nesting previous steps.

The CAD **Step** tag can be repeated multiple times inside a job to represent several job **Steps** and their optional panelization. Each **Step** contains all the relevant information including **Datum**, **Profile**, **StepRepeat**, **LayerAttribute**, **Package**, **Component**, **VplComponent**, **LogicalNet** and **LayerFeature**.

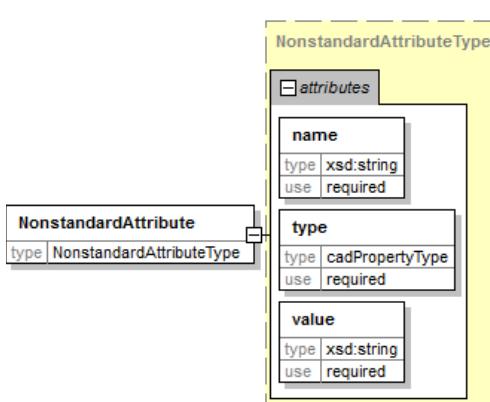
All steps inside an **Ecad** element share the exact same layer structure, since they are 'cut' from the same basic panel. Each **layer**, in the list of layers, exists in every step, although in each **step** it may contain different graphical information or be empty.



Datum	LocationType	The <code>Datum</code> element defines the location of the point of origin for the individual <code>Step</code> file. The name of the <code>StepList</code> helps to associate the datum between boards and panels or arrays.	1-1
Profile	ContourType	The profile of all the elements in the <code>Step</code> established as a <code>Contour</code> .	1-1
StepRepeat	StepRepeatType	A nested element list containing the Step and Repeat 8s that impact the information of the electronic product.	0-n
Package	PackageType	Generic component package descriptions for use by the <code>Step</code> file schemas.	0-n
Component	ComponentType	A nested element list of component descriptions and their application to the electronic product. Each component references a package style from the <code>Package</code> section.	0-n
LogicalNet	LogicalNetType	A nested element list of logical net descriptions and their application to the electronic product.	0-n
PhyNetGroup	PhyNetGroupType	A nested element list of physical net descriptions and their application to the electronic product.	0-n
LayerFeature	LayerFeatureType	A nested element list of all the features associated with a specific layer and their application to the electronic product.	0-n
DfxMeasurementList	DfxMeasurementListType	A nested element list of the recommended modifications of the design features, indicating the measurements made of the physical conditions that might be considered as manufacturing improvements.	0-n

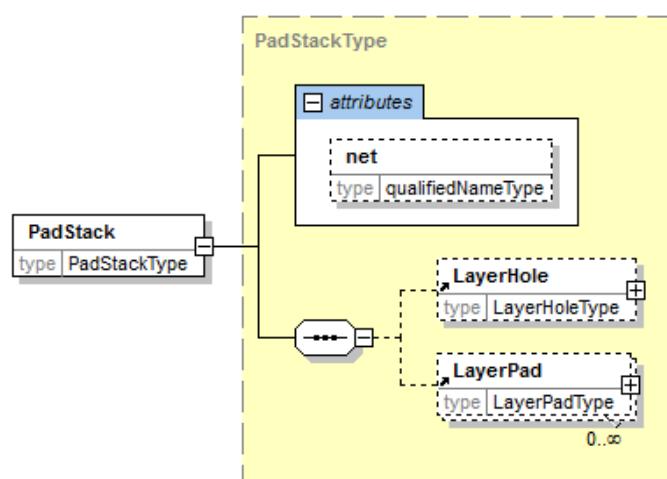
8.2.3.1 NonstandardAttribute

The `NonstandardAttribute` element consists of various conditions that may be used in association with the `Step` element. The `NonstandardAttribute` element has several attributes which include a name, type and value thus making each `NonstandardAttribute` unique. The type attribute is a `cadPropertyType` and identifies the “value” attribute as being `BOOLEAN`, `DOUBLE`, `INTEGER` or `STRING` data.

			
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
NonstandardAttribute	NonstandardAttributeType	A nested element that can be used to provide extra details regarding a particular “Step” description in terms of <code>BOOLEAN</code> , <code>DOUBLE</code> , <code>INTEGER</code> , or <code>STRING</code> data. The properties of the <code>NonstandardAttribute</code> become unique due to its Name.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned by the user to the <code>NonstandardAttribute</code> . The name must be unique and should match the purpose of the actions to be taken.	1-1
type	cadPropertyType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the condition of the value requirement. They consist of <code>BOOLEAN</code> <code>DOUBLE</code> <code>INTEGER</code> or <code>STRING</code> data.	1-1
value	string	The detail requirements as they pertain to the particular <code>Step</code> description and interpreted - according to the type enumeration that is part of the particular <code>NonstandardAttribute</code> .	1-1

8.2.3.2 PadStack

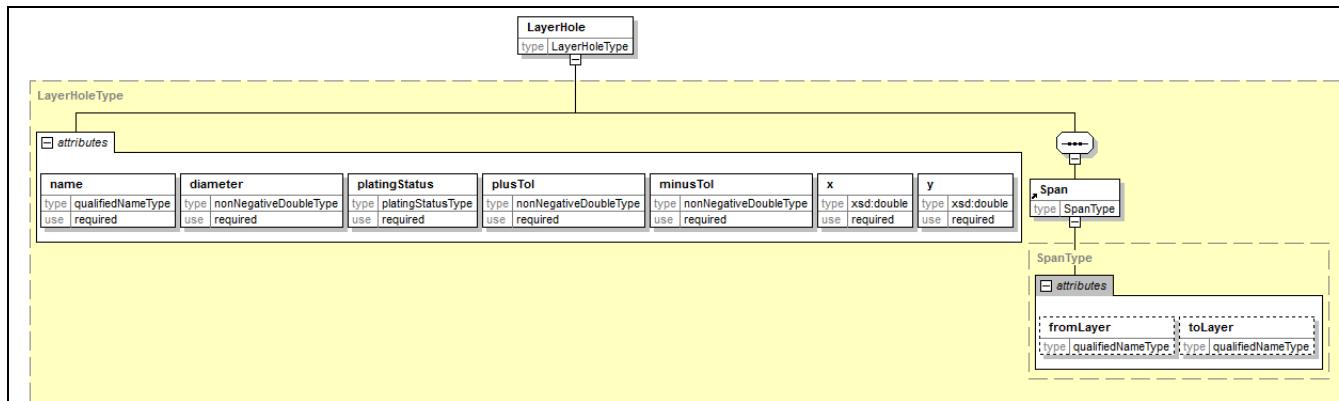
The `PadStack` element consists of multiple padstacks taken from the CAD system and is intended to preserve the data from the layout system. The information noted pertain to the `CadProperty` of which the padstack is a part. The relationship is identified by the `CadProperty` unique name and is the original design file from the CAD system. The data becomes redundant when the individual layered features are defined and is then for reference only.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
PadStack	PadStackType	A nested element containing a list of all the <code>PadStack</code> configurations taken from the CAD file as a descriptions of the original design of the board or panel and their application to the electronic product. The data is redundant when layered fabrication is defined in the file, and therefore is for reference only.	0-n
net	qualifiedNameType	The name attached to the electrical description of the conductive hole pattern.	0-1
LayerHole	layerHoleType	The hole description of the padstack including all its attributes.	0-1
LayerPad	layerPadType	A nested element defining the pad(s) that the hole traverses indicating location and layer reference for different pad sizes.	0-n

8.2.3.2.1 LayerHole

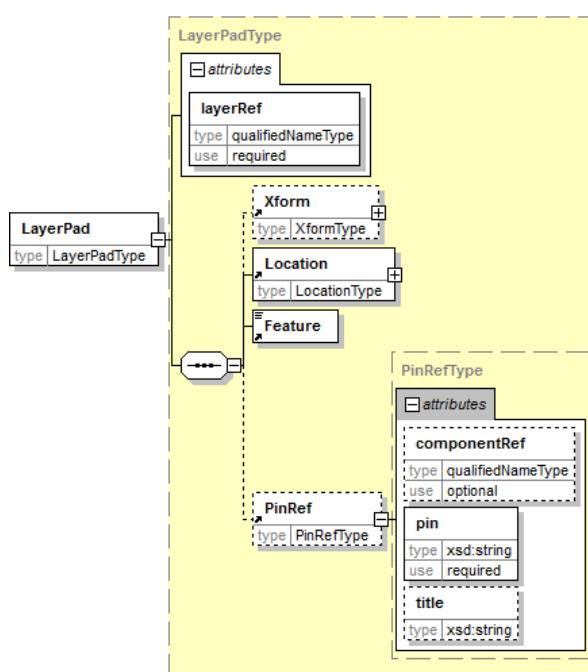
The `LayerHole` element associated with a padstack identifies the distance through which the hole transcends as a span between individual layers.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
LayerHole	LayerHoleType	The hole description of the padstack including all its attributes.	0-1
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique identification of a particular hole.	1-1
diameter	nonNegativeDouble Type	The nominal diameter of the hole in the as-finished state.	1-1
platingStatus	platingStatusType	The type of hole defined as an enumerated string indicating PLATED NONPLATED VIA.	1-1
plusTol	nonNegativeDouble Type	The plus tolerance that defines the variation permitted from the nominal hole-diameter.	1-1
minusTol	nonNegativeDouble Type	The minus tolerance that defines the variation permitted from the nominal hole-diameter.	1-1
x	double	The x-location of the hole.	1-1
y	double	The y-location of the hole.	1-1
Span	SpanType	A nested element where the field may be added to layers of type drill and route that are either buried or blind. In such a case, it represents the start and end board layers between which drilling/routing is done. If the drill layer is going through the board, it is required not to be included in a span subsection.	1-1

8.2.3.2.2 LayerPad

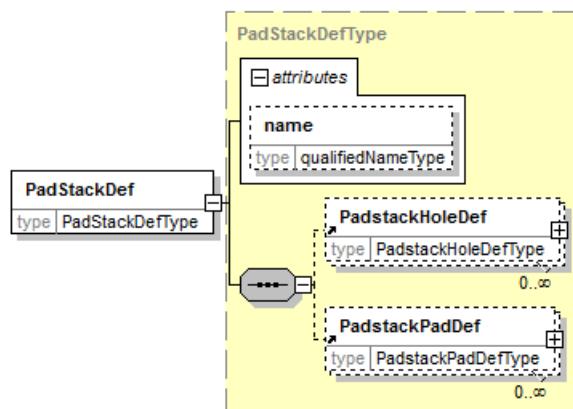
The `LayerPad` element is a group of specific graphic features that become part of the padstack with a description of the pin to which the padstack applies and the layer on which the individual pad is located.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
LayerPad	LayerPadType	A nested element defining the pad(s) that the hole traverses indicating location and layer reference for different pad sizes	0-n
layerRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to the appropriate layer to which the attribute applies.	1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined pad that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. See 3.3	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the StandardShape, UserShape or a pre-defined StandardShape or User Shape of the pad. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate of the location of the pad.	1-1
y	double	The y coordinate of the location of the pad.	1-1
Feature	ABSTRACT	An embedded element that defines a substitution group of any StandardShape or UserShape that may be instantiated as a part of the pad description. A predefined StandardShape or UserShape may also be instantiated by its unique "id" when the feature is contained in the DictionaryStandard or User. When a reference is made to the dictionary predefined primitive the Units must match.	
PinRef	PinRefType	An individual Pin related to the place where a component attaches to the net. This description facilitates location of lands on the surface of the board or places where through-hole components are mounted.	1-n
componentRef	qualifiedNameType	The qualifiedNameType that identifies the reference designator used as the attribute refDes of the Component element in Step It is the reference to the component that is connected by the particular Pin and becomes a part of the electrical description of the net. The componentRef attribute is not required when used for a PinRef element under Pad elements which are under LandPattern elements. Otherwise, the componentRef attribute is required for PinRef elements under Pad, LayerPad and LogicalNet elements.	0-1
pin	string	An identification of the component pin that becomes a part of the electrical description.	1-1
title	string	An alternate method of relating the pin information providing characteristics of the component lead or termination description.	0-1

8.2.3.3 PadStackDef

The `PadStackDef` element consists of multiple padstacks types or descriptions taken from the CAD system and is intended to preserve the data from the layout system. The information noted pertain to the `CadProperty` of which the padstack is a part. The relationship is identified by the `CadProperty` unique name and is the original design file from the CAD system. The data becomes although redundant when the individual layered features are defined provides a reference for the padstack usage.

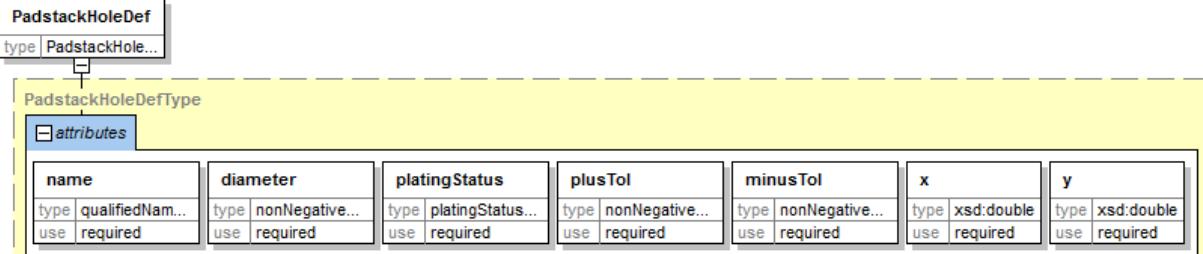


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
PadStackDef	PadStackDefType	An element that provides the characteristics of individual padstacks in the design, as established by the CAD system, and provides the link to the layer distribution of the padstacks individual characteristics.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned to the construction of a particular padstack type.	0-n
PadstackHoleDef	PadstackHoleDefType	The hole description of a padstack including all its attributes as defined by the CAD system.	0-n
PadstackPadDef	PadstackPadDefType	The Pad description of a padstack including all its attributes as defined by the CAD system.	0-n

```
<Step name = "C027D17P">
  <PadStackDef name = " C027D17P ">
    <PadstackHoleDef name="PSHD_1" Diameter= ".027" platingStatus="PLATED" plusTol="0.002" minusTol="0.002" X="0.0" Y="0.0"/>
    <PadstackPadDef layerRef="TOP" PadUse="REGULAR" >
      <Location X = "0.0" Y="0.0"/>
      <StandardPrimitive id = "CIRCLE_10"/>
    </PadstackPadDef>
    <PadstackPadDef layerRef="IL-1" PadUse="REGULAR" >
      <Location X = "0.0" Y="0.0"/>
      <StandardPrimitive id = "CIRCLE_10"/>
    </PadstackPadDef>
    <PadstackPadDef layerRef="IL-1" PadUse="ANTIPAD" >
      <Location X = "0.0" Y="0.0"/>
      <StandardPrimitive id = "PAD15"/>
    </PadstackPadDef>
    <PadstackPadDef layerRef="IL-1" PadUse="THERMAL" >
      <Location X = "0.0" Y="0.0"/>
      <StandardPrimitive id = "FIGURE_THERMAL_25_+ "/>
    </PadstackPadDef>
    <PadstackPadDef layerRef="IL-2" PadUse="REGULAR" >
      <Location X = "0.0" Y="0.0"/>
      <StandardPrimitive id = "CIRCLE_10"/>
    </PadstackPadDef>
    <PadstackPadDef layerRef="IL-2" PadUse="ANTIPAD" >
      <Location X = "0.0" Y="0.0"/>
      <StandardPrimitive id = "PAD15"/>
    </PadstackPadDef>
    <PadstackPadDef layerRef="IL-2" PadUse="THERMAL" >
      <Location X = "0.0" Y="0.0"/>
      <StandardPrimitive id = "FIGURE_THERMAL_25_+ "/>
    </PadstackPadDef>
    <PadstackPadDef layerRef="BOTTOM" PadUse="REGULAR" >
      <Location X = "0.0" Y="0.0"/>
      <StandardPrimitive id = "CIRCLE_10"/>
    </PadstackPadDef>
  </PadStackDef>
</Step>
```

8.2.3.3.1 PadstackHoleDef

The PadstackHoleDef element associated with a padstack identifies the diameter, tolerance and plating status of a particular padstack location.



The diagram shows the UML class PadstackHoleDef with its attribute table. The attributes are:

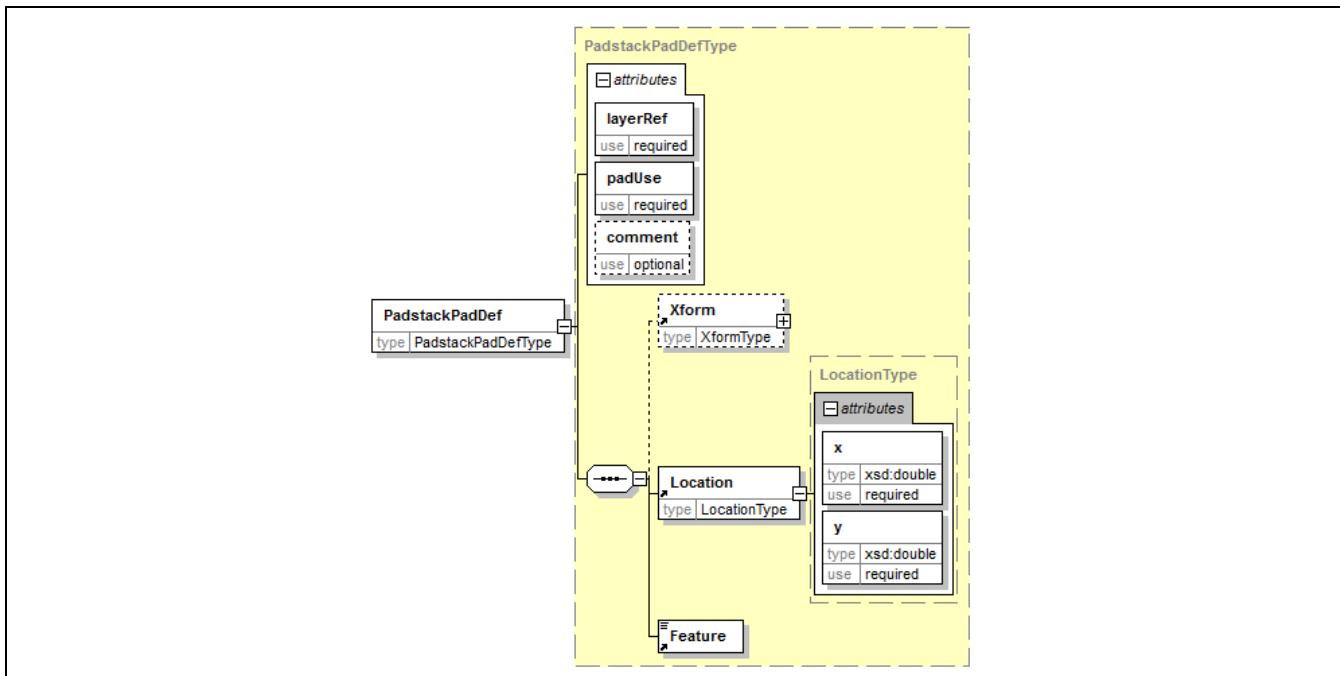
name	diameter	platingStatus	plusTol	minusTol	x	y
type: qualifiedNameType use: required	type: nonNegativeDoubleType use: required	type: platingStatusType use: required	type: nonNegativeDoubleType use: required	type: nonNegativeDoubleType use: required	type: xsd:double use: required	type: xsd:double use: required

Below the diagram is a table mapping attributes to their descriptions and occurrences.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
PadstackHoleDef	PadstackHoleDefType	The hole description of the padstack including all its attributes.	0-1
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique identification of a particular padstack hole description.	1-1
diameter	nonNegativeDoubleType	The nominal diameter of the hole in the as-finished state.	1-1
platingStatus	platingStatusType	The type of hole defined as an enumerated string indicating PLATED NONPLATED VIA.	1-1
plusTol	nonNegativeDoubleType	The plus tolerance that defines the variation permitted from the nominal hole-diameter.	1-1
minusTol	nonNegativeDoubleType	The minus tolerance that defines the variation permitted from the nominal hole-diameter.	1-1
x	double	The x-location of the hole.	1-1
y	double	The y-location of the hole.	1-1

8.2.3.3.2 PadstackPadDef

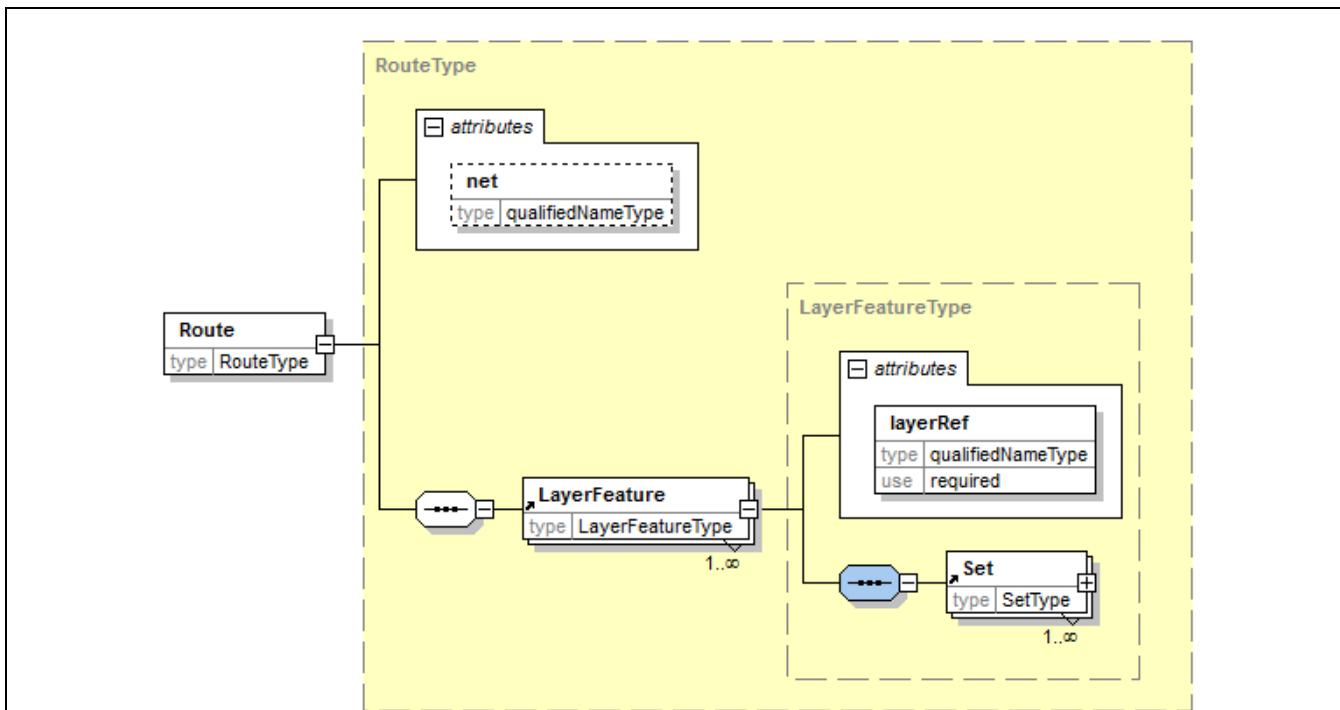
The `PadstackPadDef` element is a specific graphic feature that becomes part of the padstack with a description of shape (Feature) and a location in order to establish the linkage to pads on individual layers.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
PadstackPadDef	PadstackPadDefType	An element that provides the definition of various pads that are used to make up a padstack within the CAD system and provides the ability to locate where these are used in the design of the board.	0-n
layerRef	qualifiedNameType	The reference to a specific layer element by it's "name" attribute. The layer referenced is where the pad image is located.	1-1
padUse	padUseType	An enumerated value of the pad type used on the particular layer, such as a power or signal or mask layer. The enumerations are REGULAR ANTI PAD THERMAL OTHER. If OTHER is used a comment is required to explain the purpose of the pad.	1-1
comment	string	An explanation as to the condition of the Pad if OTHER is defined as the padUse. A comment may also be used if the pad is not connected to circuitry and has been removed by the manufacturer to improve clearance conditons.	0-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. (See 3.3)	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the standard shape, user shape or a pre-defined standard shape of the pad. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate of the location of the pad relative to the origin of the padstack.	1-1
y	double	The y coordinate of the location of the pad relative to the origin of the padstack.	1-1
Feature	ABSTRACT	An embedded element that defines a substitution group of any StandardShape or UserShape that may be instantiated as a part of the Pad Description. A predefined StandardShape or UserShape may also be instantiated by its unique "id" when the feature is contained in the DictionaryStandard or User. When a reference is made to the dictionary predefined primitive the Units must match.	1-1

8.2.3.4 Route

The **Route** element consists of multiple routes taken from the CAD system and is intended to preserve the data from the layout system. Each **Route** is referenced to a particular **Net** and a layer on which the route or net occurs as taken from the CAD system. The data becomes redundant when the individual layered features are defined and is then for reference only. The **Route** element uses the same characteristics of the **Step** description as defined in the **LayerFeature** schema (see 8.3.13).



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Route	RouteType	The individual route segment list captured from the CAD system. The data is redundant when layered fabrication is defined in the file, and therefore is for reference only.	0-n
net	qualifiedNameType	Each route is linked to a particular net which is defined in the Cad system and matches the padstacks that are associated with the net.	0-1
LayerFeature	LayerFeatureType	The standard IPC-2581 Step characteristics for layer features related to the route taken from the Cad system.	1-n
layerRef	qualifiedNameType	The reference to the unique layer name to which the LayerFeature(s) pertain.	1-1
Set	SetType	The multiple Set elements and attributes defined in 8.3.13 LayerFeature used to define specific features associated with a conductive layer.	1-n

8.2.3.4.1 Set

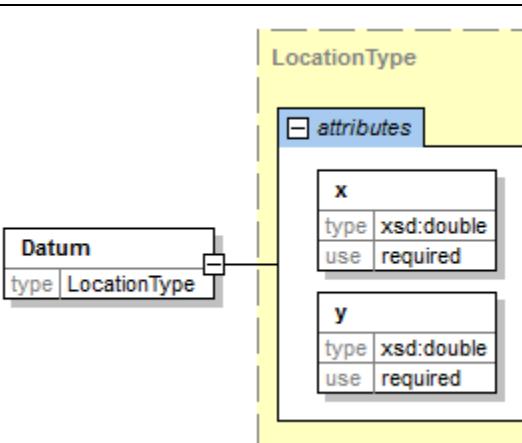
A specific set of graphical descriptions for a particular set of graphical shapes. These shapes are applied defining the conductive pattern of the printed board.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Set	SetType	The multiple Set elements and attributes defined in 8.3.1 used to define specific features associated with a conductive layer.	1-n
net	qualifiedNameType	The electrical relationship of any feature, through the name of the PhyNet, when the Set feature has conductivity checked in the PhyNetPoint descriptions. This attribute is left blank if the set descriptions are for other than printed board fabrication or assembly conductivity.	0-1
polarity	polarityType	Polarity indicates whether the information described in the Set is POSITIVE NEGATIVE. A NEGATIVE connotation can be used to describe the removal of a dark field to the specific dimensions described for another attribute. Thus, a surface that contains islands may have the islands described in a negative format.	0-1
padUsage	padUsageType	An indication as to the usage of any pad that becomes a part of the LayerFeature Set. The descriptions are enumerated strings and must be one of the following: TERMINATION VIA PLANE TOOLING_HOLE MASK NONE.	0-1
testPoint	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE indicates that the feature is a candidate for a test point used for either in-circuit or functional testing. FALSE indicates that it is not.	0-1
geometry	string	An identification to describe the overall geometry of the features contained in the Set and their particular application to the electronic product.	0-1
plate	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE indicates that the feature is plated in a secondary operation . FALSE indicates that it is not.	0-1
componentRef	string	A reference to the component instance associated with the reference designation that links the information together so that graphic representation in the Set can be accurately described in Assembly or Silk screen documentation.	0-1
NonstandardAttribute	NonstandardAttribute Type	A nested element that can be used to provide extra details regarding a particular "Set" description in terms of BOOLEAN, DOUBLE, INTEGER, or STRING data. The properties of the NonstandardAttribute become unique due to its' Name.	0-n

Pad	PadType	A series of pads that are associated with the <code>LayerFeature</code> Set.	0-n
Fiducial	ABSTRACT	A substitution that consists of four elements that may be used to replace the fiducial element. When the <code>Fiducial</code> element is substituted it shall be by a <code>Global</code> , <code>Local</code> , <code>BadBoardMark</code> , or <code>GoodPanelMark</code> .	0-n
Hole	HoleType	A series of holes associated with the <code>LayerFeature</code> Set.	0-n
SlotCavity	SlotCavityType	A series of slots or cavities associated with the <code>LayerFeature</code> Set.	0-n
SpecRef	SpecRefType	The identification of a particular specification(s) from the <code>SpecificationType</code> that is able to provide additional details or instructions that apply to the <code>Hole</code> , <code>SlotCavity</code> or <code>Features</code> of the Set descriptions.. The linkage is provided through the specific "specificationId" (spec Name)	0-n
Features	FeaturesType	An embedded element that defines a substitution group of any predefined <code>StandardShape</code> or <code>UserShape</code> that may be instantiated as a part of the <code>LayerFeature</code> Set.	0-n
ColorGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits assigning a particular color through instantiating the three basic colors or by providing a reference to a predefined <code>Color</code> in <code>DictionaryColor</code> .	0-n
LineDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that specifies the <code>LineWidth</code> and <code>LineEnd</code> characteristics of a <code>Feature</code> that requires that description. If a predefined feature is instantiated the presents of a <code>LineDescGroup</code> will override the previously defined <code>LineDesc</code> .	0-n

8.2.3.5 Datum

The `Datum` element of the `Step` schema (`StepType/Datum`) defines the location of the point of origin for the individual `Step` file. The unique name of the `Step` helps to associate the datum between boards and panels or pallets.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Datum	LocationType	A nested element containing the datum origin for the overall Step.	1-1
x	double	The x location of the datum.	1-1
y	double	The y location of the datum.	1-1

8.2.3.6 Profile

The **Profile** element of the **Step** schema (**StepTypeProfile**) defines the exact periphery of the board or assembly and therefore all the characteristics of the **Step** element.

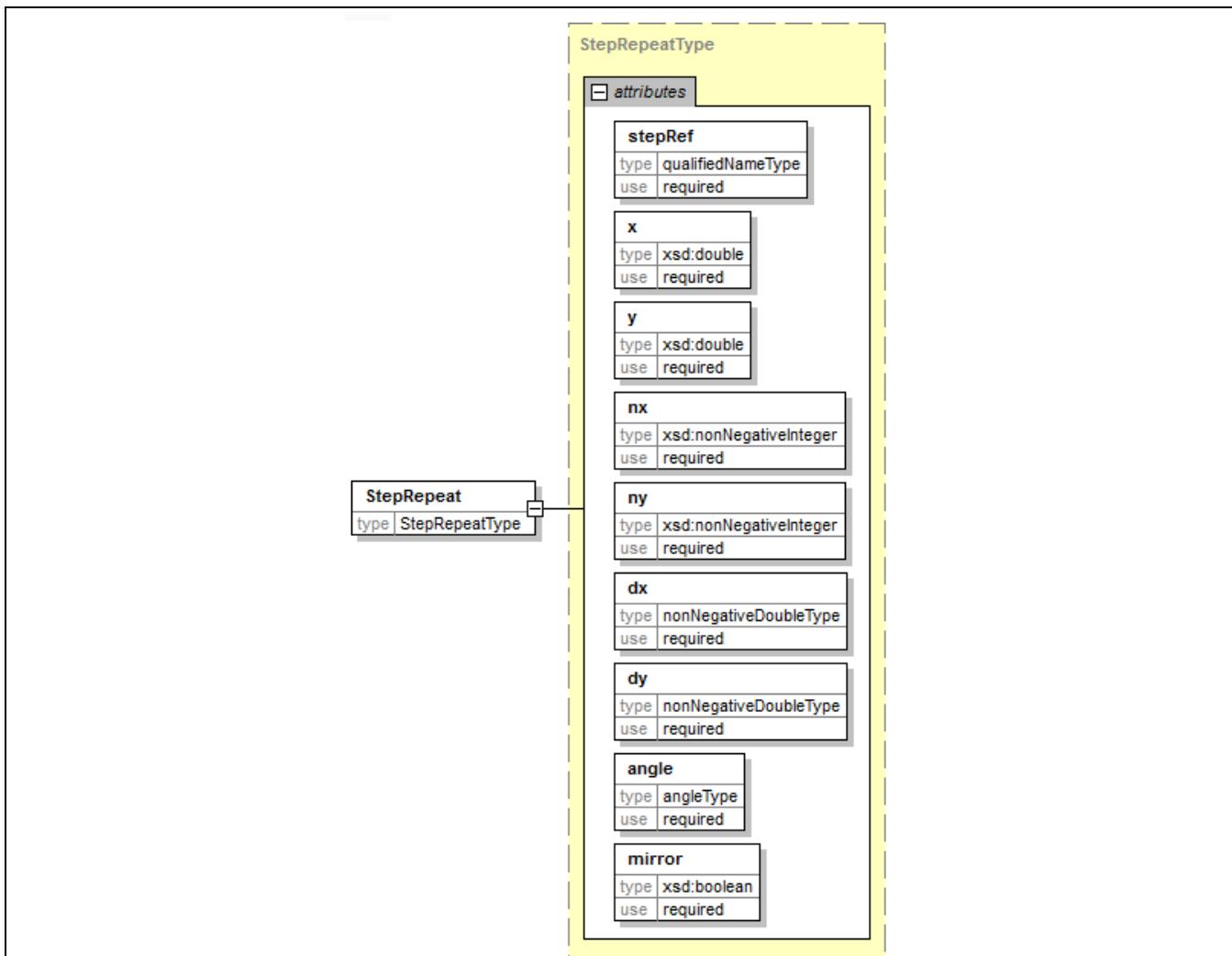
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Profile	ContourType	The profile is a <code>contourType</code> and thus describes the periphery that encompasses all the elements in the <code>Step</code> .	1-1
PolyBegin	PolyBeginType	The <code>PolyBegin</code> element defines the starting point of the polygon.	1-1
x	double	The X starting point of the first polygon edge.	1-1
y	double	The Y starting point of the first polygon edge.	1-1
PolyStep	ABSTRACT	The <code>PolyStep</code> element is a substitution group that defines a circular (<code>PolyStepCurve</code>) or straight line (<code>PolyStepSegment</code>) continuation of the polygon. The polystep direction may be clockwise or counterclockwise which must be consistent when any <code>Arc</code> description is used as one of the <code>PolyStep</code> elements. Straight or curved line segments must not cross. The final X and final Y coordinate must match those of the <code>PolyBegin</code> element to signify that the shape is closed.	1..n
Cutout	CutoutType	A polygon closed shape whose edges do not cross, which adopts the coordinates of the original polygon, however represents the absence of material within the original polygon shape.	0..n
PolyBegin	PolyBeginType	The <code>PolyBegin</code> element defines the starting point of the polygon.	1-1
x	double	The X starting point of the first polygon edge.	1-1
y	double	The Y starting point of the first polygon edge.	1-1
PolyStep	ABSTRACT	The <code>PolyStep</code> element is a substitution group that defines a circular (<code>PolyStepCurve</code>) or straight line (<code>PolyStepSegment</code>) continuation of the polygon. The polystep direction may be clockwise or counterclockwise which must be consistent when any <code>Arc</code> description is used as one of the <code>PolyStep</code> elements. Straight or curved line segments must not cross. The final X and final Y coordinate must match those of the <code>PolyBegin</code> element to signify that the shape is closed.	1..n

```
<Step name = "KarensSingleBoard">
  <Datum x = "10.00" y = "10.00"/>
  <Profile>
    <Polygon>
      <PolyBegin x = "0.00" y = "10.00"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "0.00" y = "90.00"/>
      <PolyStepCurve x = "10.00" y = "100.00" centerX = "10.00" centerY = "90.00" clockwise = "TRUE"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "200.00" y = "100.00"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "200.00" y = "50.00"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "150.00" y = "50.00"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "150.00" y = "0.00"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "10.00" y = "0.00"/>
      <PolyStepCurve x = "0.00" y = "10.00" centerX = "10.00" centerY = "10.00" clockwise = "TRUE"/>
    </Polygon>
  </Profile>
</Step>
```

8.2.3.7 StepRepeat

The `StepRepeat` elements provides information for steps representing panels or assembly pallets. Coupons may also use this feature to step the coupon description on the borders of the panel. The layer descriptions of any `Board` and `Coupon` combined in a `Panel` description must be of the same construction. The attribute `stepRef` is restricted in the XML schema to the unique name of the `Step` element referenced.

If the features of a `StepRepeat` function become unique due to different characteristics such as one `Step` is at 90 degrees while the next `Step` is at 180 degrees two separate `stepRepeat` elements are required.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
StepRepeat	StepRepeatType	A nested element list containing the Step and Repeat functions that impact the information of the electronic product.	0-n
stepRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to the step that should be replicated on the panel.	1-1
x	double	The X point of origin where the first step should be placed in relationship to the datum. This may be coincident or may be offset from the datum of the particular step.	1-1
y	double	The Y point of origin where the first step should be placed in relationship to the datum. This may be coincident or may be offset from the datum of the particular step.	1-1
nx	nonNegativeInteger	The number of times that the referenced step should be repeated in the X direction.	1-1
ny	nonNegativeInteger	The number of times that the referenced step should be repeated in the Y direction.	1-1
dx	nonNegativeDouble Type	The dimensional distance in the positive X direction as a step from the first position point of origin (not necessarily from the datum).	1-1
dy	nonNegativeDouble Type	The dimensional distance in the positive Y direction as a step from the first position point of origin (not necessarily from the datum).	1-1
angle	angleType	A unique angle to allow rotation of the <code>StepRepeat</code> image description where "0°" is as defined with the angle descriptions being counterclockwise (i.e., 45° 90°) from the horizontal zero angle.	1-1

mirror	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the image is mirrored; FALSE indicates that it is not.	1-1
<pre> <Step name = "KarensAssemblyPanel"> <Datum x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/> <Profile> <Polygon> <PolyBegin x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "0.00" y = "427.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "260.00" y = "427.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "260.00" y = "0.00"/> <PolyStepSegment x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/> </Polygon> </Profile> <StepRepeat stepRef = "KarensSingleBoard" x = "110.00" y = "20.00" nx = "1" ny = "1" dx = "120.00" dy = "207.00" angle = "90.00" mirror = "FALSE"/> <LayerFeature layerRef = "1-Top Signal"> <Set polarity = "POSITIVE"> <GlobalFiducial> <Location x = "250.00" y = "10.00"/> <Circle diameter = "1.00"/> </GlobalFiducial> <GlobalFiducial> <Location x = "250.00" y = "417.00"/> <Circle diameter = "1.00"/> </GlobalFiducial> <GlobalFiducial> <Location x = "10.00" y = "10.00"/> <Circle diameter = "1.00"/> </GlobalFiducial> <BadBoardMark> <Location x = "190.00" y = "5.00"/> <Circle diameter = "1.50"/> </BadBoardMark> <BadBoardMark> <Location x = "70.00" y = "5.00"/> <Circle diameter = "1.00"/> </BadBoardMark> <BadBoardMark> <Location x = "190.00" y = "213.00"/> <Circle diameter = "1.00"/> </BadBoardMark> <BadBoardMark> <Location x = "70.00" y = "213.00"/> <Circle diameter = "1.00"/> </BadBoardMark> <GoodPanelMark> <Location x = "250.00" y = "213.00"/> <Donut shape = "ROUND" outerDiameter = "1.50" innerDiameter = "0.80"/> </GoodPanelMark> </Set> </LayerFeature> </Step> </pre>			

The following are examples of the step and repeat functions

The following are 6 Panelization use cases that the IPC-2580 series must consider in its output. The number in the dark green area refers to a Design (in the last example, there are 4 unique Designs placed within a Panel).

8.2.3.7.1 Single

A single Design is placed in a Panel.

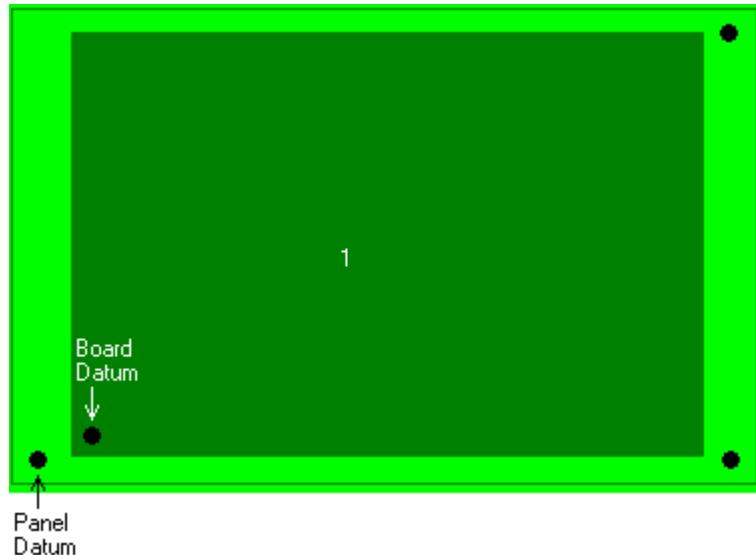


Figure 8 Single Design within a Panel

Requires one StepRepeat element that positions the design on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location.

8.2.3.7.2 Single Array

Step and repeat produces a matrix of steps. The size of the matrix is $nx+1$ in the x direction, and $ny+1$ in the y direction.

One Design is placed in the same orientation throughout the panel, based on a single row X column matrix.

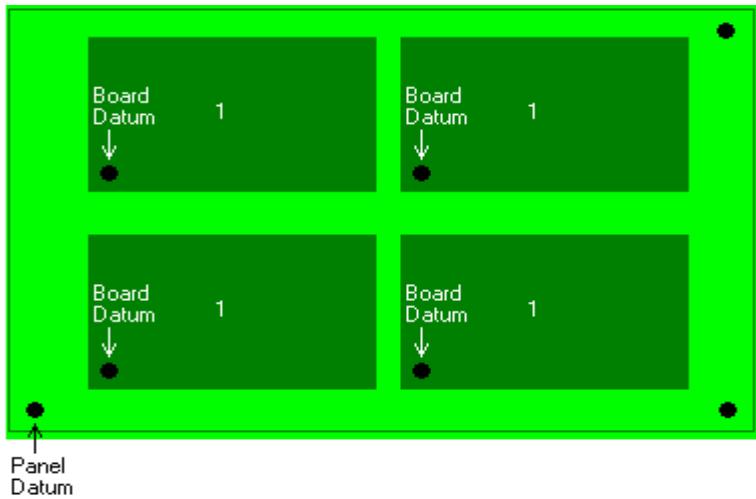


Figure 9 Design Arrayed based on one R x C matrix within a Panel

Requires one StepRepeat element that positions the design on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location. The design is stepped once in the X direction and once in the Y direction. (The upper right hand corner design is automatically created as part of the X-Y step and repeat matrix.)

8.2.3.7.3 Double Array

A single design, but arrayed in two distinct row X column matrices. This panelization method is to use the maximum area of the PCB fabricator's raw panel stock.

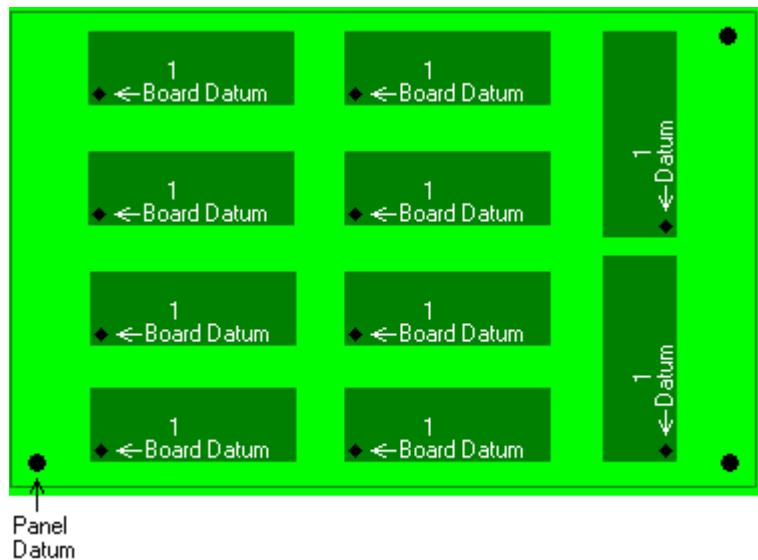


Figure 10 Design Arrayed based on two R x C matrices within a Panel

Requires two StepRepeat elements, one positions the design at the appropriate X-Y location. The design is then stepped once in the X direction and three times in the Y direction. The second Step Repeat element orients the design on a 90° angle. This new orientation is then positioned on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location, and stepped zero in the X direction and once in the Y direction.

8.2.3.7.4 Tiled

This example is to place a pair of single designs 180° out of phase with each other.

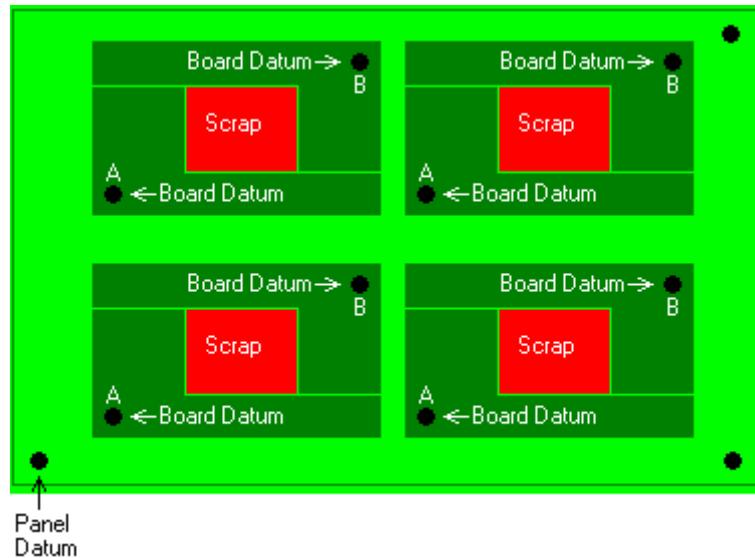


Figure 11 Design tiled as pairs within a Panel

Requires two StepRepeat elements, where one positions the design on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location. This design is then stepped once in the X direction and once in the Y direction. The second Step Repeat element rotates the design 180°, and then positions the new orientation on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location. This reoriented design is then stepped once in the X direction and once in the Y direction. An appropriate X-Y location may be in the lower left portion of the panel with a positive X-Y step or in the upper right corner of the panel with a negative X-Y step.

8.2.3.7.5 Flipped

“Flip” board pairing. This methodology is recent. The most important concern is that the board must be a symmetrical stackup, which means that the layer stackup must be verified to allow this type of panelization.

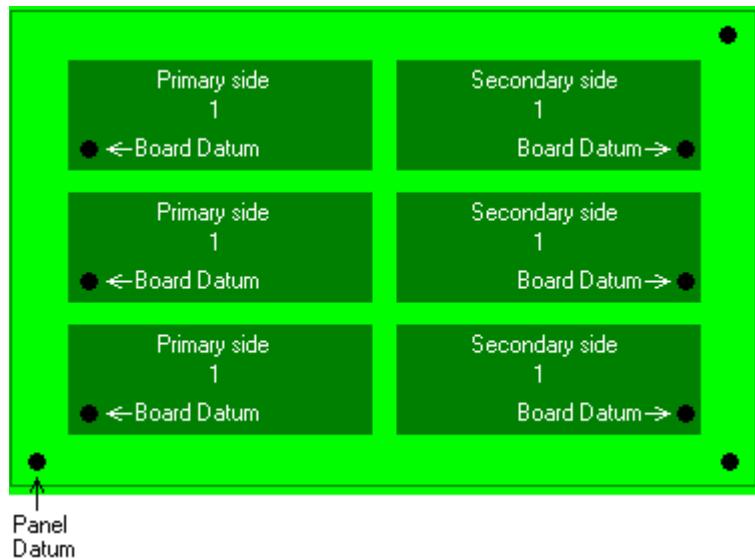


Figure 12 Design flipped as a pair within a Panel

Requires two StepRepeat elements, one positions the design on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location. The second Step Repeat element identifies the design as a mirrorImage, which is then positioned on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location. There is no StepRepeat description necessary as the designs are both uniquely positioned.

8.2.3.7.6 Multiple Designs

The most important consideration with placing multiple designs (each number represents a unique design) within one panel is that all designs need to have been created within the same layer stackup. The advantage is that an entire product can be assembled/tested all at once. The disadvantage is that if one board of the panel has a problem (either with part availability or performance), this can lead to several additional scheduling/building/etc. problems as well.

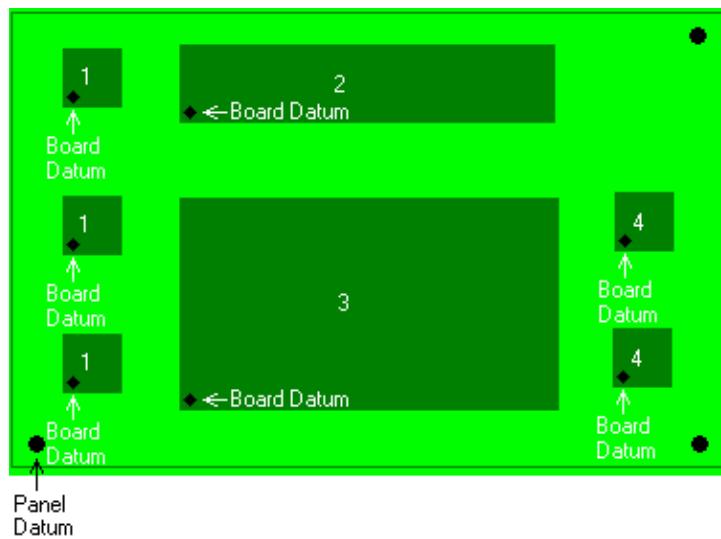


Figure 13 Multiple Designs placed within a Panel

The panel requires four StepRepeat elements. Design 1 is positioned on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location, and is then stepped zero times in the X direction and twice in the Y direction. Design 2 references a different Step and is positioned on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location. Design 3 references a different Step and is positioned on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location. Neither design 2 or 3 requires any stepRepeat information. The fourth Step Repeat element identifies design 4 is also a different Step which is positioned on the panel at the appropriate X-Y location, and stepped zero times in the X direction and once in the Y direction.

See Appendix B for an example of an XML instance file.

8.2.3.7.7 Tooling Step and Repeat

The Step and repeat function can also be used to duplicate features that are to become part of the board, panel, or pallet. Figure 14 shows a series of slots that need to be included in a set of layers of the stackup. They may be replicated on each sheet that must be matched within the stackup.

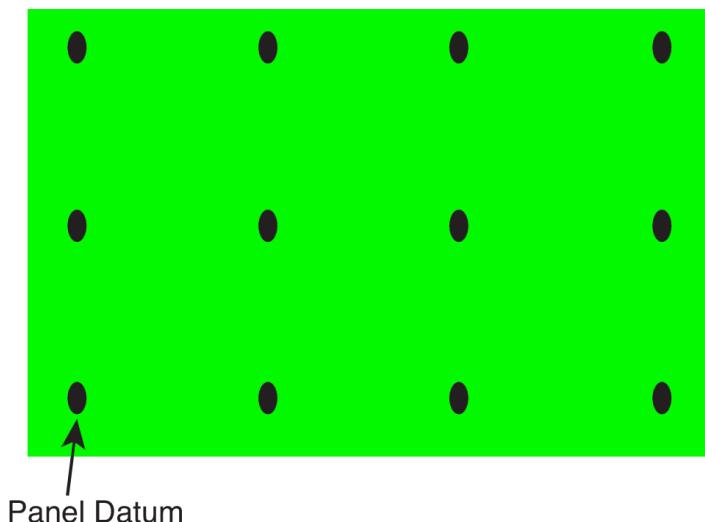
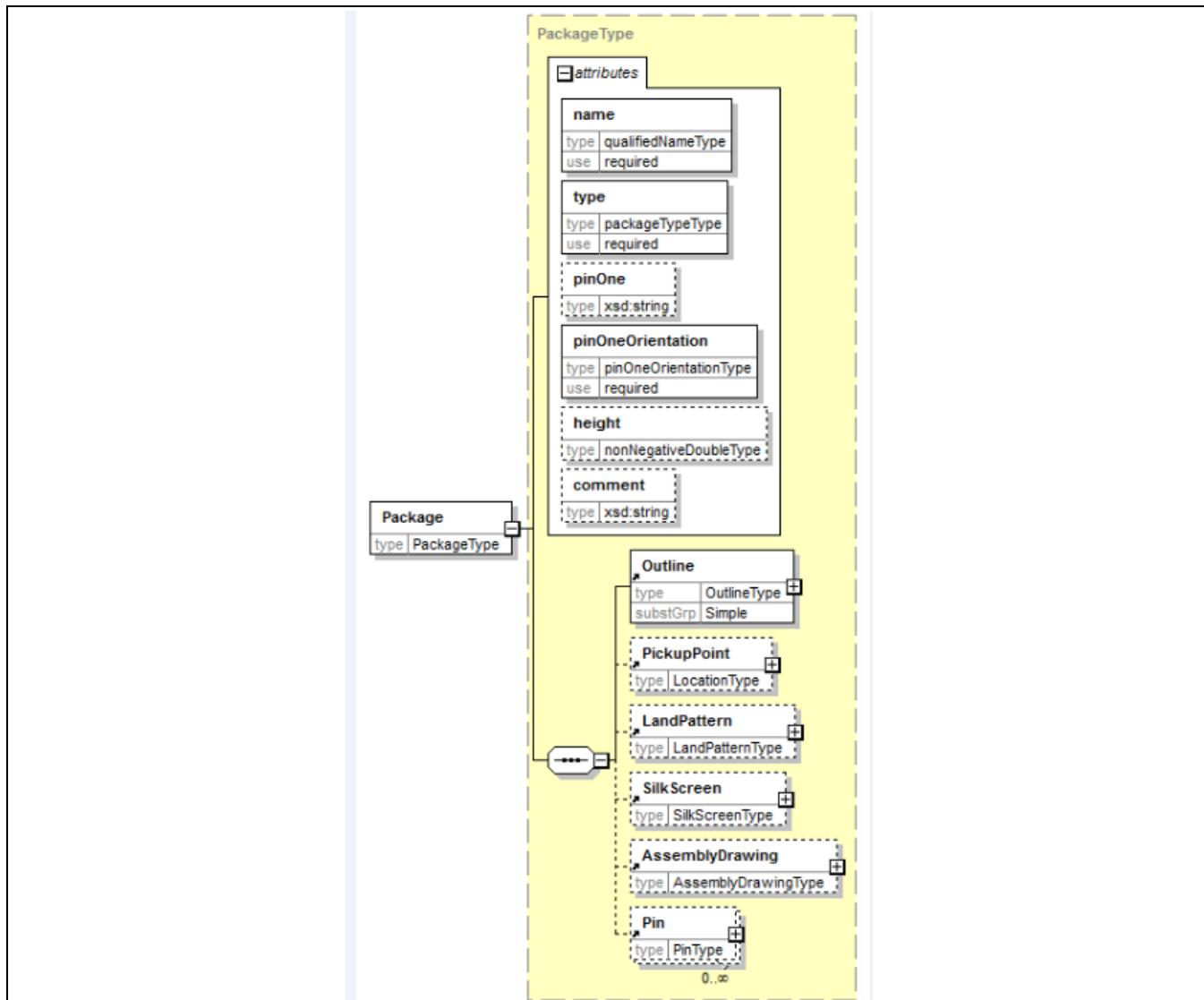


Figure 14 Multiple Slots provided for tooling within a Panel

Requires one StepRepeat element that positions the slot on the panel at the X-Y location that becomes the point of origin or Panel Datum. The Slot is stepped three times in the X direction and twice in the Y direction. The function may be accomplished as a step and repeat even if the features has a third dimension such as a depth of a cutout. The feature needs to be fully described as a single entity before it is repeated.

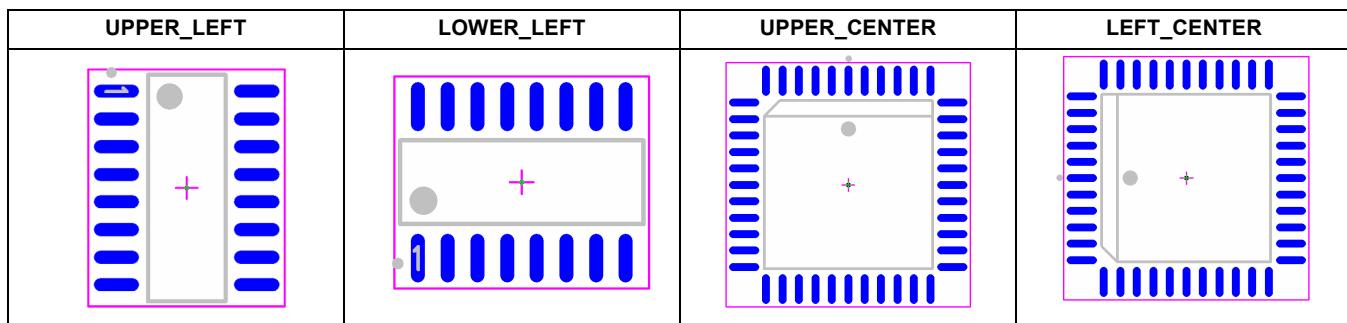
8.2.3.8 Package

The Package element descriptions define the package shape (Outline), library descriptions including land patterns, silk screen information, assembly drawing details, and pin identification. The Package element defines all the physical description of all the packages used by the Component element inside the Step. The names assigned to the package should be consistent with the naming convention established in IPC-7351 for parts and land pattern descriptions. (See Appendix A)



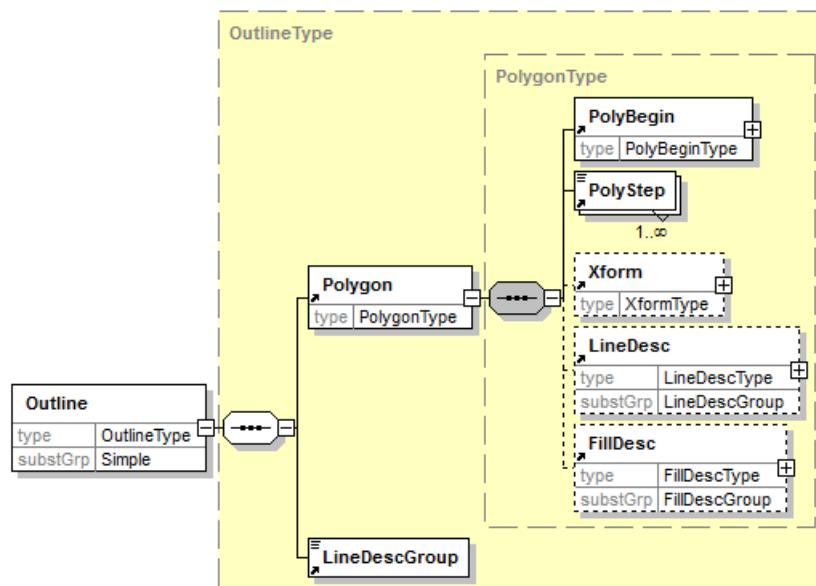
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Package	PackageType	Generic component package descriptions for use by the Step file schemas.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned to the physical and graphical description of a part in accordance with the IPC-7351 Naming Convention for Packages and Land Patterns.	1-1

type	PackageTypeType	A specific body construction indicated as an enumerated string using one of the following naming conventions: AXIAL_LEADED BARE_DIE CERAMIC_BGA CERAMIC_DIP CERAMIC_FLATPACK CERAMIC_QUAD_FLATPACK CERAMIC_SIP CHIP CHIP_SCALE CHOKE_SWITCH_SM COIL CONNECTOR_SM CONNECTOR_TH EMBEDDED FLIPCHIP HERMETIC_HYBRID LEADLESS_CERAMIC_CHIP_CARRIER MCM MELF FINEPITCH_BGA MOLDED NETWORK PGA PLASTIC_BGA PLASTIC_CHIP_CARRIER PLASTIC_DIP PLASTIC_SIP POWER_TRANSISTOR RADIAL_LEADED RECTANGULAR_QUAD_FLATPACK RELAY_SM RELAY_TH SOD123 SOIC SOJ SOPIC SOT143 SOT23 SOT52 SOT89 SQUARE_QUAD_FLATPACK SSOIC SWITCH_TH TANTALUM TO_TYPE_TRANSFORMER TRIMPOT_SM TRIMPOT_TH OTHER	1-1
pinOne	string	A reference to the landpattern PinRef pin number which is considered the first pin in the sequence of all pin numbers in the package. Examples are '1', 'A1', 'ANODE', '2' (when there is no pin '1')."	0-1
pinOneOrientation	pinOneOrientationType	An enumerated string that defines the location of pinOne relative to the centroid of the package, within the library definition of the package that is captured in the design. The enumerations are LOWER_LEFT UPPER_LEFT LEFT UPPER_CENTER LEFT_CENTER OTHER. If OTHER is used a comment is required to describe the condition. The intent is to describe the default orientation of the package (e.g. 'landscape' or 'portrait' for an IC), which could establish a relationship to a library definition standard such as IEC or IPC, or provide a zero degree rotation reference for assembly."	1-1
height	double	A description of the component height in terms of the mounting surface to the highest protrusion of the Package. The units are in the Units set by the Cadheader.	0-1
Comment	string	A description of the orientation of the Package as provided in the original CAD data	0-1
Outline	OutlineType	A nested element that defines the physical outline of the part as seen from the top, related to the graphical image that appears on the assembly. Includes body and pin profiles if applicable. The outline is an enclosed polygon type.	1-1
PickupPoint	LocationType	The optimum location for an automatic assembly machine to pickup the package. This may or may not be the centroid of the package outline"	0-1
x	double	The x coordinate of the location of the PickupPoint.	1-1
y	double	The y coordinate of the location of the PickupPoint.	1-1
LandPattern	LandPatternType	A nested element that defines the surface land pattern consisting of Lands in a particular pattern that matches the footprint of the component outline. The point of origin of the LandPattern and Outline are identical.	0-1
SilkScreen	SilkScreenType	A nested element that defines the symbolization and legend required to be placed on the board for the particular package. Includes location of the reference designator or other Text. The point of origin of the image is the same as the origin of the LandPattern and Outline.	0-1
AssemblyDrawing	AssemblyDrawingType	A nested element that defines the graphics required for the assembly drawing. The images relate to the component body outline and any text needed. The point of origin for the assembly drawing is the same as the images of the Outline, LandPattern, and SilkScreen schema.	0-1
Pin	PinType	A nested element that defines the pin relationship of all the pins that are a part of the package style related to the land pattern description.	0-n



8.2.3.8.1 Outline

A nested element that defines the physical outlines of the part related to the graphical image that appears on the assembly. The **Outline** includes the body of the part, the **Pin** element and the **Pin** element includes the **Pin** profiles. These are combined to describe the component.

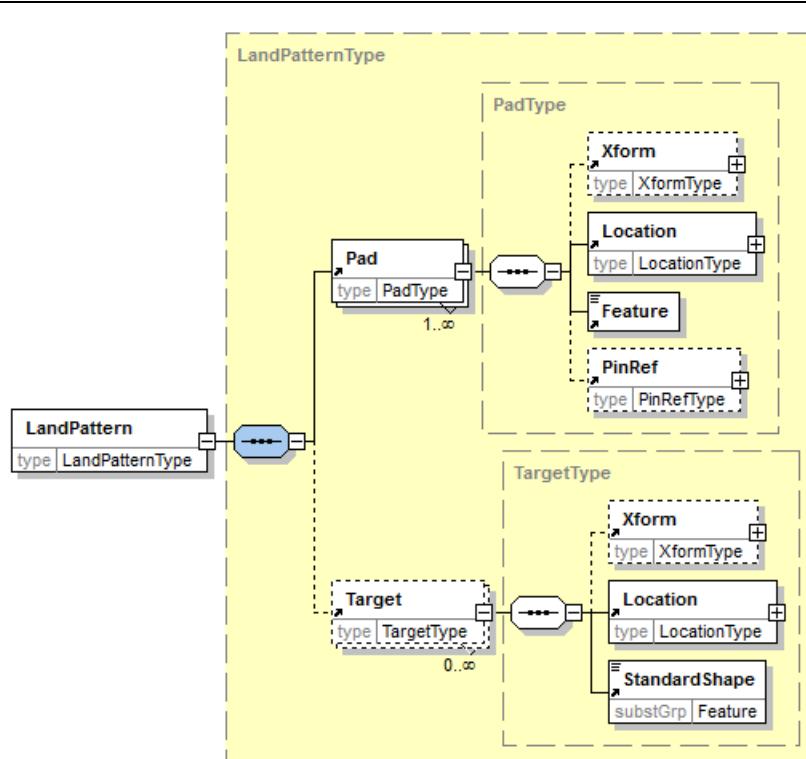


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Outline	OutlineType	A nested element that defines the physical outlines of the part viewed from the top, related to the graphical image that appears on the assembly. Includes the body only. Pin profiles are defined by the Pin element. The Outline is an enclosed polygon type.	1-1
Polygon	PolygonType	A closed shape whose edges do not cross, the coordinates of which are defined relative to the local coordinate system of the polygon.	1-1
PolyBegin	PolyBeginType	The PolyBegin element defines the starting point of the polygon.	1-1
x	double	The X starting point of the first polygon edge.	1-1
y	double	The Y starting point of the first polygon edge.	1-1
PolyStep	ABSTRACT	The PolyStep element is a substitution group that defines a circular (PolyStepCurve) or straight line (PolyStepSegment) continuation of the polygon. The polystep direction may be clockwise or counterclockwise which must be consistent when any Arc description is used as one of the PolyStep elements. Straight or curved line segments must not cross. The final X and final Y coordinate must match those of the PolyBegin element to signify that the shape is closed.	1-n

Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
LineDescGroup	LineDescGroup Type	A substitution group that specifies the LineDesc or LineDescRef. The LineDesc specifies the LineWidth, LineEnd and LineProperty characteristics of any feature that requires that definition. Line descriptions are a part of the Outline, Polyline and Set element definitions. The LineDescRef requires an "id" that must be unique within the 2581 file.	1-1

8.2.3.8.2 LandPattern

The LandPattern element consists of those characteristics that define the pattern to which surface mount components are attached. The embedded elements include both the Pad description and the potential for providing a target, usually indicating pinOne. Land pattern descriptions should be used wherever a relationship to component pins needs to be established. This information is redundant when layers for component attachment are defined.

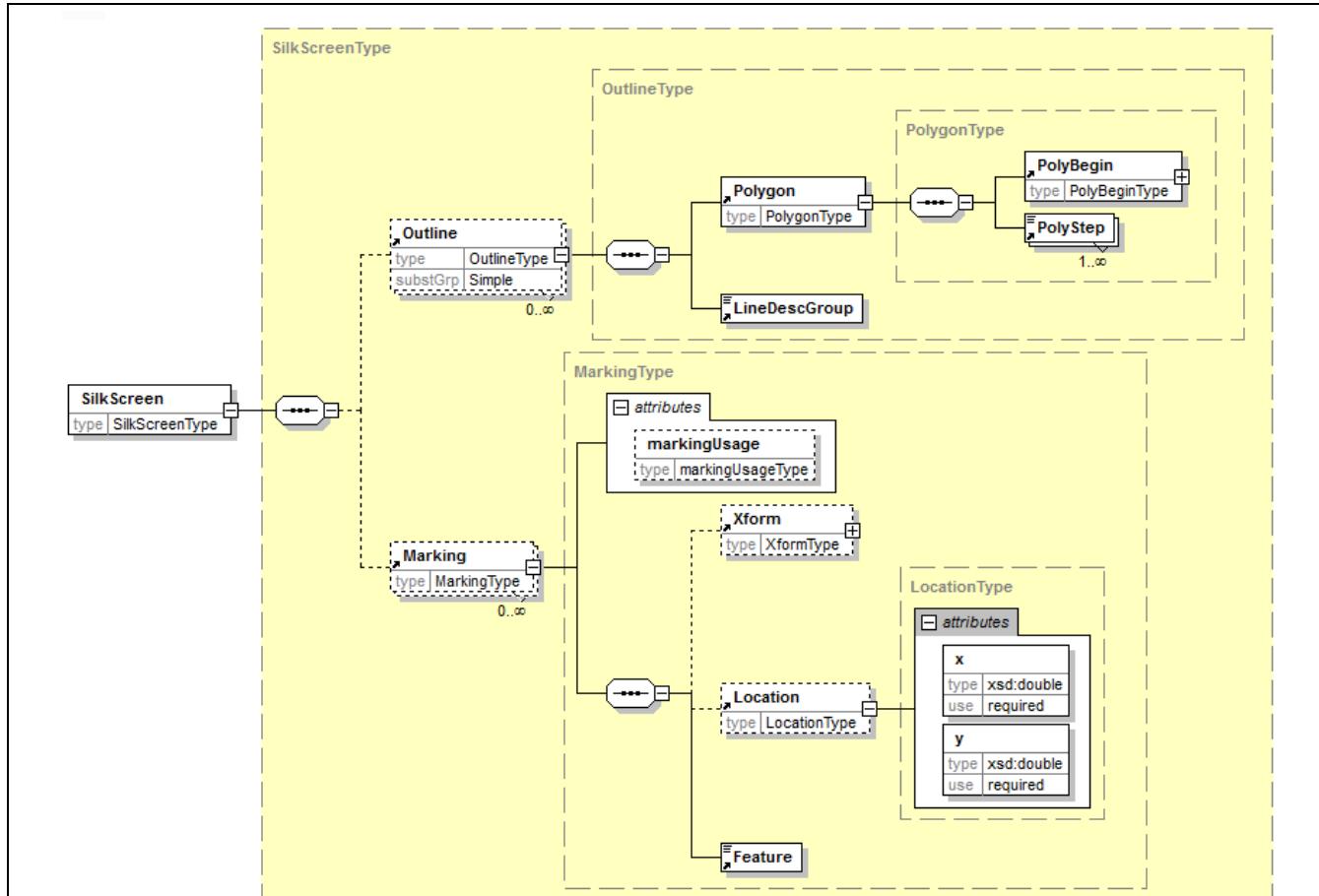


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
LandPattern	LandPatternType	A nested element that defines the surface land pattern consisting of Pads in a particular pattern that matches the footprint of the component.	0-1
Pad	PadType	A nested element defining the pad to be located as part of the land pattern.	1-n
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined pad that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. See 3.3	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the standard shape or Usershape or a pre-defined standard shape, or Usershape of the pad. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate of the location of the pad.	1-1
y	double	The y coordinate of the location of the pad.	1-1

Feature	ABSTRACT	An embedded element that defines a substitution group of any StandardShape or UserShape that may be instantiated as a part of the Pad Description. A predefined StandardShape or UserShape may also be instantiated by its unique "id" when the feature is contained in the DictionaryStandard or User. When a reference is made to the dictionary predefined primitive the Units must match.	1-1
PinRef	PinRefType	An individual Pin related to the place where a component attaches to the net. This description facilitates location of lands on the surface of the board or places where through-hole components are mounted.	1-n
Target	TargetType	A nested element defining the target to be located as part of the land pattern.	0-n
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined target that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. See 3.3	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the standard shape or a pre-defined standard shape of the target. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate of the location of the target.	1-1
y	double	The y coordinate of the location of the target.	1-1
StandardShape	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of any of the StandardPrimitive shapes in accordance with their individual descriptions. A predefined StandardPrimitive may also be instantiated by its unique "id" when the feature is contained in the DictionaryStandard. When a reference is made to the dictionary predefined primitive the Units must match.	1-1

8.2.3.8.3 SilkScreen

The `SilkScreen` element defines the symbolization and legend required to be placed on the board for the particular package. The `SilkScreen` descriptions include location of the reference designator or other `Text`. The point of origin of the image is the same as the origin of the `LandPattern` and `Outline`.

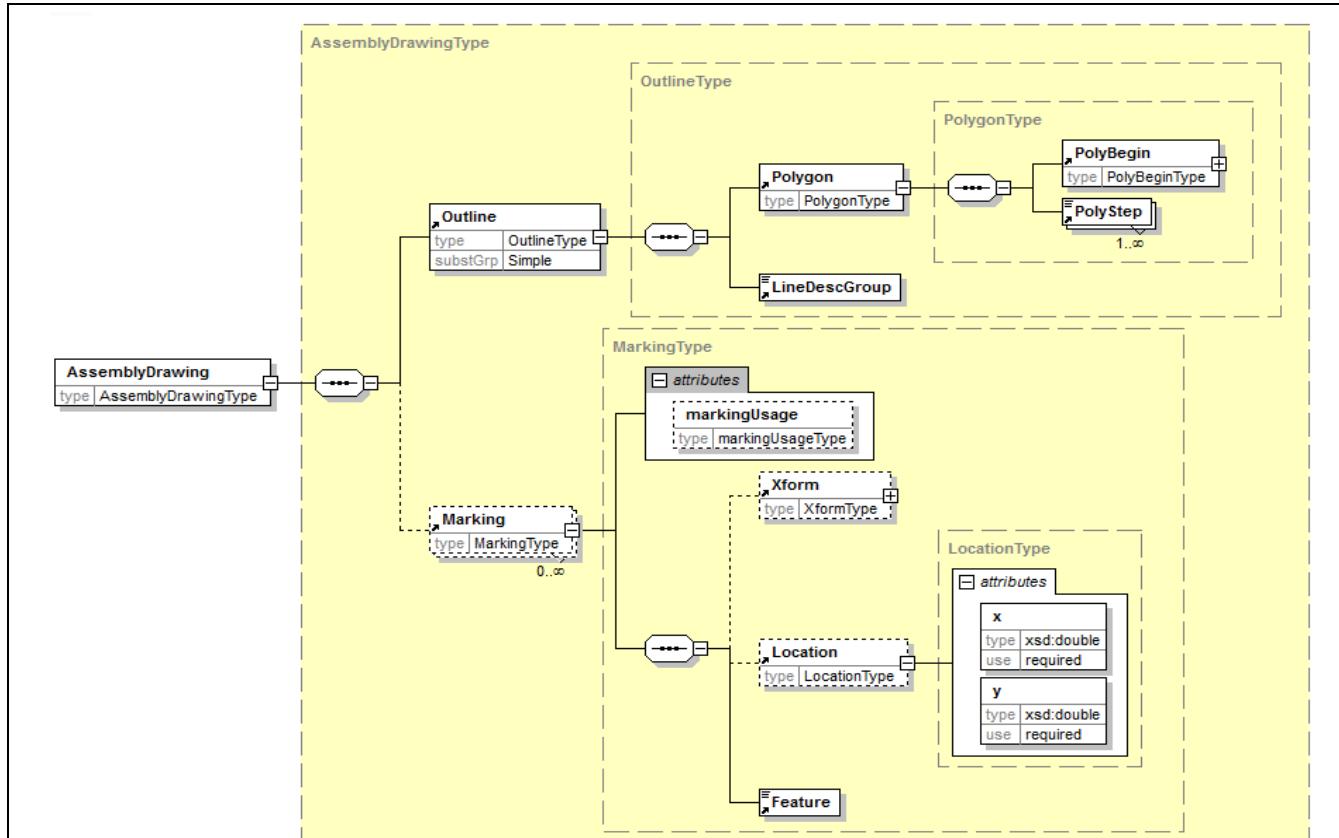


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
SilkScreen	SilkScreenType	A nested element that defines the symbolization and legend required to be placed on the board for the particular package. Includes location of the reference designator or other <code>Text</code> . The point of origin of the image is the same as the origin of the <code>LandPattern</code> and <code>Outline</code> .	0-1
Outline	OutlineType	A nested element that defines the outlines of the part related to the graphical image that appears on the board. The outline is an enclosed polygon type.	0-n
Polygon	PolygonType	A closed shape whose edges do not cross, the coordinates of which are defined relative to the local coordinate system of the polygon.	1-1
PolyBegin	PolyBeginType	The <code>PolyBegin</code> element defines the starting point of the polygon.	1-1
PolyStep	ABSTRACT	The <code>PolyStep</code> element is a substitution group that defines a circular (<code>PolyStepCurve</code>) or straight line (<code>PolyStepSegment</code>) continuation of the polygon. The <code>polystep</code> direction may be clockwise or counterclockwise which must be consistent when any <code>Arc</code> description is used as one of the <code>PolyStep</code> elements. Straight or curved line segments must not cross. The final X and final Y coordinate must match those of the <code>PolyBegin</code> element to signify that the shape is closed.	1-n

LineDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that specifies the <code>LineWidth</code> and <code>LineEnd</code> characteristics of the <code>Outline</code> . The <code>LineDesc</code> may also have been predefined in the <code>DictionaryLineDesc</code> and instantiated from the dictionary.	1-1
Marking	markingType	A nested element that defines the characteristics of the feature being instantiated as a part of the <code>SilkScreen</code>	0-n
markingUsage	markingUsageType	An indication as to the usage of any marking that becomes a part of the <code>SilkScreen</code> . The descriptions are enumerated strings and must be one of the following: <code>REFDES</code> <code>PARTNAME</code> <code>TARGET</code> <code>POLARITY_MARKING</code> <code>ATTRIBUTE_GRAPHICS</code> <code>PIN_ONE</code> <code>NONE</code>	1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of the marking, then scale, mirror image or rotate the marking feature after it has been placed at an X and Y location.	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the feature or a pre-defined feature. The image may have been reorientated by the <code>Xform</code> .	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate of the location of the feature.	1-1
y	double	The y coordinate of the location of the feature.	1-1
Feature	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of any of the <code>StandardShape</code> , <code>StandardPrimitive</code> , or <code>UserPrimitive</code> shape in accordance with their individual descriptions. A predefined <code>StandardPrimitive</code> , or <code>UserPrimitive</code> may also be instantiated by its unique "id" when the feature is contained in the <code>DictionaryStandard</code> or <code>DictionaryUser</code> . When a reference is made to either of the dictionaries the predefined primitive Units must match with the Units of the file.	0-n

8.2.3.8.4 AssemblyDrawing

The `AssemblyDrawing` element reuses the same embedded elements and attributes as defined for the Silkscreen characteristics. The construction schemas are repeated to aid the reader in interpretation of the library structure.

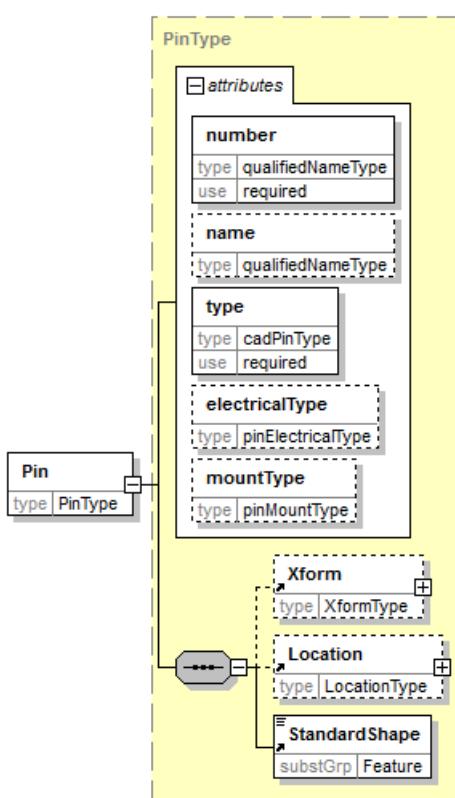


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
AssemblyDrawing	AssemblyDrawingType	A nested element that defines the graphics required for the assembly drawing. The images relate to the component body outline and any text needed. The point of origin for the assembly drawing is the same as the images of the outline, land pattern, and silk screen schema.	0-1
Outline	OutlineType	A nested element that defines the outlines of the part related to the graphical image that appears on the board. The <code>Outline</code> is an enclosed polygon type.	0-1
Polygon	PolygonType	A closed shape whose edges do not cross, the coordinates of which are defined relative to the local coordinate system of the polygon	1-1
PolyBegin	PolyBeginType	The <code>PolyBegin</code> element defines the starting point of the polygon.	1-1
PolyStep	ABSTRACT	The <code>PolyStep</code> element is a substitution group that defines a circular (<code>PolyStepCurve</code>) or straight line (<code>PolyStepSegment</code>) continuation of the polygon. The <code>polystep</code> direction may be clockwise or counterclockwise which must be consistent when any <code>Arc</code> description is used as one of the <code>PolyStep</code> elements. Straight or curved line segments must not cross. The final X and final Y coordinate must match those of the <code>PolyBegin</code> element to signify that the shape is closed.	1-n
LineDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that specifies the <code>LineWidth</code> and <code>LineEnd</code> characteristics of the <code>Outline</code> . The <code>LineDesc</code> may also have been predefined in the <code>DictionaryLineDesc</code> and instantiated from the dictionary.	1-1

Marking	markingType	A nested element that defines the characteristics of the feature being instantiated as a part of the AssemblyDrawing	0-n
markingUsage	markingUsageType	An indication as to the usage of any marking that becomes a part of the AssemblyDrawing. The descriptions are enumerated strings and must be one of the following: REFDES PARTNAME TARGET POLARITY_MARKING ATTRIBUTE_GRAPHICS PIN_ONE NONE.	1-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of the marking, then scale, mirror image or rotate the marking feature after it has been placed at an X and Y location.	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the feature or a pre-defined feature. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate of the location of the target.	1-1
y	double	The y coordinate of the location of the target.	1-1
Feature	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of any of the StandardShape, StandardPrimitive, or UserPrimitive shape in accordance with their individual descriptions. A predefined StandardPrimitive, or UserPrimitive may also be instantiated by its unique "id" when the feature is contained in the DictionaryStandard or DictionaryUser. When a reference is made to either of the dictionaries the predefined primitive Units must match with the Units of the file.	0-n

8.2.3.8.5 Pin

The Pin element represents a set of Pin characteristics that are attached to each component package. Each Pin has a number, name, type, electricalType and mountType. Each Pin also contains its relative location and outline.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Pin	PinType	A nested element that defines the pin relationship of all the pins that are a part of the package style related to the land pattern description.	0-n
number	qualifiedNameType	An alphanumeric indicator identified as the pin number which is unique within the package description and is established by the netlist	1-1
name	qualifiedNameType	A name assigned by the user to describe the Pin at a particular location. The same name may be applied to multiple pins at the users discretion	0-1
type	cadPinType	An enumerated string that defines the type of Pin as being one of the following: THRU BLIND SURFACE.	1-1
electricalType	pinElectricalType	The electrical type enumerated string that defines the Pin as one of three possible conditions. These are: ELECTRICAL MECHANICAL UNDEFINED.	0-1
mountType	pinMountType	An enumerated string that defines the mounting characteristics of the Pins and may be any one of the following: SURFACE_MOUNT_PIN SURFACE_MOUNT_PAD THROUGH_HOLE_PIN THROUGH_HOLE_HOLE PRESSFIT NONBOARD HOLE UNDEFINED	0-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of the graphic outline pin shape, then scale, mirror image or rotate the shape it has been placed at an X and Y location. See 3.3	0-1

Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the pin shape or a pre-defined standard shape of the Pin relative to the component origin. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform. The location is optional element allow the Pin section to be populated when the geometry and location of the pin is not known, but it is required to include the (per) Pin attributes <i>type</i> , <i>electricalType</i> , and <i>mountType</i> for Assembly purposes.	0-1
x	double	The x location of the Pin defined by its centroid.	1-1
y	double	The y location of the Pin defined by its centroid.	1-1
StandardShape	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits the substitution of any of the StandardPrimitive shapes in accordance with their individual descriptions. A predefined StandardPrimitive may also be instantiated by its unique "id" when the feature is contained in the DictionaryStandard. When a reference is made to the dictionary predefined primitive the <i>Units</i> must match. The intent of the standard shape is to represent the contact area or "footprint" of the Pin, as conducted to its corresponding land pattern.	1-1

8.2.3.9 Component

The Component section contains all the Component elements that were read from the originating CAD system and were captured in the Component element descriptions.

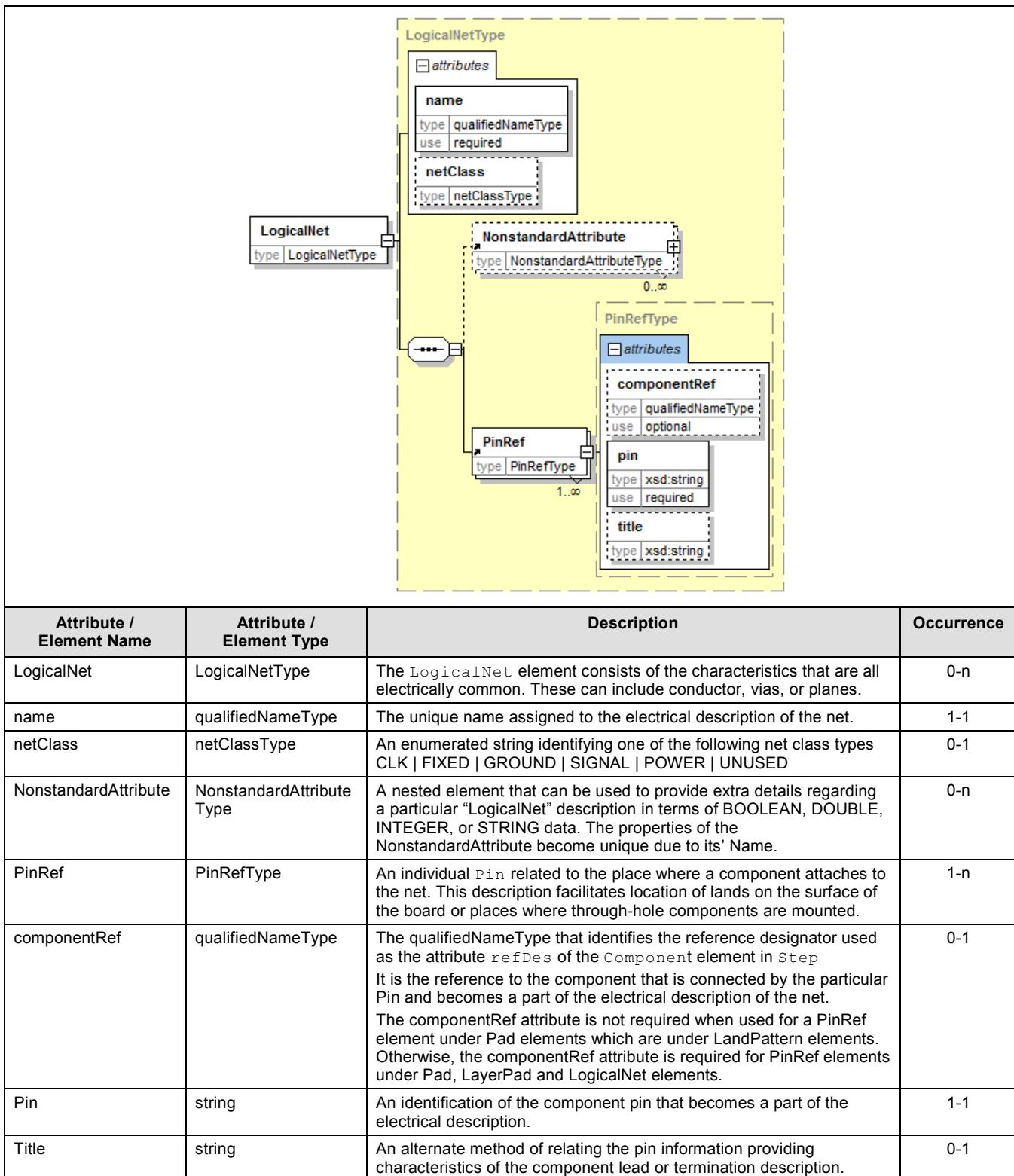
Component	ComponentType	A nested element list of component descriptions and their application to the electronic product.	0-n
refDes	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned to the particular component.	1-1
packageRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to the package Type used to house the component.	1-1

part	string	A part description of the part or its electrical/mechanical characteristics.	1-1
layerRef	qualifiedNameType	The reference to a specific layer element, by its "name" attribute. The layer referenced is where the component or component image should be located. The reference is usually a surface layer, however it may be an internal layer for embedded component attachment. The layer Function Type shall be of the Board usage only.	1-1
mountType	mountType	The mount type as defined by an enumerated string which may be one of the following: SMT THMT OTHER. This attribute can be used to modify the <code>Package</code> description i.e., a through-hole mount modified to be surface mounted.	1-1
weight	nonNegativeDouble Type	The weight of the particular component in grams.	0-1
height	nonNegativeDouble Type	The height that the top protrusion of the component body is above the surface of the printed board in units assigned in the <code>CadHeader</code> .	0-1
standoff	nonNegativeDouble Type	The standoff clearance between the body and the printed board in units assigned in the <code>CadHeader</code> .	0-1
NonstandardAttribute	NonstandardAttribute Type	A nested element that can be used to provide extra details regarding a particular "component" description in terms of BOOLEAN, DOUBLE, INTEGER, or STRING data. The properties of the NonstandardAttribute become unique due to its' Name.	0-n
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined area that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. The image may also be located by the Xform. See 3.3.	1-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the component defined by the <code>packageRef</code> or a pre-defined standard shape of the <code>Package</code> . The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate upon which a features' point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a component is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	1-1
y	double	The x coordinate upon which a features' point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a component is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	1-1

8.2.3.10 LogicalNet

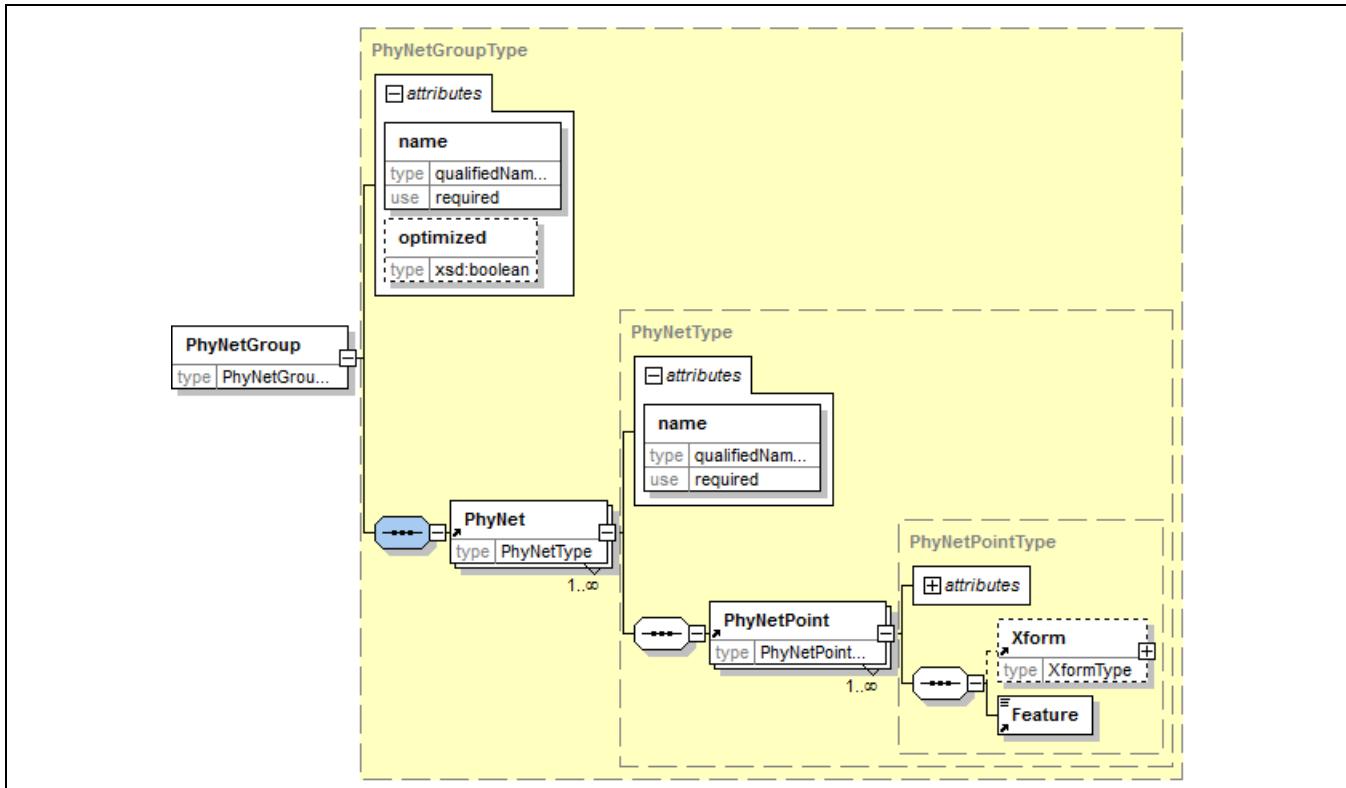
The `LogicalNet` section is a list of `LogicalNet` elements, each with a name and a group of component/pin location(s). It enables the labeling of each pin with the net to which it belongs. The `PhyNetGroupList` is another representation of a netlist, using physical board locations instead of logical pins.

`LogicalNet` elements read from the CAD system in the form of component pins connectivity. Each `LogicalNet` contains the net name and a set of `LogicalNetPin`. Each `LogicalNetPin` points to a pin on a component.



8.2.3.11 PhyNetGroup

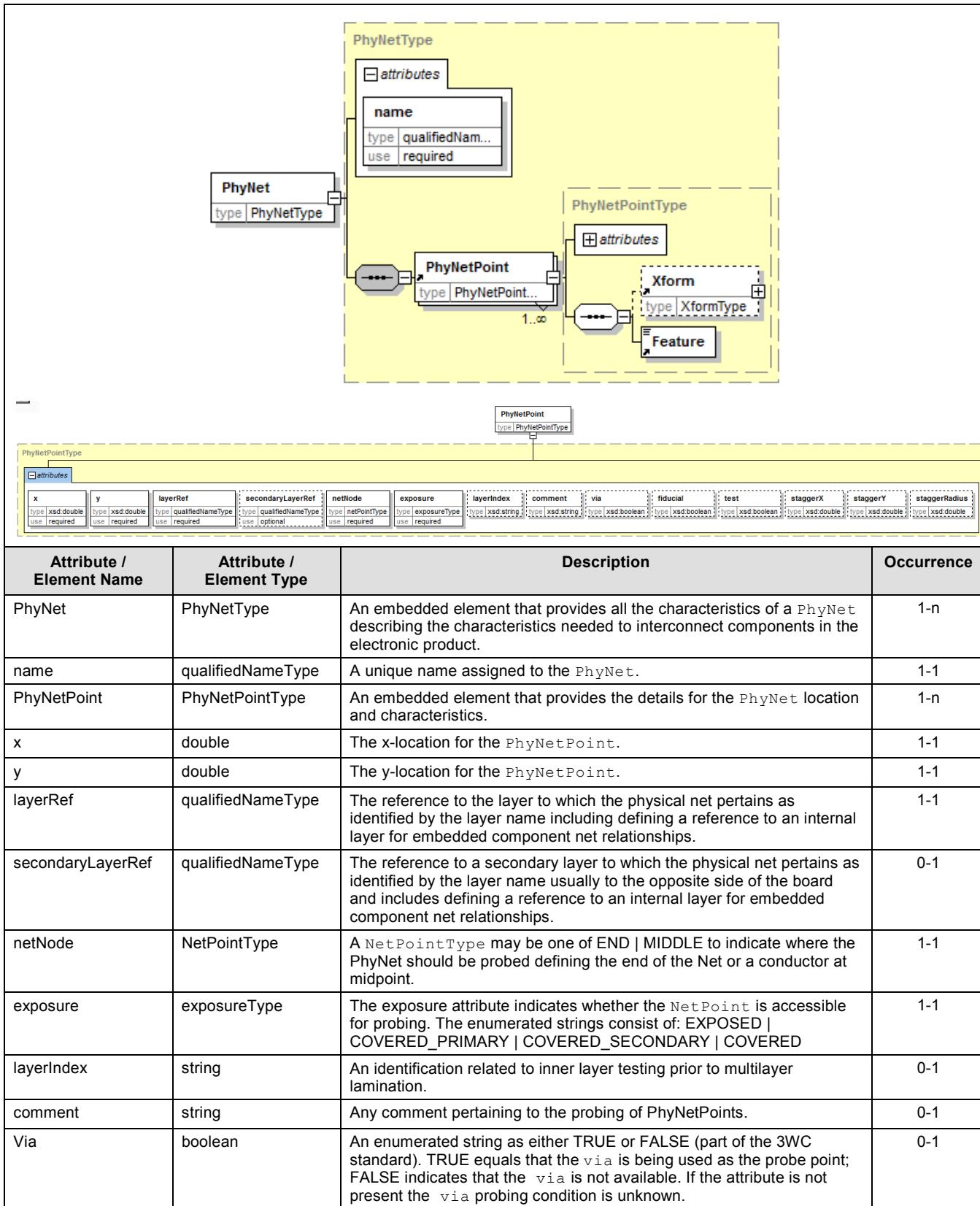
The `PhyNetGroup` element consists of various physical electrical connections. The group of nets may be combined from individual layers and submitted to a netlist analyzer or read from netlist files. Each `PhyNetGroup`, contains a set of one to many physical nets (`PhyNets`).



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
PhyNetGroup	PhyNetGroupType	A group of various physical nets combined in specific format and named accordingly.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned to the <code>PhyNetGroup</code> .	1-1
optimized	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the <code>PhyNetGroup</code> has been optimized by combining all <code>PhyNets</code> into a convenient description under the <code>PhyNetGroup</code> element; FALSE indicates that the <code>PhyNetGroup</code> has not been optimized. If the attribute is not present the optimization condition is unknown.	1-1
PhyNet	PhyNetType	An embedded element that provides all the characteristics of a <code>PhyNet</code> describing the characteristics needed to interconnect components in the electronic product.	1-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned to a specific <code>PhyNet</code> .	1-1
PhyNetPoint	PhyNetPointType	An embedded element that provides the details for the <code>PhyNet</code> location and characteristics.	1-n

8.2.3.11.1 PhyNet

The `PhyNet` element consists of one to many points that are essentially the nodes for the physical description of all the conductive elements that become a part of the `Net` on a particular surface of the board. The `PhyNetPoint` is only available on either top or bottom or both and, may also pertain to the concepts used for embedded passive or active component pin description.



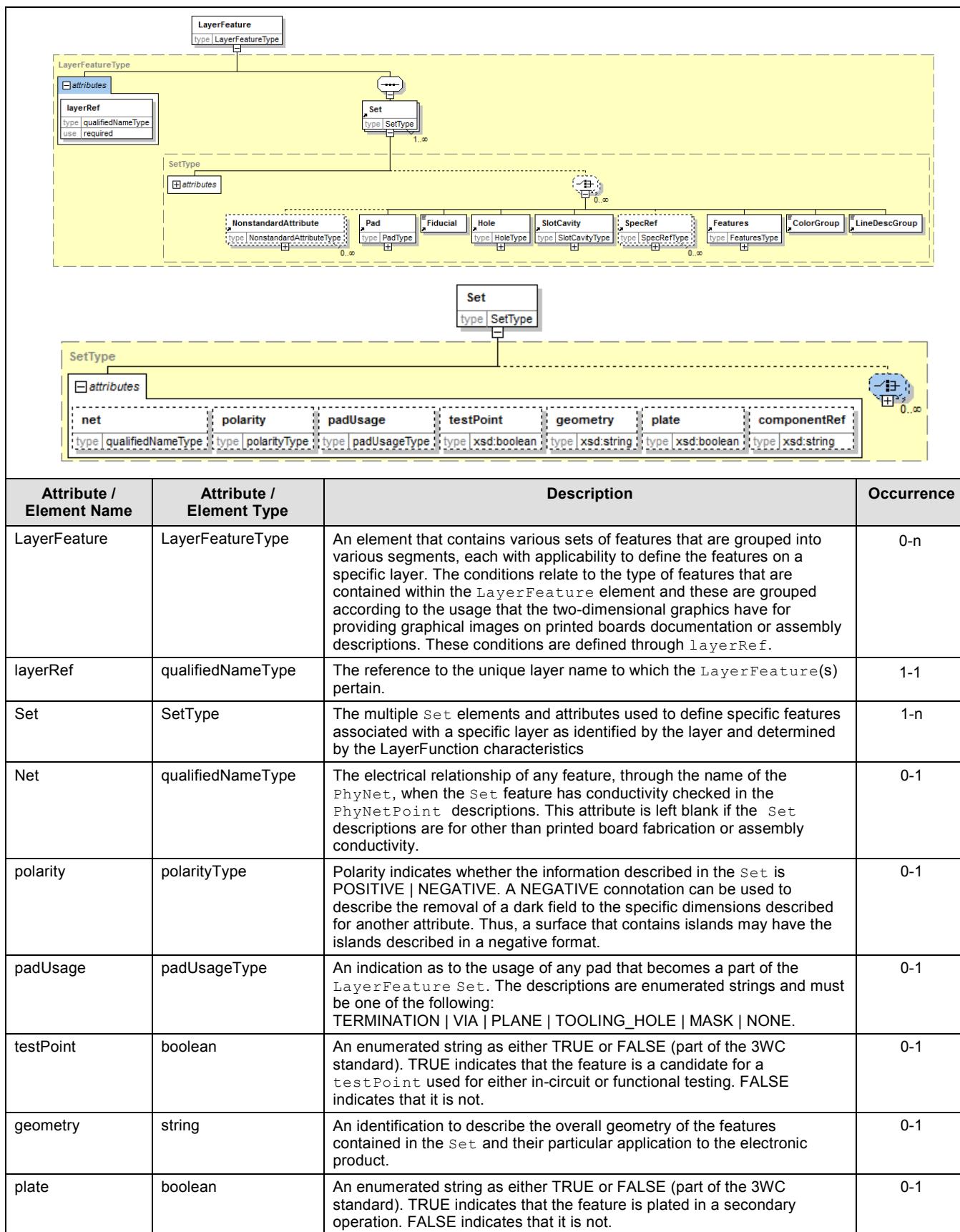
fiducial	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the <code>fiducial</code> is being used as the probe point; FALSE indicates that the <code>fiducial</code> is not available. If the attribute is not present the <code>fiducial</code> probing condition is unknown	0-1
test	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the <code>PhyNetPoint</code> is part of the test sequence allowing for full nodal access, partial nodal access, or functional testing; FALSE indicates that the <code>PhyNetPoint</code> is not part of the test sequence. If the attribute is not present the test condition is unknown.	0-1
staggerX	double	An X dimension that differs from the original X of the <code>PhyNetPoint</code> to indicate a probing location that varies from that specific point.	0-1
staggerY	double	A y-dimension that differs from the original x of the <code>PhyNetPoint</code> to indicate a probing location that varies from that specific point.	0-1
staggerRadius	double	A numerical value that indicates a radius taken from the original x-y point description in the direction of an open conductor that may be probed at its center.	0-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined feature that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated.	0-1
Feature	ABSTRACT	An embedded element that defines a substitution group of any <code>StandardShape</code> or <code>UserShape</code> that may be instantiated as a part of the <code>pad</code> description. A predefined <code>StandardShape</code> or <code>UserShape</code> may also be instantiated by its unique "id" when the feature is contained in the <code>DictionaryStandard</code> or <code>User</code> . When a reference is made to the dictionary predefined primitive the <code>Units</code> must match.	1-1

8.2.3.12 LayerFeature

The `LayerFeature` element contains all the physical features located on all layers. These features reference `StandardPrimitive` or `UserPrimitive` under the substitution group identification of `StandardShape` or `UserShape`. All shapes may be identified through a reference to predefined primitives contained in `DictionaryStandard` or `DictionaryUser`. Shapes may also be instantiated in the file by substitution of the `Feature` element with the shape name. All characteristics of any shape must be present when the substitution takes place.

An individual `LayerFeature` can be thought of as artwork and these two-dimensional descriptions become the main body of the `Step` data. The information is contained in `LayerFeature` elements and includes several different elements, each corresponding to a layer defined earlier in the `Layer` element.

The `Set` element defines modal attributes (attributes are in effect for all subsequent graphics contained in the set until changed). The only one important characteristic for the set graphic is the `polarity` attribute that can be POSITIVE (draw) or NEGATIVE (erase). The existence of negative features is the reason for the importance of the order.

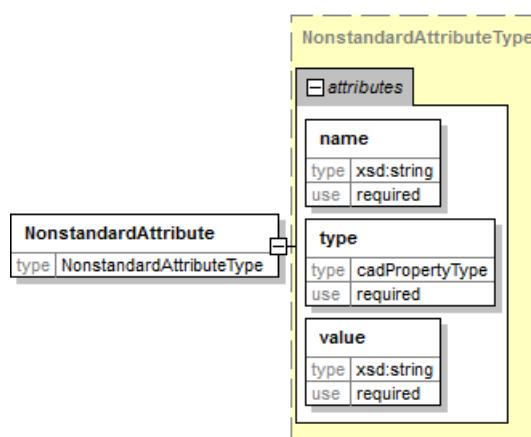


componentRef	qualifiedName	The qualifiedNameType that identifies the reference designator used as the attribute <code>refDes</code> of the <code>Component</code> element in <code>Step</code> . It is the reference to the component that is connected by the particular Pad and becomes a part of the electrical description of the net.	0-1
Nonstandard Attribute	NonstandardAttribute Type	A nested element that can be used to provide extra details regarding a particular “LayerFeature Set” description in terms of BOOLEAN, DOUBLE, INTEGER, or STRING data. The properties of the NonstandardAttribute become unique due to its’ Name.	0-n
Pad	PadType	A series of pads that are associated with the <code>LayerFeature Set</code> .	0-n
Fiducial	ABSTRACT	A substitution that consists of three elements that may be used to replace the <code>Fiducial</code> element. When the <code>Fiducial</code> element is substituted it shall be by a GlobalFiducial, GoodPanelMark, LocalFiducial or BadBoardMark .	0-n
Hole	HoleType	A series of holes associated with the <code>LayerFeature Set</code> .	0-n
SlotCavity	SlotCavityType	A series of slots or cavities associated with the <code>LayerFeature Set</code> .	0-n
SpecRef	SpecRefType	The identification of a particular specification(s) from the SpecificationType that is able to provide additional details or instructions that apply to the Hole, SlotCavity or Features of the Set descriptions.. The linkage is provided through the specific “specificationId” (spec Name)	0-n
Features	FeaturesType	An embedded element that defines a substitution group of any predefined <code>StandardShape</code> or <code>UserShape</code> that may be instantiated as a part of the <code>LayerFeature Set</code> .	0-n
ColorGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that permits assigning a particular color through instantiating the three basic colors or by providing a reference to a predefined <code>Color</code> in <code>DictionaryColor</code> .	0-n
LineDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that specifies the <code>LineWidth</code> and <code>LineEnd</code> characteristics of a <code>Feature</code> that requires that description. If a predefined feature is instantiated the presents of a <code>LineDescGroup</code> will override the previously defined <code>LineDesc</code> .	0-n

```
<Step name = "KarensFabricationPanel">
  <Datum x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/>
  <Profile>
    <Polygon>
      <PolyBegin x = "-305.00" y = "-230.00"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-305.00" y = "230.00"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "305.00" y = "230.00"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "305.00" y = "-230.00"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-305.00" y = "-230.00"/>
    </Polygon>
  </Profile>
  <LayerFeature layerRef = "KarensMultilayer">
    <Set>
      SlotCavity name = "Tooling Slots" platingStatus = "NONPLATED" plusTol = "0.02" minusTol = "0.00">
    <Outline>
      <Polygon>
        <PolyBegin x = "1.59" y = "209.29"/>
        <PolyStepSegment x = "1.59" y = "210.71"/>
        <PolyStepCurve x = "-1.59" y = "210.71" centerX = "0.00" centerY = "210.71"/>
        <PolyStepSegment x = "-1.59" y = "209.29"/>
        <PolyStepCurve x = "1.59" y = "209.29" centerX = "0.00" centerY = "209.29"/>
      </Outline>
      <Outline>
        <Polygon>
          <PolyBegin x = "1.59" y = "-209.29"/>
          <PolyStepSegment x = "1.59" y = "-210.71"/>
          <PolyStepCurve x = "-1.59" y = "-210.71" centerX = "0.00" centerY = "-210.71" clockwise = "TRUE"/>
          <PolyStepSegment x = "-1.59" y = "-209.29"/>
          <PolyStepCurve x = "1.59" y = "-209.29" centerX = "0.00" centerY = "-209.29" clockwise = "TRUE"/>
        </Polygon>
      </Outline>
      <Outline>
        <Polygon>
          <PolyBegin x = "289.29" y = "1.59"/>
          <PolyStepSegment x = "290.71" y = "1.59"/>
          <PolyStepCurve x = "290.71" y = "-1.59" centerX = "290.71" centerY = "0.00" clockwise = "TRUE"/>
          <PolyStepSegment x = "289.29" y = "-1.59"/>
          <PolyStepCurve x = "289.29" y = "1.59" centerX = "289.29" centerY = "0.00" clockwise = "TRUE"/>
        </Polygon>
      </Outline>
      <Outline>
        <Polygon>
          <PolyBegin x = "-289.29" y = "1.59"/>
          <PolyStepSegment x = "-290.71" y = "1.59"/>
          <PolyStepCurve x = "-290.71" y = "-1.59" centerX = "-290.71" centerY = "0.00"/>
          <PolyStepSegment x = "-1.59" y = "-289.29"/>
          <PolyStepCurve x = "-289.29" y = "1.59" centerX = "-289.29" centerY = "0.00"/>
        </Polygon>
      </Outline>
    </Slot>
    <LineDesc lineEnd = "NONE" lineWidth = "0.00"/>
  </Set>
  </LayerFeature>
```

8.2.3.12.1 NonstandardAttribute

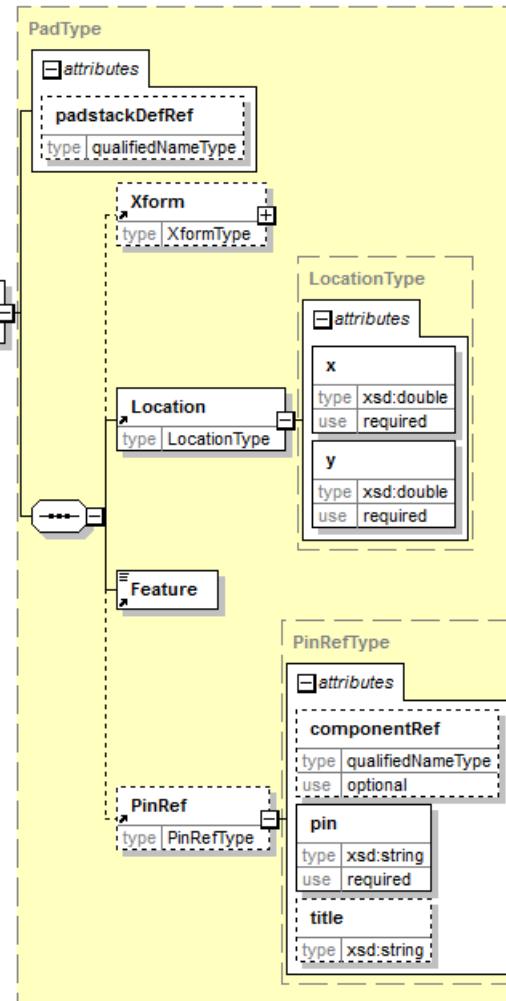
The NonstandardAttribute element consists of various conditions that may be used in association with the Set element. The NonstandardAttribute element has several attributes which include a name, type and value thus making each NonstandardAttribute unique. The type attribute is a cadPropertyType and identifies the “value” attribute as being BOOLEAN, DOUBLE, INTEGER or STRING data



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
NonstandardAttribute	NonstandardAttribute Type	A nested element that can be used to provide extra details regarding a particular “Set” description in terms of BOOLEAN, DOUBLE, INTEGER, or STRING data. The properties of the NonstandardAttribute become unique due to its’ Name.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned by the user to the NonstandardAttribute. The name must be unique and should match the purpose of the actions to be taken.	1-1
type	cadPropertyType	A set of enumerated string descriptions that identify the condition of the value requirement. They consist of BOOLEAN DOUBLE INTEGER or STRING data.	1-1
value	string	The detail requirements as they pertain to the particular Step description and interpreted according to the type enumeration that is part of the particular NonstandardAttribute.	1-1

8.2.3.12.2 Pad

The Pad element represents an individual pad. Pads are features with a center (x, y), a standard primitive shape or User defined shape either pre-defined in the DictionaryStandard, or DictionaryUser instanced at the time the Set is defined. The Pad may be changed through the Xform element (located, rotated, mirrored or scaled). Rotation is any number of degrees, although 90° multiples is the usual angle; positive rotation is always counter-clockwise as viewed from the board TOP (primary side). When mirror is set to MIRROR it indicates that all x dimensions are set to a-x value. For scaling the Pad, all x and y dimensions of a geometry are multiplied by the scale attribute. The scale factor does not apply to angular values. The Pad may have an appropriate pin attribute.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Pad	PadType	A series of pads associated with the LayerFeature Set.	0-n
padstackDefRef	qualifiedName	A reference to the name of the padstackDef element that provides the characteristics of individual padstacks in the design, as established by the CAD system, and provides the link to the layer distribution of the padstack's individual characteristics.	0-1
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined area that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. The image may also be located by the Xform . See 3.3.	0-1
xOffset	double	The xOffset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	0-1
yOffset	double	The yOffset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	0-1
rotation	nonNegativeDouble Type	Defines the rotation of a shape about the local origin in degrees. Positive rotation is always counter-clockwise as viewed from the board TOP (primary side). Degree accuracy is expressed as a two place decimal i.e., 45.15; 62.34	0-1
mirror	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the image is mirrored; FALSE indicates that it is not.	0-1

scale	scaleType	An attribute that defines a “double” dimension whose minExclusiveValue=0.0 representing the multiplication factor of all x and y dimensions. The scale factor does not apply to angular values.	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the standard shape or Usershape or a pre-defined standard shape, or Usershape of the pad. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate upon which a features' point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a component is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	1-1
y	double	The x coordinate upon which a features' point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a component is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	1-1
Feature	ABSTRACT	An embedded element that defines a substitution group of any StandardShape or UserShape that may be instantiated as a part of the pad description. A predefined StandardShape or UserShape may also be instantiated by its unique “id” when the feature is contained in the DictionaryStandard or User. When a reference is made to the dictionary predefined primitive the Units must match.	1-1
PinRef	PinRefType	An individual Pin related to the place where a component attaches to the net. This description facilitates location of lands on the surface of the board or places where through-hole components are mounted.	1-n
componentRef	qualifiedNameType	The qualifiedNameType that identifies the reference designator used as the attribute refDes of the Component element in Step. It is the reference to the component that is connected by the particular Pin and becomes a part of the electrical description of the net. The componentRef attribute is not required when used for a PinRef element under Pad elements which are under LandPattern elements. Otherwise, the componentRef attribute is required for PinRef elements under Pad, LayerPad and LogicalNet elements.	0-1
Pin	string	An identification of the component pin that becomes a part of the electrical description.	1-1
Title	string	An alternate method of relating the pin information providing characteristics of the component lead or termination description.	0-1

8.2.3.12.3 Fiducial

A specific set of fiducials used by the board fabricator to distinguish between those boards, in a panel, that passed inspection or electrical test, and those that did not pass.

Fiducial		BadBoardMark	GlobalFiducial	GoodPanelMark	LocalFiducial	
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description				Occurrence
BadBoardMark	FiducialType	A specific set of fiducials used by the board fabricator to distinguish between those boards, in a panel, that passed inspection or electrical test, and those that did not pass. The Fiducial is positioned near each board in the assembly panel array.				0-n
GlobalFiducial	FiducialType	An individual Set of fiducials used in the description and arrangement of features on a board, assembly, or panel. This symbol is also used as a good board mark				0-n

GoodPanelMark	FiducialType	A single Standard Shape used to define a panel where all boards on the panel are good. The fiducial is positioned once on the panel and enables reduction in inspection time.	0-n
LocalFiducial	FiducialType	An individual Set of fiducials used in the description and arrangement of features on a board, assembly, or panel which represent component location positioning.	0-n

❖ BadBoardMark

The `BadBoardMark` element provides a list of images intended to represent a symbol known as a fiducial which works with equipment vision systems to identify whether the board in the array is good or not. The determination is usually made by the board fabricator and he covers the fiducial (`BadBoardMark`) to indicate that the board should not be assembled with components.

These images are usually described in the form of a `StandardShape` and may appear on any `Layer` as a `LayerFeature`. The `BadBoardMark` may also be identified as a separate `Set`, thus arranging all of the `BadBoardMark` elements that identify good and bad boards on an assembly array, or manufacturing panel.

If treated individually, `BadBoardMark` elements may appear multiple times within the `LayerFeature` Set.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
BadBoardMark	FiducialType	An individual set of fiducials used as an aid to the board fabricator to be used to define those boards in a panel that did not pass inspection or electrical test. The <code>Fiducial</code> is positioned near each board in the assembly panel array.	0-n
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined area that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. The image may also be located by the <code>Xform</code> . See 3.3.	0-1
xOffset	double	The x offset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	0-1
yOffset	double	The y offset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	0-1
rotation	nonNegativeDouble Type	Defines the rotation of a shape about the local origin in degrees. Positive rotation is always counter-clockwise as viewed from the board TOP (primary side). Degree accuracy is expressed as a two place decimal i.e., 45.15; 62.34	0-1
mirror	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the image is mirrored; FALSE indicates that it is not.	0-1

scale	scaleType	An attribute that defines a “double” dimension whose minExclusiveValue=0.0 representing the multiplication factor of all x and y dimensions. The scale factor does not apply to angular values.	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the standard shape or a pre-defined standard shape of the fiducial. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate upon which a features’ point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a fiducial is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	1-1
y	double	The x coordinate upon which a features’ point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a fiducial is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	1-1
StandardShape	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that may call for any StandardPrimitive, instantiated by describing their unique features or by referencing a predefined primitive contained in the DictionaryStandard.	1-1

❖ GlobalFiducial

The `GlobalFiducial` element provides a list of images intended to represent a symbol known as a fiducial which works with assembly equipment vision systems to improve the positioning of the board or panel. These images are described in the form of a `StandardShape` and may appear on any `Layer` as a `LayerFeature`. The `GlobalFiducial` may also be identified as a separate `Set`, thus arranging all of the fiducials that position boards, assemblies, and assembly arrays in a panel format are considered in one `LayerFeature` Set.

If treated individually, `GlobalFiducial` may appear multiple times within the `LayerFeature` Set.

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
GlobalFiducial	FiducialType	An individual set of fiducials used in the description and arrangement of features on a board, assembly, or panel.	0-n
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined area that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. The image may also be located by the Xform. See 3.3.	0-1
xOffset	double	The X offset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	0-1
yOffset	double	The Y offset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	0-1

rotation	nonNegativeDouble Type	Defines the rotation of a shape about the local origin in degrees. Positive rotation is always counter-clockwise as viewed from the board TOP (primary side). Degree accuracy is expressed as a two place decimal i.e., 45.15; 62.34	0-1
mirror	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the image is mirrored; FALSE indicates that it is not.	0-1
scale	scaleType	An attribute that defines a “double” dimension whose minExclusiveValue=0.0 representing the multiplication factor of all x and y dimensions. The scale factor does not apply to angular values.	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the standard shape or a pre-defined standard shape of the fiducial. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate upon which a features' point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a fiducial is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	1-1
y	double	The x coordinate upon which a features' point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a fiducial is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	1-1
StandardShape	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that may call for any StandardPrimitive, instantiated by describing their unique features or by referencing a predefined primitive contained in the DictionaryStandard.	1-1

❖ GoodPanelMark

The GoodPanelMark element provides a single image intended to represent a symbol known as a fiducial which works with equipment vision systems to identify that all the boards in an array are good. The determination is usually made by the board fabricator. He makes sure that the GoodPanelMark fiducial is clearly visible to avoid having to check to see if there are any bad boards.

These images are usually described in the form of a StandardShape and may appear on any Layer as a LayerFeature.

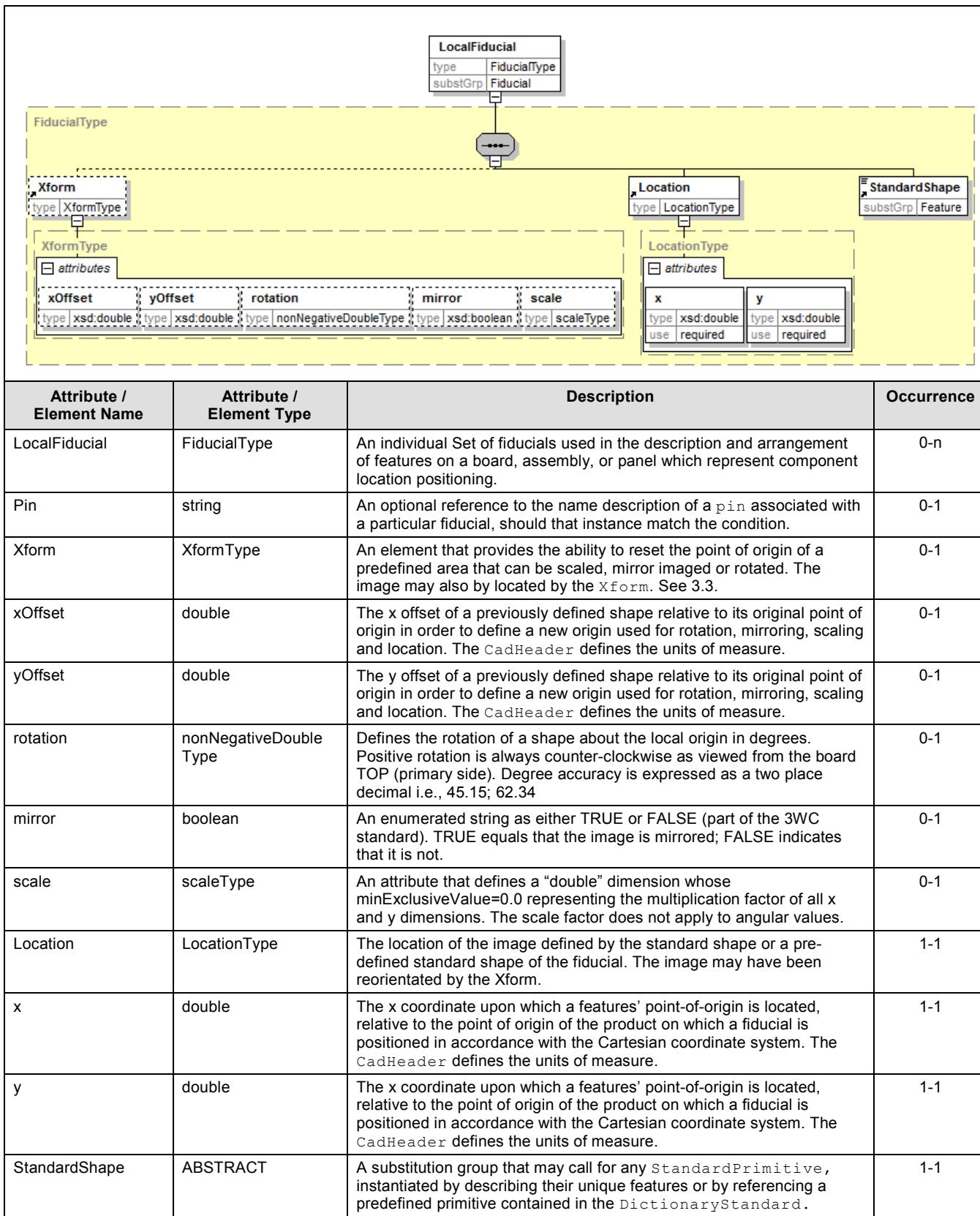
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
GoodPanelMark	FiducialType	An individual fiducial or set of fiducials used in the description of features on a panel that identifies that all properties within the panel periphery meet the appropriate performance specification.	0-n
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined area that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. The image may also be located by the Xform. See 3.3.	0-1

xOffset	double	The X offset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	0-1
yOffset	double	The Y offset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	0-1
rotation	nonNegativeDouble Type	Defines the rotation of a shape about the local origin in degrees. Positive rotation is always counter-clockwise as viewed from the board TOP (primary side). Degree accuracy is expressed as a two place decimal i.e., 45.15; 62.34	0-1
mirror	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the image is mirrored; FALSE indicates that it is not.	0-1
scale	scaleType	An attribute that defines a “double” dimension whose <code>minExclusiveValue=0.0</code> representing the multiplication factor of all x and y dimensions. The scale factor does not apply to angular values.	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the standard shape or a pre-defined standard shape of the fiducial. The image may have been reorientated by the <code>Xform</code> .	1-1
x	double	The x coordinate upon which a features' point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a fiducial is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	1-1
y	double	The x coordinate upon which a features' point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a fiducial is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	1-1
StandardShape	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that may call for any <code>StandardPrimitive</code> , instantiated by describing their unique features or by referencing a predefined primitive contained in the <code>DictionaryStandard</code> .	1-1

❖ LocalFiducial

The `LocalFiducial` element provides a list of images intended to represent a symbol known as a fiducial which works with specific components that require the additional precision of assembly equipment vision systems to improve the positioning of the component during the assembly operation. These images are usually described in the form of a `StandardShape` and may appear on any `Layer` as a `LayerFeature`. The `LocalFiducial` may also be identified as a separate `Set`, thus arranging all of the fiducials that position components or other specific features on a board, assembly array, or manufacturing panel.

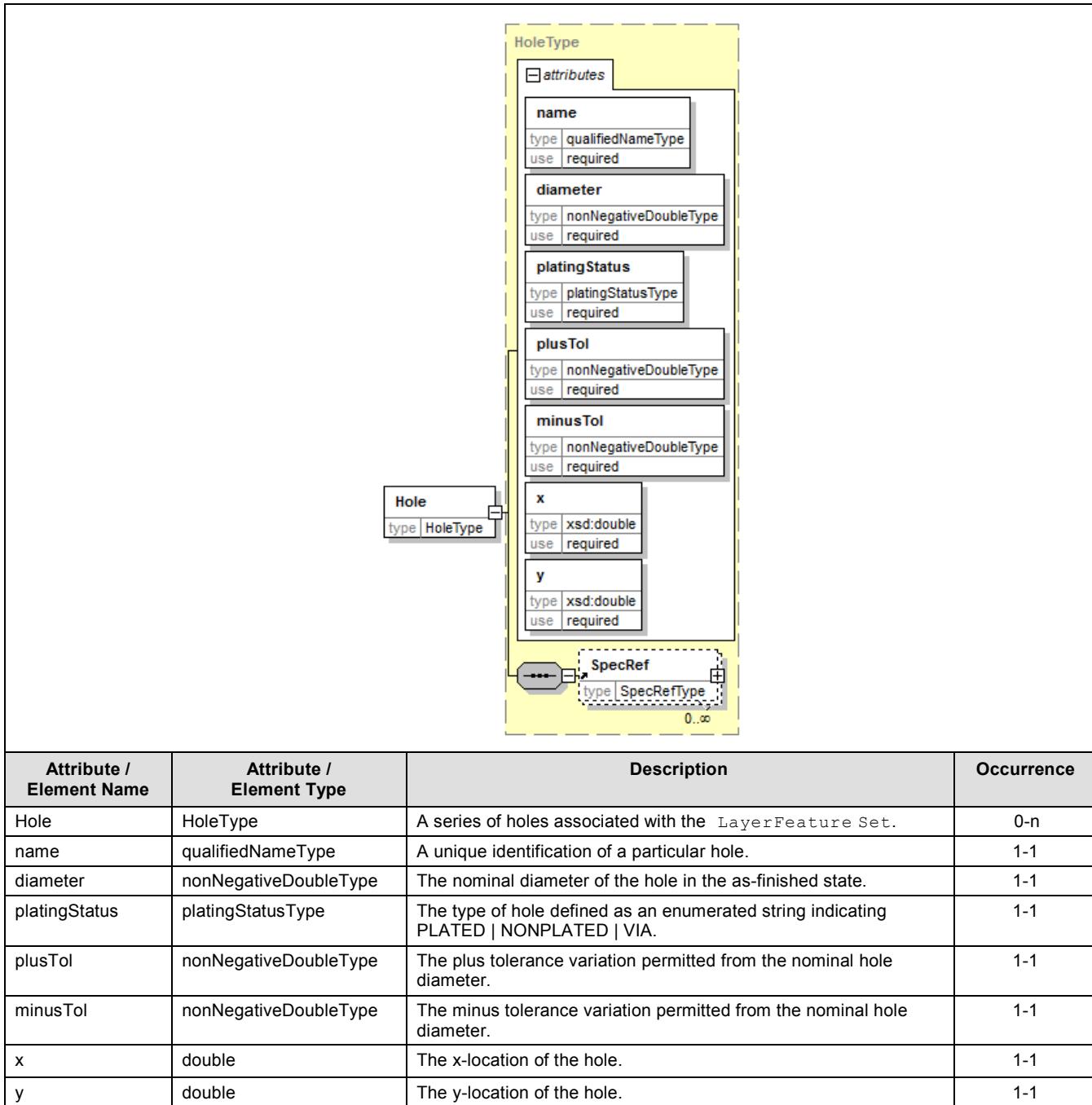
If treated individually, the `LocalFiducial` may appear multiple times within the `LayerFeature` `Set`.



8.2.3.12.4 Hole

The **Hole** element describes the characteristics of a particular hole, including naming the hole description with a unique name that may be reused. The main purpose of including hole in the Set means that specific information can be described as all the particular holes in one set of data. In this instance, the **layerRef** of **LayerFeature** is to the **Layer/Stackup** element which describes the **overallThickness** for those holes that go entirely through the board. For those holes that are buried or blind vias, the appropriate **Stackup** reference **shall** be used as a part of the **layerRef** of the **LayerFeature** descriptions of holes. This concept permits a replacement of the **Drill** file that usually accompanies a data transfer transaction.

The **Hole** element can occur multiple times within the **LayerFeature** element.



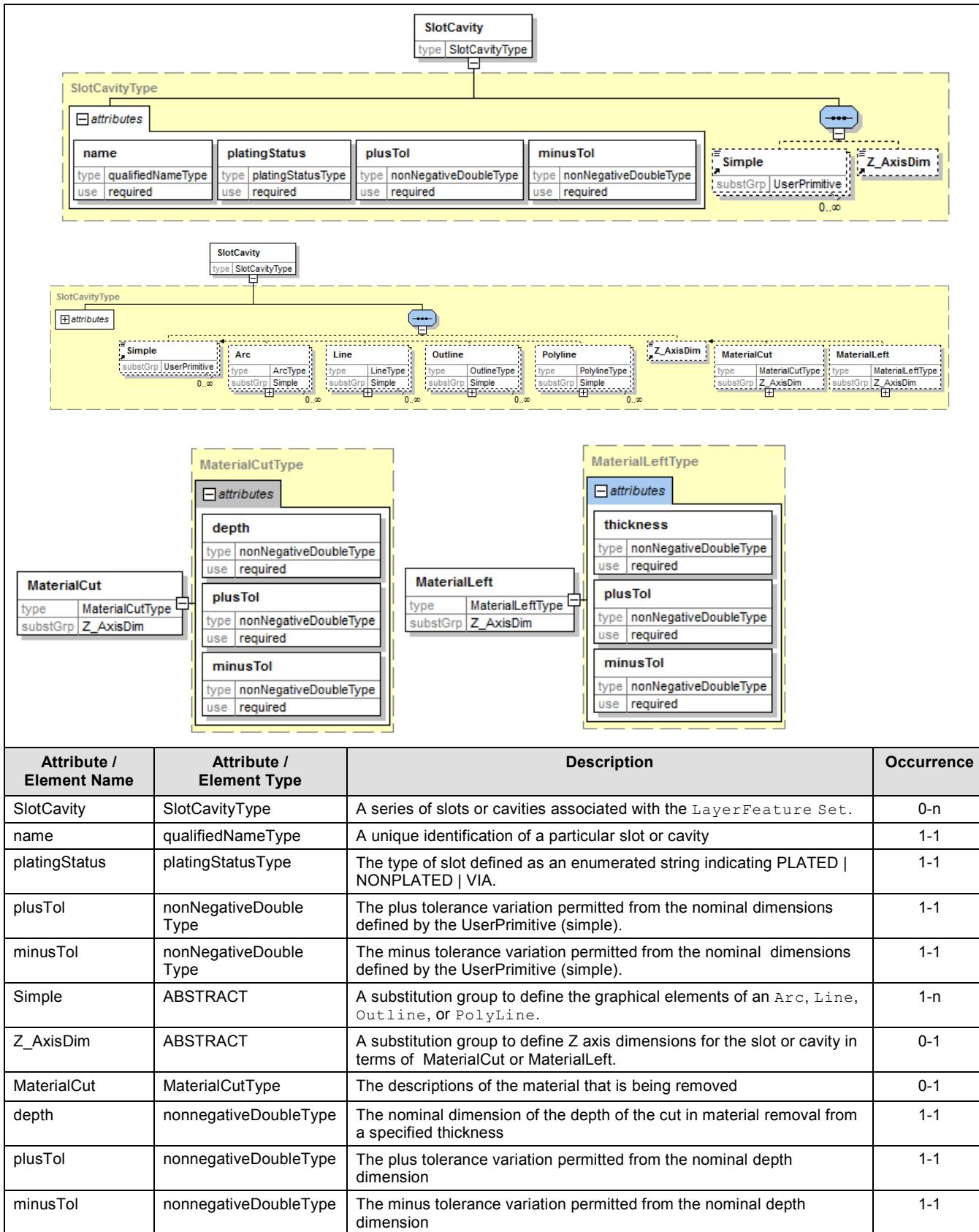
SpecRef	SpecRefType	The identification of a particular specification(s) from the SpecificationType that is able to provide additional details or instructions that apply to the board or assembly descriptions of the Layer. The linkage is provided through the specific specificationId (spec Name). An example would be the BackdrillType START_LAYER MUST_NOT_CUT_LAYER MAX_STUB_LENGTH OTHER. Other specifications may also be attached if appropriate.	0-n
<pre> <Spec name="BD_1B"> <Backdrill type="START_LAYER" > <Property layerOrGroupRef="BOTTOM"/> </Backdrill> <Backdrill type="MUST_NOT_CUT_LAYER" > <Property layerOrGroupRef="IL4"/> </Backdrill> <Backdrill type="MAX_STUB_LENGTH" > <Property Value="0.008" unit="INCH"/> </Backdrill> </Spec> <Spec name="BD_1A"> <Backdrill type="START_LAYER" > <Property layerOrGroupRef="TOP"/> </Backdrill> <Backdrill type="MUST_NOT_CUT_LAYER"> <Property layerOrGroupRef="IL-3"/> </Backdrill> <Backdrill type="MAX_STUB_LENGTH" > <Property Value="0.008" unit="INCH"/> </Backdrill> </Spec> <Set> <Hole name="H122" diameter="0.017000" platingStatus="VIA" plusTol="0.001000" minusTol="0.001000" x="3.125000" y="5.025000"> <SpecRef Id ="BD_1A"/> <SpecRef Id ="BD_1B"/> </Hole> </Set> </pre>			

8.2.3.12.5 SlotCavity

The SlotCavity element describes the characteristics of a particular slot or cavity, including naming the slot/cavity description with a unique name that may be reused. The main purpose of including slot and or cavities in the Set means that specific information can be described for all the particular slots or cavities in one set of data.

The layerRef of LayerFeature is to the appropriate layers that contain the slot and cavity descriptions. A Layer name may also be assigned to the total board through the Layer Span function; this can describe the overallThickness for those slots that go entirely through the board. For those slots that are partially cut into the board the term cavity is usually used and, the appropriate Stackup reference **shall** be used as a part of the layerRef of the LayerFeature descriptions of SlotCavity.

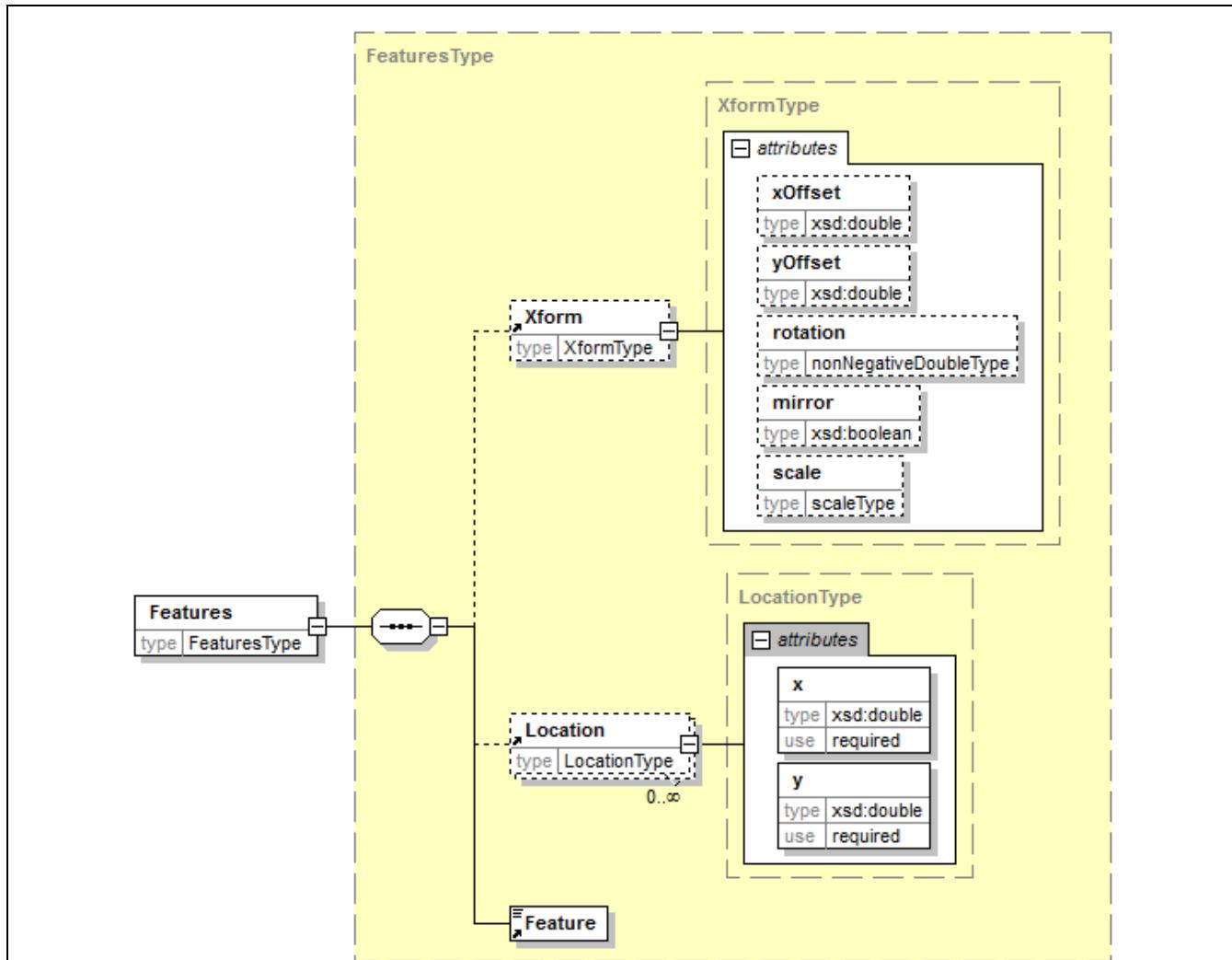
The SlotCavity element can occur multiple times within the LayerFeature element. The graphical elements of Line, Polyline, Arc, and Polygon are used as substitution groups under the Simple primitive descriptions and are used to describe the characteristics of any particular SlotCavity. There may be zero to many occurrences of these graphics.



MaterialLeft	MaterialLeftType	The description of the material that is to remain from a specified thickness after some material is removed.	0-1
thickness	nonnegativeDoubleType	The nominal dimension of the thickness of the remaining material.	1-1
plusTol	nonnegativeDoubleType	The plus tolerance variation permitted from the nominal thickness dimension	1-1
minusTol	nonnegativeDoubleType	The minus tolerance variation permitted from the nominal thickness dimension	1-1
		<p>The depth is an example of the Z_AxisDim and is identified as MATERIALCUT.</p> <p>The thickness is an example of the Z_AxisDim and is identified as MATERIALLEFT</p>	
<pre> <SlotCavity name="Slot1" platingStatus="NONPLATED" plusTol="0.05" minusTol="0.05"> <Outline> <LineDesc lineEnd="ROUND" lineWidth="0.000000"/> <Polygon> <PolyBegin x="-0.0050" y="-0.2750"/> <PolyStepSegment x="1.0450" y="-0.2750"/> <PolyStepSegment x="1.0450" y="0.2750"/> <PolyStepSegment x="-0.0050" y="0.2750"/> <PolyStepSegment x="-0.0050" y="-0.2750"/> </Polygon> </Outline> <MaterialCut depth="0.6" plusTol="0.01" minusTol="0.01"/> </SlotCavity> <SlotCavity name="Slot2" platingStatus="PLATED" plusTol="0.03" minusTol="0.03"> <Outline> <LineDesc lineEnd="ROUND" lineWidth="0.000000"/> <Polygon> <PolyBegin x="1.5750" y="0.5000"/> <PolyStepSegment x="1.5750" y="-0.5000"/> <PolyStepSegment x="-0.5250" y="-0.5000"/> <PolyStepSegment x="-0.5250" y="0.5000"/> <PolyStepSegment x="1.5750" y="0.5000"/> </Polygon> </Outline> <MaterialLeft thickness="0.5" plusTol="0.02" minusTol="0.02"/> </SlotCavity> </pre>			

8.2.3.12.6 Features

An embedded element that defines a substitution group, whose characteristics are used to identify any StandardShape or UserShape. The description may come from a predefined stored element contained in DictionaryStandard or DictionaryUser or instantiated at the time a feature is described.

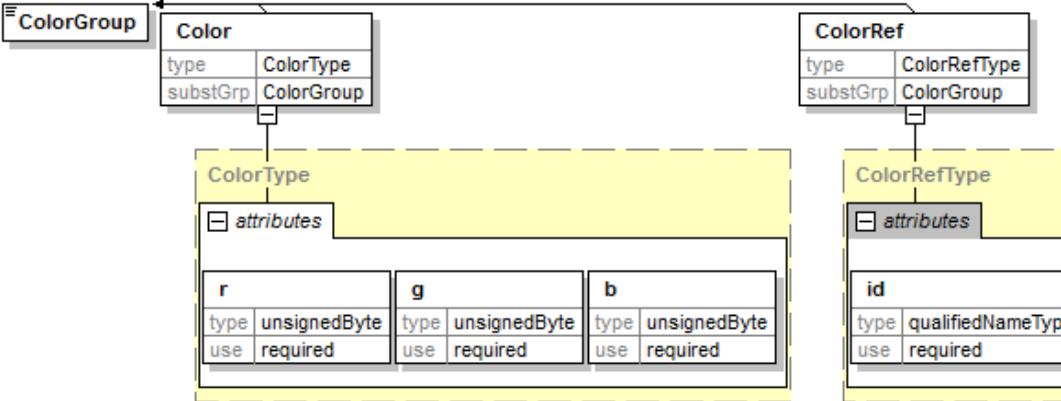


Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Features	FeaturesType	An embedded element that defines a substitution group of any predefined StandardShape or UserShape that may be instantiated as a part of the LayerFeature Set.	0-n
Xform	XformType	An element that provides the ability to reset the point of origin of a predefined area that can be scaled, mirror imaged or rotated. The image may also be located by the Xform. See 3.3.	0-1
xOffset	double	The xOffset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	0-1
yOffset	double	The yOffset of a previously defined shape relative to its original point of origin in order to define a new origin used for rotation, mirroring, scaling and location. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	0-1

rotation	nonNegativeDouble Type	Defines the rotation of a shape about the local origin in degrees. Positive rotation is always counter-clockwise as viewed from the board TOP (primary side). Degree accuracy is expressed as a two place decimal i.e., 45.15; 62.34	0-1
mirror	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the image is mirrored; FALSE indicates that it is not.	0-1
scale	scaleType	An attribute that defines a “double” dimension whose minExclusiveValue=0.0 representing the multiplication factor of all x and y dimensions. The scale factor does not apply to angular values.	0-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the standard shape or a pre-defined standard shape of the pad. The image may have been reorientated by the Xform.	0-n
x	double	The x coordinate upon which a features' point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a component is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	1-1
y	double	The x coordinate upon which a features' point-of-origin is located, relative to the point of origin of the product on which a component is positioned in accordance with the Cartesian coordinate system. The CadHeader defines the units of measure.	1-1
Feature	ABSTRACT	An element that identifies the substitution group of any pre-defined StandardShape or UserShape that can be instanced by the user at the time the layer feature is described.	0-n

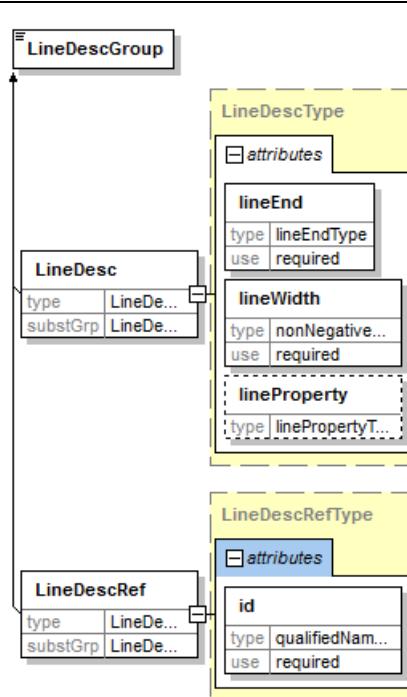
8.2.3.12.7 ColorGroup

A substitution group characteristic used to identify any color required for the set. The description may come from a predefined stored element contained in `DictionaryColor` or instantiated at the time a feature is described.

		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Attribute / Element Name</th><th colspan="2">Attribute / Element Type</th><th colspan="2">Description</th><th>Occurrence</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>colorGroup</td><td>ABSTRACT</td><td colspan="2"></td><td colspan="2">An element that identifies the substitution group of any pre-defined graphic shape or those shapes that can be instanced by the user at the time the layer feature is described.</td><td>0-n</td></tr> </tbody> </table>		Attribute / Element Name		Attribute / Element Type		Description		Occurrence	colorGroup	ABSTRACT			An element that identifies the substitution group of any pre-defined graphic shape or those shapes that can be instanced by the user at the time the layer feature is described.		0-n
Attribute / Element Name		Attribute / Element Type		Description		Occurrence											
colorGroup	ABSTRACT			An element that identifies the substitution group of any pre-defined graphic shape or those shapes that can be instanced by the user at the time the layer feature is described.		0-n											

8.2.3.12.8 LineDescGroup

A substitution group characteristic used to identify line description information. The description may come from a predefined stored element contained in `DictionaryLineDesc` or instantiated at the time a feature is described.



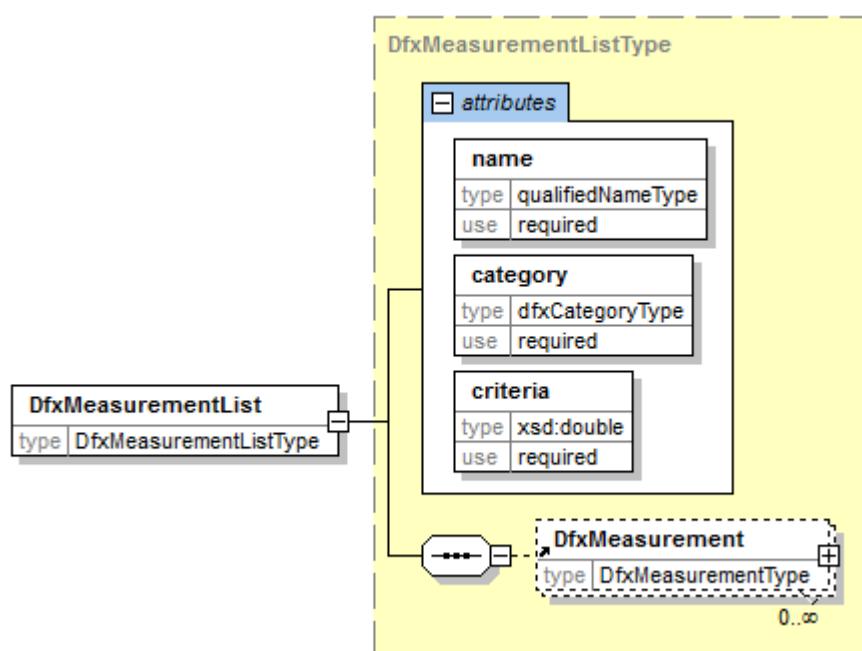
Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
LineDescGroup	ABSTRACT	A substitution group that specifies the <code>LineWidth</code> , <code>LineEnd</code> , and <code>lineProperty</code> characteristics of a Feature that requires that description. If a predefined feature is instantiated the presents of a <code>LineDescGroup</code> will override the previously defined <code>LineDesc</code> .	0-n

8.2.4 DfxMeasurementList

Many design and manufacturing tools have the ability to analyze the details of a data file and make a determination as to whether all the design rules have been met or if the parts are manufacturable within the capability of the board fabricator or assembler. The results of these analyses need to be retained so that future users of the data contained in the IPC-2581 file are aware of the improvements or risks which are apparent within the manufacturing domain.

The `DfxMeasurementList` element consists of a variety of measurements identified as `DfxMeasurement`. Each of these lists is identified separately so that the design for manufacturing analysis can be grouped according to their particular characteristic. The granularity of this grouping is dependent on the desire of the designer, fabricator, or assembler to capture the details of the `Dfx` analysis.

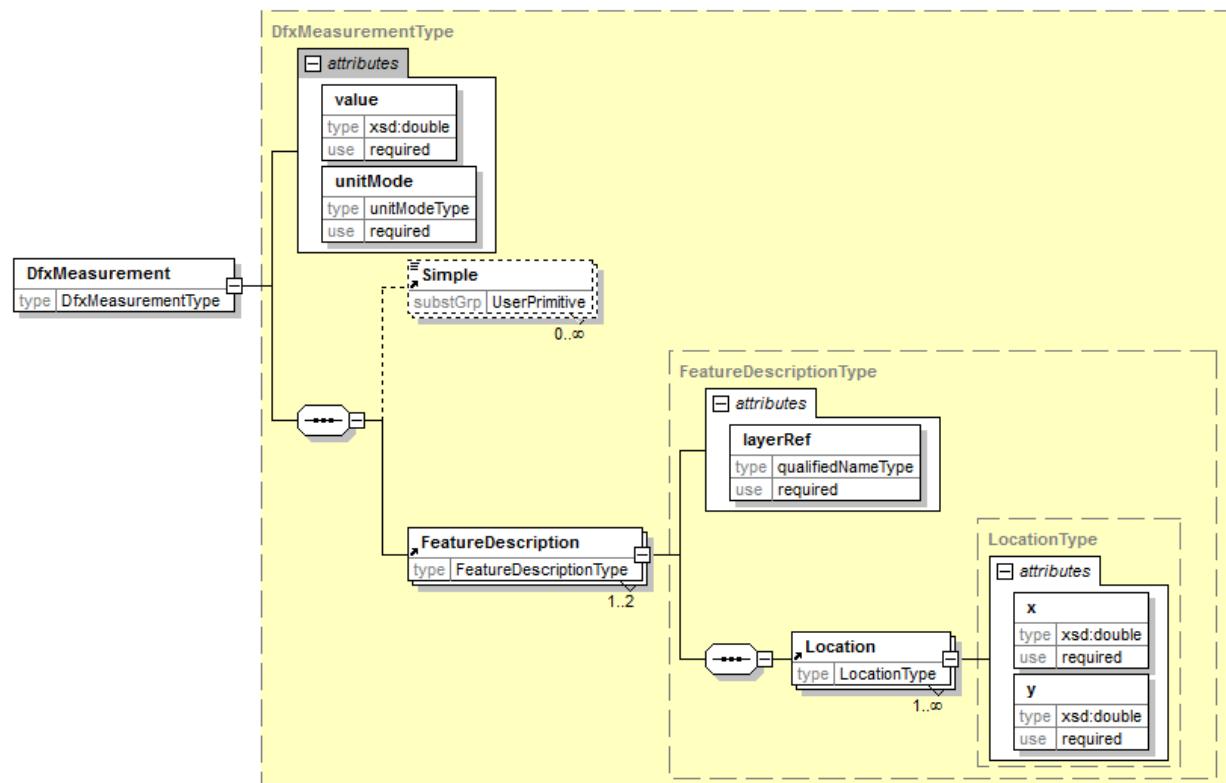
Just as there may be several `DfxMeasurementList` elements each list may contain many measurements (`DfxMeasurement`) that are described in order to indicate where the conditions afford a risk or need improvement.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
DfxMeasurementList	DfxMeasurementList Type	An element consisting of a list of all the measurements made in the design for manufacturing analysis grouped in a specific category or criteria description.	1-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned to the DfxMeasurementList .	1-1
category	dfxCategoryType	A unique description defined by the user which relates to the products contained in the particular IPC-2581 file intended to provide identification for the group of the DfxMeasurement characteristics. The category type is an enumerated string that may be any of the following groupings COMPONENT BOARD/FAB ASSEMBLY TESTING DATA/QUALITY	1-1
criteria	double	The design criteria used in evaluating the measurement characteristics in order to determine whether the design as supplied by the user meets the manufacturing criteria.	1-1
DfxMeasurement	DfxMeasurementType	An embedded element that provides the specific details of the measurements that are made on individual layers or product to determine design for manufacturing characteristics.	1-n

8.2.4.1 DfxMeasurement

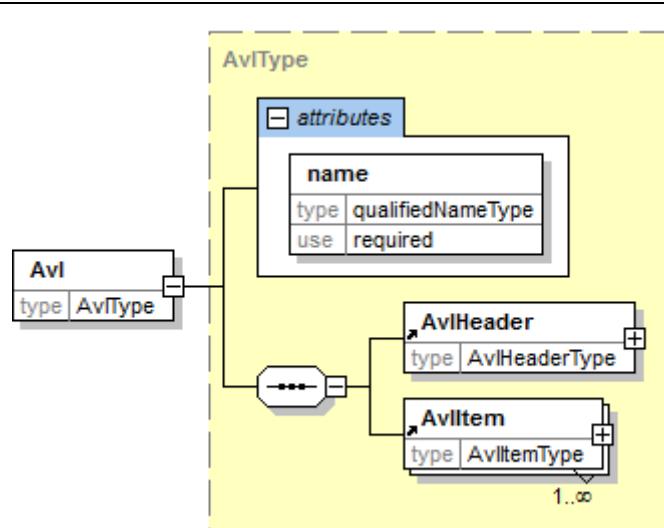
The **DfxMeasurement** element consists of various measurements that are related to a particular characteristic of the product. The **DfxMeasurements** are made on individual layers or product to determine design for manufacturing characteristics.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
DfxMeasurement	DfxMeasurement Type	An embedded element that provides the specific details of the measurements that are made on individual layers or product to determine design for manufacturing characteristics.	1-n
value	double	The specific value assigned to the DfmResults based on the manufacturing analysis of the design file.	1-1
unitMode	unitModeType	The mode of measurement depending on the characteristic being evaluated, indicated as an enumerated string using: DISTANCE AREA RESISTANCE CAPACITANCE IMPEDANCE PERCENTAGE SIZE NONE	1-1
Simple	ABSTRACT	A substitution group of either an Arc, Line, Outline, or Polyline used to define the characteristics of the Dfx measurement	0-1
FeatureDescription	FeatureDescription Type	A nested element that can be 1 or 2 feature descriptions related to the definitions used in the Simple graphic descriptions. The second FeatureDescription may be either a solution or a second feature that is in conflict with the first feature.	1-2
layerRef	qualifiedNameType	A reference to the specific layer in the <code>Ecad</code> layer section that pertains to the specifics of the <code>DfxMeasurement</code> .	1-1
Location	LocationType	The location of the image defined by the standard feature, user feature or simple graphic where the DFX measurement is applicable	0-n
x	double	The x coordinate where the <code>DfxMeasurement</code> is made relative to the point of origin of the product. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	1-1
y	double	The y coordinate where the <code>DfxMeasurement</code> is made relative to the point of origin of the product. The <code>CadHeader</code> defines the units of measure.	1-1

9 APPROVED VENDOR LIST (AVL)

The `Avl` element contains the list of matching manufacturer's part numbers (MPNs) and vendor information of certain component part number's (CPN). Although there are several Bill of Materials (Bom's) there is only one approved vendor list except that the information is segmented by names of the files.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
Avl	AvlType	The element that identifies the approved suppliers for the parts listed in the <code>Bom</code> or those that have been identified from other sources such as Internal or External Vendor Libraries.	0-n
name	qualifiedNameType	A unique name assigned to a group of approved sources of supply for the materials used in building the electronic assembly.	1-1
AvlHeader	AvlHeaderType	An embedded element that defines the characteristics of the <code>Avl</code> file, describing the source of the information and who has the responsibility for its creation and update.	1-1
AvlItem	AvlItemType	An embedded element that indicates the details of the approved supplier information and specifically indicates the relationship to all items in the file contained within every qualified named <code>Bom</code> element.	1-n

9.1 AvlHeader

The `AvlHeader` element defines the characteristics of the Avl information contained in the specific Avl file. Its occurrence is related to the name associated with the Avl file and may have different source information based on the purpose of the specific Avl. The `dateTime` attribute is used to keep account of changes that may take place in updating the information in the Avl file.

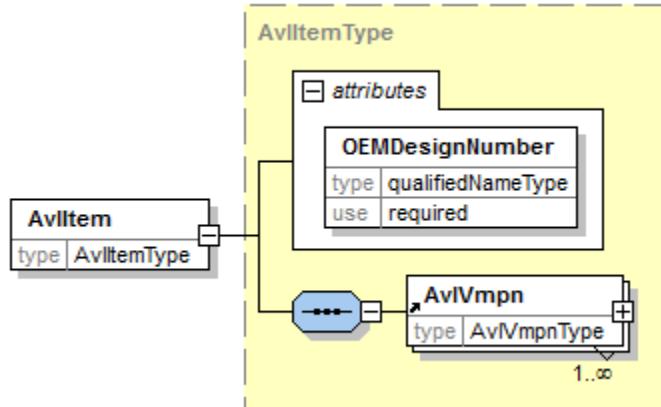
```

classDiagram
    class AvlHeader {
        type AvlHeaderType
    }
    class AvlHeaderType {
        attributes
            title
            source
            author
            datetime
            version
            comment
            modRef
    }
    AvlHeader "1" -- "1" AvlHeaderType
    AvlHeaderType "1" -- "1" attributes
    attributes "1" -- "1" title
    attributes "1" -- "1" source
    attributes "1" -- "1" author
    attributes "1" -- "1" datetime
    attributes "1" -- "1" version
    attributes "1" -- "1" comment
    attributes "1" -- "1" modRef
    title "xsd:string"
    source "xsd:string"
    author "xsd:string"
    datetime "xsd:dateTime"
    version "xsd:positiveInteger"
    comment "xsd:string"
    modRef "modRefType"
    title "required"
    source "required"
    author "required"
    datetime "required"
    version "required"
    comment "required"
    modRef "optional"
  
```

Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
AvlHeader	AvlHeaderType	An embedded element that defines the characteristics of the Avl file, describing the source of the information and who has the responsibility for its creation and update.	1-1
title	string	A unique title provided to the AvlHeader that distinguishes the schema instance from the <code>AvlDataHeader</code> .	1-1
source	string	The source of the information contained in the Avl file. If multiple sources exist they shall be so indicated with the relationship to the Avl data identified.	1-1
author	string	The individual responsible for the header creation and update. If the responsibility changes the information for this attribute must also change. It is required the person and their enterprise be contained in the <code>LogisticHeader</code> instances and the string name be identical to the id of the <code>Person</code> instance.	1-1
datetime	dateTime	The date and time that the header was created or modified.	1-1
version	positiveInteger	A positive number that defines the revision level of the AvlHeader.	1-1
comment	string	Any comment to assist in the interpretation of the Avl data.	0-1
modRef	modRefType	A reference to the mode intended for the file transfer. An enumerated string consisting of: USERDEF ASSEMBLY FABRICATION DESIGN TEST	0-1

9.2 AvlItem

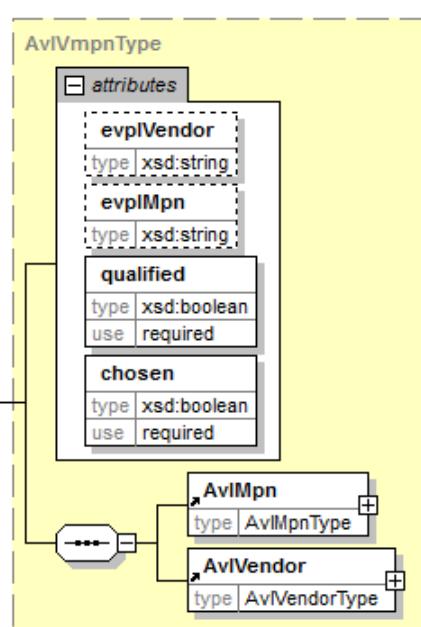
The `AvlItem` element consists of specific approved vendor information related to the Bom data items and the part numbers (`OEMDesignNumber`) specified by the originator of the IPC-2581 file. Each `AvlItem` instance starts with its own `AvlDataHeader` in order to establish the relationship with the appropriate Bom. The grouping of `AvlItem`'s provides the information on the individual relationship to vendor manufacturing part numbers (`AvlVmpnList`).



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
AvlItem	AvlItemType	An embedded element that indicates the details of the approved supplier information and specifically indicates the relationship to all items in the file contained within every qualified named Bom element.	1-n
OEMDesignNumber	qualifiedNameType	The identification of the unique part number used by the OEM customer in the Component XML instance.	1-1
AvlVmpn	AvlVmpnType	An embedded element that describes an individual approved vendor part number which corresponds to the part selected by the customer and contained in the group of Component's or, if approved, the <code>VplComponent</code> grouping.	1-n

9.2.1 AvlVmpn

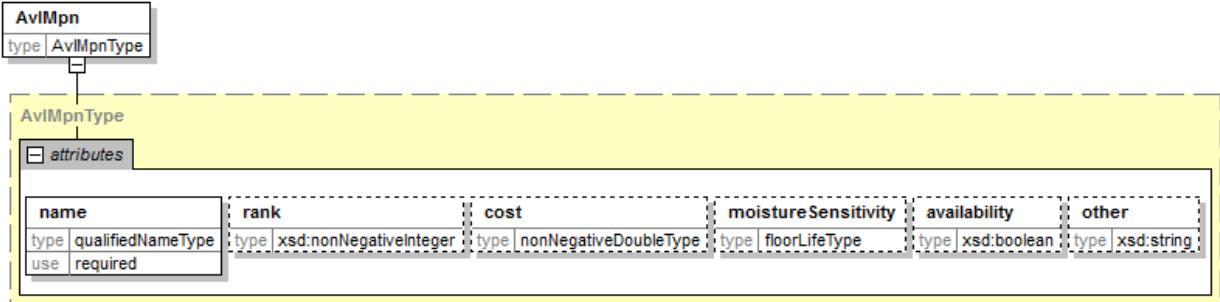
The `AvlVmpn` element represents the approved vendor part number substitution that might be implemented as an alternate to the `OEMDesignNumber` supplied by the user. The details of the information may be extracted from an external vendor part library, and if this technique is used the attributes of "qualified" and "chosen" must be included in the file.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
AvlVmpn	AvlVmpnType	An embedded element that describes an individual approved vendor part number which corresponds to the part selected by the customer and contained in the group of Component's or, if approved, the VplComponent grouping.	1-n
evplVendor	string	The identification of an external vendor part library (evpl) which may include a URL to the total library domain.	0-1
evplMpn	string	The manufacturer's part number in the evpl.	0-1
qualified	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the external vendor part library has been qualified; FALSE indicates that it has not been qualified. If the attribute is not present the qualification is unknown.	1-1
chosen	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the external vendor part library has been chosen; FALSE indicates that it has not been chosen. If the attribute is not present the fact as to whether the vendor part library has been chosen or not is unknown.	1-1
AvlMpn	AvlMpnType	An embedded element that defines the name and rank of the particular part identified for possible selection.	1-n
AvlVendor	AvlVendorType	An embedded element that defines the vendor(s) who produce the part in question as extracted from the external vendor part library and added to the enterprise information in the LogisticHeader.	1-n

9.2.1.1 AvlMpn

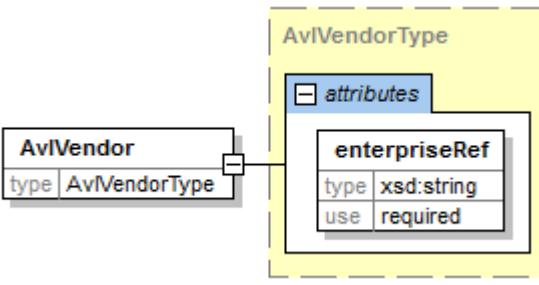
The AvlMpn element defines the name and ranking of the particular approved vendor part. Information is provided that identifies the characteristics of the substitution part in order to help the selection process.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
AvlMpn	AvlMpnType	An embedded element that defines the name and rank of the particular part identified for possible selection.	1-n
name	qualifiedNameType	The name of the part being suggested as an appropriate substitution	1-1
rank	nonNegativeInteger	The appropriateness of the part for its ability to serve as the same form fit and function of the original part identified as the OEMDesignNumber. The number 1 is the best ranking.	0-1
cost	nonNegativeDouble Type	The cost of the part when purchased in a reasonable quantity	0-1
moistureSensitivity	floorLifeType	An identification of the parts' ability to resist moisture penetration. It is an enumerated string that matches the requirements of J-STD-020 and is one of the following: UNLIMITED 1_YEAR 4_WEEKS 168_HOURS 72_HOURS 48_HOURS 24_HOURS BAKE	0-1
availability	boolean	An enumerated string as either TRUE or FALSE (part of the 3WC standard). TRUE equals that the part is readily available; FALSE indicates that it is not. If the attribute is not present the fact as to the parts availability is unknown.	0-1
other	string	Any other information pertinent to the information about the manufacturers part number	0-1

9.2.1.2 AvlVendor

The AvlVendor element is the linkage back to the Enterprise information defining the location of the part manufacturer, distributor or other source.



Attribute / Element Name	Attribute / Element Type	Description	Occurrence
AvlVendor	AvlVendorType	An embedded element that defines the vendor(s) who produce the part in question as extracted from the external vendor part library and added to the enterprise information in the LogisticHeader.	1-n
enterpriseRef	string	A reference to the Enterprise id attribute identifying the company that is able to deliver the required part. The information must be available in the LogisticHeader	1-1

10 GLOSSARY

Name or Acronym	Description	Reference Name
IPC2581	Top level data structure	ODB++(X) / IPC-2511B
Avl	Approved Vendor List	ODX_AVL
Bom	Bill of Material	ODX_BOM
Ecad	Computer-Aided design information	ODX_CAD
Contents	Information about contents of the file	ODX_CONTENTS
HistoryRef	Information about order and supply data	ODX_HISTORY_REC
LogisticHeader	File change information	ODX_LOGISTICS_HEADER
CadVmpnList	CAD manufacturer part number list	CAD_VMPN_LIST
CadVmpn	CAD manufacturer part number list	CAD_VMPN
CadVplVendor	CAD component vendor	CAD_VPL_VENDOR
Header	Header	ODX_HEADER
AblVmpnList	Manufacturer part number list	AVL_VMPN_LIST
AvlVmpn	Manufacturer Part Number	AVL_VMPN
AvlVendor	Vendor	AVL_VENDOR

10.1 Process Flow Descriptions

The detail shown in Figure 15 indicates the flow of data between design and manufacturing. Terminology may change as each domain performs their particular function, so the flow highlights the naming convention as the physical item moves through various steps in the process.

Usage of IPC-T-50 Terminology During the PCB Fabrication and Component Population at an Assembly House Flow Diagram

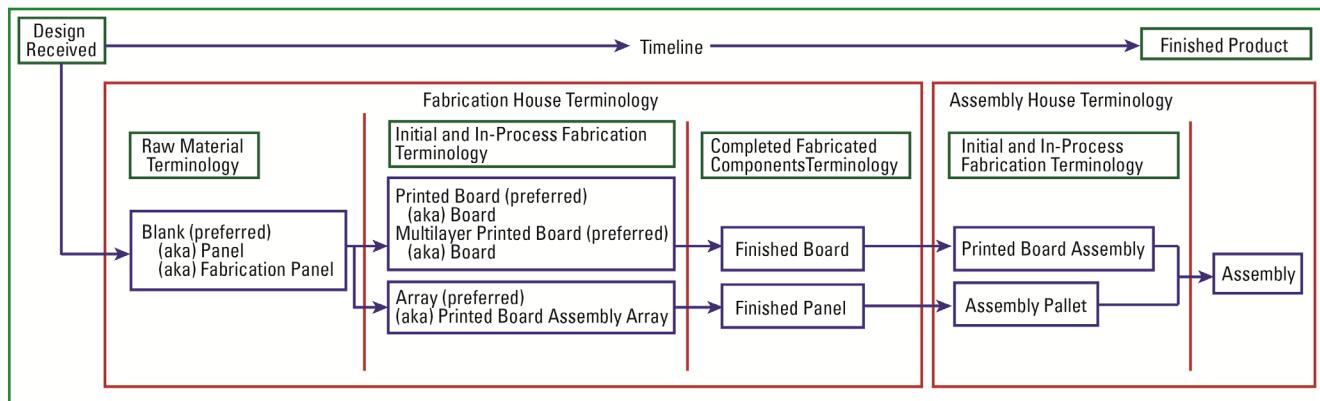


Figure 15 Electronic printed board design, through fabrication, assembly and test process data flow

10.2 Terms and Definitions

The definition of all terms **shall** be in accordance with IPC-T-50 and the following. An asterisk (*) by the term indicates that it is a reproduction from IPC-T-50 and is provided to assist the reader in interpretation of this standard. The order of the terms is related to the 2581 process flow shown in 10.1

Blank *

41.1339

An unprocessed or partially processed piece of base material or metal clad base material, that has been cut from a sheet or panel, that has the rough dimensions of a printed board. (See also "Panel.")

Panel**41.1463**

A rectangular sheet of base material or metal-clad material of predetermined size that is used for the processing of one or more printed boards and, when required, one or more test coupons. (See also "Blank.")

Fabrication Panel

(See "Panel")

Board ***60.0118**

see "Printed Board," and "Multilayer Printed Board."

Printed Board (PB) ***60.1485**

The general term for completely processed printed circuit and printed wiring configurations. (This includes single-sided, double-sided and multilayer boards with rigid, flexible, and rigid-flex base materials.)

Multilayer Printed Board ***60.1227**

The general term for a printed board that consists of rigid or flexible insulation materials and three or more alternate printed wiring and/or printed circuit layers that have been bonded together and electrically interconnected.

Finished Board

see "Printed Board"

Finished Panel

A rectangular sheet of base material or metal-clad material of predetermined size that is used for the processing of one or more printed board designs and, when required, one or more test coupons which is extracted from the fabrication panel to deliver to the customer or to the next level of fabrication. (see Assembly Pallet)

Assembly***80.1327**

A number of parts, subassemblies or combinations thereof joined together. (Note: This term can be used in conjunction with other terms listed herein, e.g., "Printed Board Assembly")

Printed Board Assembly***80.0911**

The generic term for an assembly that uses a printed board for component mounting and interconnecting purposes.

Array***22.0049**

A group of elements or circuits arranged in rows and columns on a base material.

Printed Board Assembly Array

A group of assemblies, all of the same design, arranged in rows and columns on a panel.

Assembly Pallet

The generic term for the assembly that uses a finished panel, as delivered from the board fabricator, of the same or different designs, for element and circuit component mounting and attachment to the board interconnections layers. The board arrangement on the pallet may be random or in the form of an array; the pallet may also include coupons for testing.

10.3 Enumerated strings of 2581

The following enumerations exists for 2581 data restrictions. The terms used in the started are intended to relate to the definitions shown in 10.2.

BOARD | BOARDPANEL | ASSEMBLY | ASSEMBLYPALLET | COUPON

11 REFERENCE INFORMATION

The following sections define reference documents that are useful in clarifying the products or process of the industry or provide additional insight into the subject of data modeling or released information models.

11.1 IPC

IPC-T-50 *Terms and Definitions*

IPC-D-310 *Guidelines for Artwork Generation and Measurement Techniques for Printed Circuits*

IPC-D-325 *Documentation Requirements for Printed Boards, Assemblies and Support Drawings*

IPC-2220 series, *Design Standard for Printed Boards and Printed Board Assemblies*

IPC-2501 *Definition for Web-Based Exchange of XML Data*

IPC-2510 *Implementation of Product Manufacturing Description Data and Transfer Methodology*

IPC-2571 *Generic Requirements for Electronics Manufacturing Supply Chain Communication – Product Data eXchange (PDX)*

IPC-2576 *Sectional Requirements for Electronics Manufacturing Supply Chain Communication of As-Built Product Data – Product Data eXchange (PDX)*

IPC-2578 *Sectional Requirements for Supply Chain Communication of Bill of Material and Product Design Configuration Data - Product Data eXchange (PDX)?*

IPC-2611 *Generic Requirements for Electronic Product Documentation*

IPC-2614 *Sectional Requirements for Board Fabrication Documentation*

IPC-2615 *Printed Board Dimensions and Tolerances*

IPC-4101 *Specification for Base Materials for Rigid Board and Multilayer Printed Boards*

IPC-4103 *Specification for Base Materials for High Speed/ High Frequency Applications*

IPC-4104 *Specification for High Density Interconnect (HDI) and Microvia Materials*

IPC-7351 *Requirements for Design of Land Patterns*

11.2 American National Standards Institute

ANSI X3/TR-1-77 *American National Dictionary for Information Processing*

ANSI X3.12 *Subroutine Record Format Standardization*

ANSI Y14.5 *Dimensioning and Tolerancing for Engineering Drawing*

ANSI Y32.1 *Logic Diagram Standards*

ANSI Y32.16 *Electrical and Electrical Reference Designators*

ANSI Z210.1 *Metric Practice Guide (ASTM 380-72)*

11.3 Department of Defense

DoD-STD-100 *Engineering Drawings*

11.4 Electronic Industries Association

EDIF 4 0 0 *Electronic Data Interchange Format*

11.5 International Organization for Standards (ISO)

ISO STEP Documentation:

ISO 10303-AP210 *Electronic Assembly, Interconnect, and Packaging Design*

ISO 10303-AP212 *Electrotechnical Design & Installation*

AP220 *Process Planning, Manufacturing, and Assembly of Layered Electronic Products*

AP221 *Process Plant Functional Data & Schematic Representation*

Appendix A

IPC-7351 Naming Convention for Land Patterns

Surface Mount Land Patterns

Component, Category

Land Pattern Name

Ball Grid Array's	GA + Pin Qty + C or N + Pitch P + Ball Columns X Ball Rows _ Body Length X Body Width X Height
BGA w/Dual Pitch	BGA + Pin Qty + C or N + Col Pitch X Row Pitch P + Ball Columns X Ball Rows _ Body Length X Body Width X Height
BGA w/Staggered Pins	BGAS + Pin Qty + C or N + Pitch P + Ball Columns X Ball Rows _ Body Length X Body Width X Height
BGA Note: The C or N = Collapsing or Non-collapsing Balls	
Capacitors, Chip, Array, Concave	APCAV + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Capacitors, Chip, Array, Flat	APCAF + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Capacitors, Chip, Non-polarized	APC + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Capacitors, Chip, Polarized	CAPCP + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Capacitors, Chip, Wire Rectangle	CAPCWR + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Capacitors, Molded, Non-polarized	CAPM + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Capacitors, Molded, Polarized	APMP + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Capacitors, Aluminum Electrolytic	CAPAE + Base Body Size X Height
Ceramic Flat Packages	CFP127P + Lead Span Nominal X Height - Pin Qty
Column Grid Array, Circular Lead	GA + Pin Qty + C + Pitch P + Pin Columns X Pin Rows _ Body Length X Body Width X Height
Column Grid Array, Square Lead	CNA + Pin Qty + S + Pitch P + Pin Columns X Pin Rows _ Body Length X Body Width X Height
Crystals (2 leads)	XTAL + Body Length X Body Width X Height
Dual Flat No-lead	DFN + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Diodes, Chip	IOC + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Diodes, Molded	DIOM + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Diodes, MELF	DIOMELF + Body Length + Body Diameter
Diodes, Side Concave, 2 Pin	IOSC + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Diodes, Side Concave, 4 Pin	IOSC + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Dual-Inline Package (Butt Mounted)	IP + Pitch P + Lead Span Nominal X Height - Pin Qty
Fuses, Molded	FUSM + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Inductors, Chip	NDC + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Inductors, Molded	NDM + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Inductors, Precision Wire Wound	INDP + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Inductors, Chip, Array, Concave	INDCAV + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Inductors, Chip, Array, Flat	INDCAF + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Land Grid Array, Circular Lead	LGA + Pin Qty + C + Pitch P + Pin Columns X Pin Rows _ Body Length X Body Width X Height
Land Grid Array, Square Lead	LGA + Pin Qty + S + Pitch P + Pin Columns X Pin Rows _ Body Length X Body Width X Height
Land Grid Array, Rectangle Lead	LGA + Pin Qty + R + Pitch P + Pin Columns X Pin Rows _ Body Length X Body Width X Height
LED's, Molded	LEDM + Body Length + Body Width X Height
LED's, Side Concave, 2 Pin	LEDSC + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
LED's, Side Concave, 4 Pin	LEDSC + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Oscillators, Side Concave	OSCSC + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Oscillators, J-Lead	SCJ + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Oscillators, L-Bend Lead	SCL + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Oscillators, Corner Concave	SCCC + Body Length X Body Width X Height
Plastic Leaded Chip Carriers	LCC + Pitch P + Lead Span L1 X Lead Span L2 Nominal X Height - Pin Qty
Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier Sockets Square	LCCS + Pitch P + Lead Span L1 X Lead Span L2 Nominal X Height - Pin Qty
Quad Flat Packages	QFP + Pitch P + Lead Span L1 X Lead Span L2 Nominal X Height - Pin Qty
Ceramic Quad Flat Packages	QFP + Pitch P + Lead Span L1 X Lead Span L2 Nominal X Height - Pin Qty
Quad Flat No-lead	QFN + Pitch P + Body Width X Body Length X Height - Pin Qty + Thermal Pad
Pull-back Quad Flat No-lead	PQFN + Pitch P + Body Width X Body Length X Height - Pin Qty + Thermal Pad
Quad Leadless Ceramic Chip Carriers	CC + Pitch P + Body Width X Body Length X Height - Pin Qty
Quad Leadless Ceramic Chip Carriers (Pin 1 on Side)	CCS + Pitch P + Body Width X Body Length X Height - Pin Qty
Resistors, Chip	SC + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Resistors, Molded	RESM + Body Length + Body Width X Height
Resistors, MELF	ESMELF + Body Length + Body Diameter
Resistors, Chip, Array, Concave	RESCAV + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Resistors, Chip, Array, Convex, E-Version (Even Pin Size)	RESCAXE + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Resistors, Chip, Array, Convex, S-Version (Side Pins Diff)	ESCAKS + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Resistors, Chip, Array, Flat	ESCAF + Pitch P + Body Length X Body Width X Height - Pin Qty
Small Outline Diodes, Flat Lead	ODFL + Lead Span Nominal + Body Width X Height
Small Outline IC, J-Leaded	OJ + Pitch P + Lead Span Nominal X Height - Pin Qty
Small Outline Integrated Circuit, (50 mil Pitch SOIC)	SOIC127P + Lead Span Nominal X Height - Pin Qty
Small Outline Packages	OP + Pitch P + Lead Span Nominal X Height - Pin Qty
Small Outline No-lead	ON + Pitch P + Body Width X Body Length X Height - Pin Qty + Thermal Pad
Pull-back Small Outline No-lead	PSON + Pitch P + Body Width X Body Length X Height - Pin Qty + Thermal Pad
Small Outline Transistors, Flat Lead	SOTFL + Pitch P + Lead Span Nominal X Height - Pin Qty

SOD (Example: SOD3717X135 = JEDEC SOD123)
 SOT89 (JEDEC Standard Package)
 SOT143 & SOT343 (JEDEC Standard Package)
 SOT143 & SOT343 Reverse (JEDEC Standard Package)
 OT23 & SOT223 Packages (Example: SOT230P700X180-4)
 TO (Generic DPAK - Example: TO228P970X238-3)

SOD + Lead Span Nominal + Body Width X Height
SOT89
OT143 & SOT343
OT143R & SOT343R
OT + Pitch **P** + Lead Span Nominal X Height - Pin Qty
TO + Pitch **P** + Lead Span X Height - Pin Qty

Through Hole Land Patterns

<u>Component, Category</u>	<u>Land Pattern Name</u>
Amplifiers	AMP _Mfr.'s Part Number
Batteries.....	BAT _Mfr.'s Part Number
Bridge Rectifiers.....	DIOB _Mfr.'s Part Number
Capacitors, Non Polarized Axial	CAPA + Pin Spacing - Body Length X Body Diameter in Metric
Capacitors, Non Polarized Radial, Round.....	CAPR + Pin Spacing - Body Diameter X Component Height in Metric
Capacitors, Non Polarized Radial, Oval.....	CAPR + Pin Spacing - Body Width X Body Length X Component Height in Metric
Capacitors, Polarized Axial.....	CAPPA + Pin Spacing - Body Length X Body Diameter in Metric
Capacitor, Polarized Radial.....	CAPPR + Pin Spacing - Body Diameter X Component Height in Metric
Converters	CONV _Mfr.'s Part Number
Crystals	XTAL _Mfr.'s Part Number
Diodes, JEDEC Standard.....	DO - JEDEC Part Number
Diodes, Miscellaneous	DIO _Mfr.'s Part Number
Dual-In-Line Packages	DIP + Pin Qty + Pin Span in MILS
Dual-In-Line Sockets	DIPS + Pin Qty + Pin Span in MILS
Ferrite Beads.....	FB _Mfr.'s Part Number
Filters	FIL _Mfr.'s Part Number
Fuses	FUSE _Mfr.'s Part Number
Fuses, Resettable	FUSER _Mfr.'s Part Number
Headers, .100" Pin Centers	HDR + Number of Rows X Number of pins per Row
Heat Sinks.....	HSINK _Mfr.'s Part Number
Inductors	IND _Mfr.'s Part Number
Jumpers, Wire	JUMP + Distance between Pads in Metric
LED's	LED _Mfr.'s Part Number
Liquid Crystal Display	LCD _Mfr.'s Part Number
Microphones	MIC _Mfr.'s Part Number
Mounting Holes Nonplated	MTG + Hole Size in Metric
Mounting Holes Plated	MTG + Hole Size_Pad Size in Metric
Mounting Holes Plated with 8 Vias	MTG + Hole Size_Pad Size in Metric - VIA
MOV.....	MOV _Mfr.'s Part Number
Opto Isolators.....	OPTO _Mfr.'s Part Number
Oscillators	OSC _Mfr.'s Part Number
PAD	PAD + Pad Size X Hole Size in Metric + H
Photo Detectors	PHODET _Mfr.'s Part Number
Pin Grid Array's	PGA + Number of Pin Rows X Number of Pin Columns - Pin Qty
Regulators.....	REG _Mfr.'s Part Number
Relays.....	RELAY _Mfr.'s Part Number
Resistors, Axial Leads	RES + Pad Spacing - Body Length X Body Diameter in Metric
Resistor Networks	SIP + Pin Qty
Shield, off the shelf.....	SHIELD _Mfr.'s Part Number
Shield, Custom.....	SHIELD + Body Length X Body Width in Metric
Speakers.....	SPKR _Mfr.'s Part Number
Stiffeners.....	STIF _Mfr.'s Part Number
Switches.....	SW _Mfr.'s Part Number
Test Points, Round.....	TP + Pad Size X Hole Size in Metric + H
Test Points, Square.....	TPS + Pad Size X Hole Size in Metric + H
Test Points, Top Pad & Bottom Pad are Different Size	TP + Top Pad X Bottom Pad X Hole Size in Metric + H
Thermistors	THERM _Mfr.'s Part Number
Transducers (IRDA's).....	XDCR _Mfr.'s Part Number
Transient Voltage Suppressors	TVS + Mfr.'s Part Number
Transient Voltage Suppressors, Polarized.....	TVSP + Mfr.'s Part Number
Transistor Outlines, Standard	TO - JEDEC Number
Transistor Outlines, Custom	TRANS _Mfr.'s Part Number
Transformers.....	XFMR _Mfr.'s Part Number
Trimmers & Potentiometers	TRIM _Mfr.'s Part Number
Tuners.....	TUNER _Mfr.'s Part Number
Varistors.....	VAR _Mfr.'s Part Number
Voltage Controlled Oscillator	VCO _Mfr.'s Part Number
Voltage Regulators.....	TO - JEDEC Number

Connector Land Patterns

<u>Library Name</u>	<u>Land Pattern Name</u>
AMP™	Series Number – Pin Qty
BERG™	Part Number
CUI-STACK	Part Number
HIROSE™	Part Number
JST™	Part Number
KYCON™	Part Number
MOLEX™	Series Number – Pin Qty
SAMTEC™	Part Number
SWITCHCRAFT™	Part Number
CONNECTORS (Miscellaneous Connector Libraries)	
3M™	3M_Part Number
AMPHENOL™	AMPHENOL_Part Number
AVX™	AVX_Part Number
ITT CANNON™	ITT_Part Number
JWT™	JWT_Part Number
PHOENIX™	PHOENIX_Part Number
SIEMENS™	SIEMENS_Part Number
SPEEDTECH™	SPEEDTECH_Part Number
STEWART™	STEWART_Part Number
YAMAICHI™	YAMAICHI_Part Number

SYNTAX EXPLANATIONS:

The + (plus sign) stands for “in addition to” (no space between the prefix and the body size)

The _ (under score) is the separator between the Prefix and the Mfr Part Number.

The - (dash) is used to separate the pin qty.

The X (capital letter X) is used instead of the word “by” to separate two numbers such as height X width like “Quad Packages”.

Connector Series Number:

In these libraries such as AMP & MOLEX the “Series Number” is used and the pin qty. Molex Example: **90663-60**

The other connector libraries will just contain the manufacturer’s part number. We did a study and could not find any overlapping manufacture part numbers for 20 different connector manufacturers, so it’s safe to use it.

SUFFIXES For Every Common SMT Land Pattern to Describe Environment Use (This is the last character in every name)

Note: This excludes the BGA and QFN families as they only come in Nominal Environment Condition.

- **M** Most Material Condition (Level A)
- **N** Nominal Material Condition (Level B)
- **L** Least Material Condition (Level C)

SUFFIXES for Alternate Components that do not follow the JEDEC, EIA or IEC Standard

- **A** Alternate Component (used primarily for SOP & QFP when Component Tolerance or Height is different)
- **B** Second Alternate Component

SUFFIXES for JEDEC and EIA Standard parts that have several alternate packages

- **AA, AB, AC** JEDEC or EIA Component Identifier (Used primarily on Chip Resistors, Inductors and Capacitors)

SUFFIXES for Through Hole Mounting Holes

VIA Vias (Mounting Holes with 8 vias)

Suggested Component Zero Rotations Pin 1 Location:

- 1) Chip Capacitors, Resistors and Inductors (RES, CAP and IND) – **Pin 1 (Positive Pin) on Left**
- 2) Molded Inductors (INDM), Resistors (RESM) and Tantalum Capacitors (CAPT) – **Pin 1 (Positive Pin) on Left**
- 3) Precision Wire-wound Inductors (INDP) – Pin 1 **(Positive Pin) on Left**
- 4) MELF Diodes – **Pin 1 (Cathode) on Left**
- 5) Aluminum Electrolytic Capacitors (CAPAE) – **Pin 1 (Positive) on Left**
- 6) SOT Devices (SOT23, SOT23-5, SOT223, SOT89, SOT143, etc.) – **Pin 1 Upper Left**
- 7) TO252 & TO263 (DPAK Type) Devices – **Pin 1 Upper Left**
- 8) Small Outline Gullwing ICs (SOIC, SOP, TSOP, SSOP, TSSOP) – **Pin 1 Upper Left**
- 9) Ceramic Flat Packs (CFP) – **Pin 1 Upper Left**
- 10) Small Outline J Lead ICs (SOJ) – **Pin 1 Upper Left**
- 11) Quad Flat Pack ICs (PQFP, SQFP) – **Pin 1 Upper Left**
- 12) Ceramic Quad Flat Packs (CQFP) – **Pin 1 Upper Left**
- 13) Bumper Quad Flat Pack ICs (BQFP Pin 1 Center) – **Pin 1 Top Center**
- 14) Plastic Leaded Chip Carriers (PLCC) – **Pin 1 Top Center**
- 15) Leadless Chip Carriers (LCC) – **Pin 1 Top Center**
- 16) Quad Flat No-Lead ICs (QFN) QFNS, QFNVR, QFNRH – **Pin 1 Upper Left**
- 17) Ball Grid Arrays (BGA) – **Pin A1 Upper Left**

Appendix B

Panel Instance File

The following is the XML instance file for the panel shown in the illustration below.

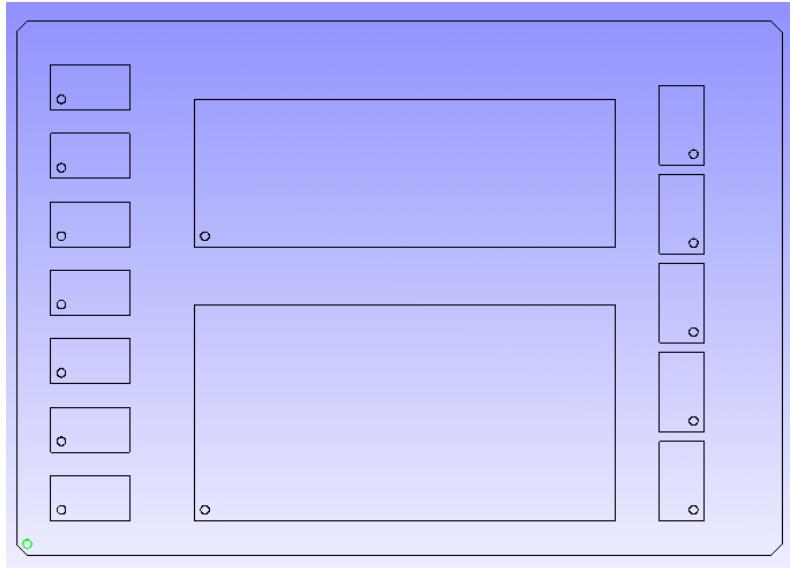


Figure B1 Multiple board designs and coupon panel

```
<?xml version = "1.0" encoding = "UTF-8"?>
<IPC-2581 xmlns = "http://webstds.ipc.org/2581" xmlns:xsi =
"http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xsi:schemaLocation =
"http://webstds.ipc.org/2581 schema.xsd">
  <!--xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="file:///"-->
<IPC-2581A>
  <Content>
    <roleRef = DWB/>
    <FunctionMode>
      <mode = "FABRICATION"/>
      <level = "1"/>
      <comment = "Sample Panel Layout"/>
    <FunctionMode/>
    <StepRef>
      <name = "Panel_1"/>
      <name = "BasicBoard_1"/>
      <name = "BasicBoard_2"/>
      <name = "BasicBoard_3"/>
      <name = "BasicBoard_4"/>
    <StepRef/>
    <LayerRef>
      <name = "OnlyLayer"/>
    <LayerRef/>
    <DictionaryStandard>
      <name = "LandDescriptions"/>
    <DictionaryStandard/>
    <DictionaryUser>
      <name = "DrawingDescriptions"/>
    <DictionaryUser/>
```

```
<DictionaryLinedesc>
  <name = "LineDescriptions"/>
<DictionaryLineDesc/>
<DictionaryColor>
  <name = "ColorDescriptions"/>
<DictionaryColor/>
<Content/>
<DictionaryStandard>
  <name = "LandDescriptions"/>
  <units = "INCH"/>
    <EntryStandard id = "DatumCircle">
      <Moire diameter = "0.125" ringNumber = "1" ringGap = "0.05"
        ringWidth = "0.01"/>
    </EntryStandard>
  </DictionaryStandard>
<DictionaryUser>
  <name = "DrawingDescriptions"/>
  <units = ""INCH"/>
    <EntryUser id = "hLine">
      <Line startX = "0.0" startY = "0.0" endX = "4.0" endY = "0.0"/>
    </EntryUser>
  </DictionaryUser>
<DictionaryLineDesc>
  <name = "LineDescriptions"/>
  <units = "INCH"/>
    <EntryLineDesc id = "Hairline">
      <LineDesc lineEnd = "SQUARE" lineWidth = "0.0"/>
    </EntryLineDesc>
  </DictionaryLineDesc>
<DictionaryColor>
  <name = "ColorDescriptions"/>
  <EntryColor id = "red">
    <Color r = "255" g = "0" b = "0"/>
  </EntryColor>
  <EntryColor id = "green">
    <Color r = "0" g = "255" b = "0"/>
  </EntryColor>
  <EntryColor id = "blue">
    <Color r = "0" g = "0" b = "255"/>
  </EntryColor>
  <EntryColor id = "white">
    <Color r = "255" g = "255" b = "255"/>
  </EntryColor>
  <EntryColor id = "black">
    <Color r = "0" g = "0" b = "0"/>
  </EntryColor>
  <EntryColor id = "cyan">
    <Color r = "0" g = "255" b = "255"/>
  </EntryColor>
  <EntryColor id = "magenta">
    <Color r = "255" g = "0" b = "255"/>
  </EntryColor>
  <EntryColor id = "yellow">
    <Color r = "255" g = "255" b = "0"/>
  </EntryColor>
</DictionaryColor>
<Ecad name = "GridBoard"/>
  <CadHeader units = "INCH"/>
```

```

<CadData>
  <Layer>
    <name = "OnlyLayer"/>
    <layerFunction = "DIELCORE"/>
    <side = "TOP"/>
    <polarity = POSITIVE"/>
  </Layer>
<Step>
  <name = "Panel_1"/>
  <Datum x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/>
  <Profile>
    <Polygon>
      <PolyBegin x = "-0.159" y = "0.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-0.159" y = "7.477"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "0.0" y = "7.636"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "10.882" y = "7.636"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "11.041" y = "7.477"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "11.041" y = "0.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "10.882" y = "-0.159"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "0.0" y = "-0.159"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-0.159" y = "0.0"/>
    </Polygon>
  </Profile>
  <StepRepeat stepRef = "BasicBoard_1" x = "0.5" y = "0.5" dx = "1.5" dy = "1.0"
nx = "0" ny = "6" angle = "0.0" mirror = "false"/>
  <StepRepeat stepRef = "BasicBoard_2" x = "2.6" y = "0.5" dx = "0.9" dy = "1.3"
nx = "0" ny = "0" angle = "0.0" mirror = "false"/>
  <StepRepeat stepRef = "BasicBoard_3" x = "2.6" y = "4.5" dx = "1.5" dy = "1.0"
nx = "0" ny = "0" angle = "0.0" mirror = "false"/>
  <StepRepeat stepRef = "BasicBoard_4" x = "9.75" y = "0.5" dx = "0.9" dy =
"1.3" nx = "0" ny = "4" angle = "90.0" mirror = "false"/>
  <LayerFeature layerRef = "OnlyLayer"/>
    <Set>
      <ColorRef id = "green"/>
      <Pad>
        <Location x = "0.000" y = "0.000"/>
        <StandardPrimitiveRef id = "DatumCircle"/>
      </Pad>
    </Set>
  </LayerFeature>
</Step>
<Step>
  <name = "BasicBoard_1"/>
  <Datum x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/>
  <Profile>
    <Polygon>
      <PolyBegin x = "-0.159" y = "-0.159"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-0.159" y = "0.5"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "1.0" y = "0.5"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "1.0" y = "-0.159"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-0.159" y = "-0.159"/>
    </Polygon>
  </Profile>
  <LayerFeature layerRef = "OnlyLayer">
    <Set>
      <ColorRef id = "black"/>
      <Pad>
        <Location x = "0.000" y = "0.000"/>

```

```
        <StandardPrimitiveRef id = "DatumCircle"/>
    </Pad>
  </Set>
</LayerFeature>
</Step>
<Step>
  <name = "BasicBoard_2">
  <Datum x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/>
  <Profile>
    <Polygon>
      <PolyBegin x = "-0.159" y = "-0.159"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-0.159" y = "3.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "6.0" y = "3.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "6.0" y = "-0.159"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-0.159" y = "-0.159"/>
    </Polygon>
  </Profile>
  <LayerFeature layerRef = "OnlyLayer">
    <Set>
      <ColorRef id = "black"/>
      <Pad>
        <Location x = "0.000" y = "0.000"/>
        <StandardPrimitiveRef id = "DatumCircle"/>
      </Pad>
    </Set>
  </LayerFeature>
</Step>
<Step>
  <name = "BasicBoard_3">
  <Datum x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/>
  <Profile>
    <Polygon>
      <PolyBegin x = "-0.159" y = "-0.159"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-0.159" y = "2.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "6.0" y = "2.0"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "6.0" y = "-0.159"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-0.159" y = "-0.159"/>
    </Polygon>
  </Profile>
  <LayerFeature layerRef = "OnlyLayer">
    <Set>
      <ColorRef id = "black"/>
      <Pad>
        <Location x = "0.000" y = "0.000"/>
        <StandardPrimitiveRef id = "DatumCircle"/>
      </Pad>
    </Set>
  </LayerFeature>
</Step>
<Step>
  <name = "BasicBoard_4">
  <Datum x = "0.00" y = "0.00"/>
  <Profile>
    <Polygon>
      <PolyBegin x = "-0.159" y = "-0.159"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "-0.159" y = "0.5"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "1.0" y = "0.5"/>
      <PolyStepSegment x = "1.0" y = "-0.159"/>
```

```
        <PolyStepSegment x = "-0.159" y = "-0.159"/>
    </Polygon>
</Profile>
<LayerFeature layerRef = "OnlyLayer">
    <Set>
        <ColorRef id = "black"/>
        <Pad>
            <Location x = "0.000" y = "0.000"/>
            <StandardPrimitiveRef id = "DatumCircle"/>
        </Pad>
    </Set>
</LayerFeature>
</Step>
</CadData>
</Ecad>
</IPC-2581A>
```

Appendix C

Potential Reference Designator Assignment for Non Electrical Items

Characteristic	Reference Designator	BomDes Types & Comments
COATINGCOND	CC	MatDes
COATINGNONCOND	CN	MatDes
DIELBASE	DB	MatDes
DIELCORE	DC	MatDes
DIELPREG	DP	MatDes
DIELADHV	DA	MatDes
SOLDERBUMP	SB	MatDes
BOARDFAB	PB	RefDes
RESISTIVE	RS	MatDes
CAPACITIVE	CA	MatDes
COMPONENT_EMBEDDED	EC	RefDes
SOLDERPASTE	SP	MatDes
CONDFOIL	CF	MatDes
LEGEND	LG	MatDes
SOLDERMASK	SM	MatDes
CONDUCTOR	CD	MatDes
POWER_GROUND	PG	MatDes
PASTEMASK	PM	MatDes
DRILL	DT	ToolDes
ROUTE	RT	ToolDes
SCORE	SC	ToolDes
CONDUCTIVE_ADHESIVE.	CA	MatDes
GLUE	GL	MatDes
HOLEFILL	HF	MatDes
PROBE	PT	ToolDes
REWORK	RW	ToolDes
FIXTURE	FX	ToolDes
ASSEMBLY	AS	RefDes
SILKSCREEN	SS	ToolDes
COURTYARD	CY	DocDes
GRAPHIC	GR	DocDes
DOCUMENT	DO	DocDes
LANDPATTERN	LP	DocDes
CONDfilm	CM	MatDes
COMPONENT_TOP	CT	RefDes
COMPONENT_BOTTOM	CB	RefDes
BOARD_OUTLINE	BO	DocDes
OTHER	OR	(TBD)



ANSI/IPC-T-50 Terms and Definitions for Interconnecting and Packaging Electronic Circuits Definition Submission/Approval Sheet

The purpose of this form is to keep current with terms routinely used in the industry and their definitions. Individuals or companies are invited to comment. Please complete this form and return to:

IPC
3000 Lakeside Drive, Suite 309S
Bannockburn, IL 60015-1249
Fax: 847 615.7105

SUBMITTOR INFORMATION:

Name: _____
Company: _____
City: _____
State/Zip: _____
Telephone: _____
Date: _____

- This is a **NEW** term and definition being submitted.
- This is an **ADDITION** to an existing term and definition(s).
- This is a **CHANGE** to an existing definition.

Term	Definition

If space not adequate, use reverse side or attach additional sheet(s).

Artwork: Not Applicable Required To be supplied

Included: Electronic File Name: _____

Document(s) to which this term applies: _____

Committees affected by this term: _____

Office Use		Committee 2-30
IPC Office	Date Received: _____	Date of Initial Review: _____
Comments Collated: _____	Comment Resolution: _____	
Returned for Action: _____	Committee Action: <input type="checkbox"/> Accepted <input type="checkbox"/> Rejected	
Revision Inclusion: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Accept Modify	
IEC Classification		
Classification Code • Serial Number		
Terms and Definition Committee Final Approval Authorization:		
Committee 2-30 has approved the above term for release in the next revision.		
Name: _____	Committee: IPC 2-30	Date: _____

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

Put IPC MEMBERSHIP to WORK for your COMPANY

A trusted leader for more than 50 years, IPC is the premier source for industry standards, training, market research and public policy advocacy — supporting the needs of the estimated \$1.7 trillion global electronics industry.

For less than \$3.00 a day, IPC members enjoy unlimited access to the tools, information and forums needed to thrive in an ever-changing electronic interconnect industry.

"I have a responsibility to my customers and my shareholders. Between the savings on standards, training materials, APEX and industry data, IPC membership provides immediate 100% return on investment for us. It would be irresponsible not to be a member."

Joseph F. O'Neil
President
Hunter Technology Corp

Keep on top of industry developments ... and how they will affect your company

- Enjoy 24/7 privileges to FREE members-only online resources, including a searchable archive of original articles and presentations on the latest technical issues and industry/market trends.
- Receive FREE exclusive statistical reports available for the EMS, PCB, laminate, process consumables, solder and assembly equipment industries.
- IPC events, including IPC APEX EXPO™, technical conferences, workshops, training and certification programs and executive management summits provide unparalleled educational and networking opportunities.
- Stay abreast of global environmental directives, legislation and regulations, and how these specifically impact each segment of our industry's supply chain.

Save enough money to easily pay for your membership

- Get discounts of up to 50 percent on IPC standards, publications and training materials.
- Save money on online subscription licenses of IPC standards through the world's largest standards reseller — IHS.
- Enjoy dramatic discounts on registration fees for meetings, technical conferences, workshops and tutorials.
- Benefit from preferred pricing on exhibit space at IPC trade shows and events.

"Being a part of the fast-changing global electronics marketplace requires constant intelligence about market trends, standards and solutions to the challenges throughout the supply chain. IPC is an invaluable partner in providing that intelligence through conferences, white papers and technical standards."

Andy Hyatt
Executive Vice President
Business Development
Creation Technologies

Increase your knowledge and train your people

- IPC workshops and international conferences provide an exchange of technical information that is unequalled.
- IPC's training and certification programs offer a cost-effective, industry-recognized way to demonstrate your commitment to quality.
- Facilitate your staff's continuous learning through IPC's award-winning CD- and DVD-based training materials.

Expand your network and build your visibility

- Network with your peers through IPC committees, PCB/EMS management councils and IPC events.
- Participate in problem-solving exchanges through IPC's technical e-forums.
- Get answers to your technical questions from IPC's technical staff.

Help shape the industry

- Participate in developing or updating the global industry standards that your company, customers, competitors and suppliers use.
- Take an active role in IPC-organized environmental and public policy activities to advocate for regulations and legislation favorable to your company and the global electronics community.

Market your business

- Use the IPC member logo to highlight your company's leadership in the industry.
- Build your brand visibility through IPC's Products and Services Index (PCB and EMS companies only), and IPC's annual trade shows and conferences, including IPC APEX EXPO.
- Gain valuable exposure by sponsoring market research conferences and executive management meetings.

Put the resources of the entire industry behind your company by joining IPC today!

To learn more about IPC membership or to apply online, visit www.ipc.org.

"Graphic PLC has enjoyed the privilege of being an IPC member for more than 30 years and the technical benefits derived to focus us as a world player in the manufacture of PCBs have superceded the cost of membership many times."

Rex Rozario, OBE
Chairman
Graphic Plc.,UK

"Juki gets tremendous value from our IPC membership ... we get quarterly market data which would cost us thousands of dollars if we commissioned it on our own. The industry standards generated by IPC committees allow us to design our equipment with certainty that it will meet industry requirements. The returns for our company are so great, they are beyond calculable."

Bob Black
President and CEO
Juki Automation Systems Inc.

IPC — Association Connecting Electronics Industries® Headquarters
3000 Lakeside Drive, Suite 309 S, Bannockburn, IL 60015
www.ipc.org
+1 847-615-7100 tel
+1 847-615-7105 fax

Visit www.IPC.org/offices for the locations of IPC offices worldwide.



Application for Site Membership

Thank you for your decision to join IPC. Membership is **site specific**, which means that IPC member benefits are available to all individuals employed at the site designated on this application.

To best serve your specific needs, please indicate the most appropriate member category for your facility.
(Check one box only.)

Printed Circuit Board Manufacturer

Facility manufactures and sells printed circuit boards (PCBs) or other electronic interconnection products to other companies. What products do you make for sale? (check all that apply)

- One and two-sided rigid, multilayer printed boards Flexible printed boards Other interconnections
 Printed electronics
-

Electronics Manufacturing Services (EMS) Company

Facility manufactures printed circuit assemblies, on a contract basis, and may offer other electronic interconnection products for sale.

OEM — Original Equipment Manufacturer

Facility purchases, uses and/or manufactures printed circuit boards or other interconnection products for use in a final product, which we manufacture and sell.

What is your company's primary product line? _____

Industry Supplier

Facility supplies raw materials, equipment or services used in the manufacture or assembly of electronic products.

Which industry segment(s) do you supply? PCB EMS Both Printed electronics

What products do you supply? _____

Government, Academia, Nonprofit

Organization is a government agency, university, college or technical or nonprofit institution which is directly concerned with design, research and utilization of electronic interconnection devices.

Consulting Firm

What services does the firm provide? _____



Application for Site Membership

Site Information

Company Name			
Street Address			
City	State	Zip/Postal Code	Country
Main Switchboard Phone No.	Main Fax		
Company E-mail address	Website URL		
Name of Primary Contact			
Title	Mail Stop		

Payment Information (Purchase orders not accepted as a form of payment)

Membership Dues

Membership will begin the day the application and dues payment are received, and will continue for one or two years based on the choice indicated below. All fees are quoted in U.S. dollars.

Please check one:

Primary facility: <input type="checkbox"/> One year \$1,050.00 <input type="checkbox"/> Two years \$1,890.00 (SAVE 10%)	Government agency, academic institution, nonprofit organization <input type="checkbox"/> One year \$275.00 <input type="checkbox"/> Two years \$495.00 (SAVE 10%)
Additional facility: Membership for a facility of an organization that already has a different location with a primary facility membership <input type="checkbox"/> One year \$850.00 <input type="checkbox"/> Two years \$1,530.00 (SAVE 10%)	Consulting firm (employing less than 6 individuals) <input type="checkbox"/> One year \$625.00 <input type="checkbox"/> Two years \$1,125.00 (SAVE 10%)
Company with an annual revenue of less than \$5,000,000 <input type="checkbox"/> One year \$625.00 <input type="checkbox"/> Two years \$1,125.00 (SAVE 10%)	

Enclosed is a check for \$

Bill credit card: (check one)

MasterCard

American Express

Visa

Diners Club

Card No.

Expiration Date

Security Code

Authorized Signature

Mail application with check or money order to:

IPC
3491 Eagle Way
Chicago, IL 60678-1349

***Fax/Mail application with credit card payment to:**

3000 Lakeside Drive, Suite 309 S
Bannockburn, IL 60015
Tel: +1 847-615-7100
Fax: +1 847-615-7105
www.ipc.org

Please attach business card
of primary contact here

**Overnight deliveries to this address only.*
Contact membership@ipc.org for wire transfer details



Standard Improvement Form

IPC-2581B

The purpose of this form is to provide the Technical Committee of IPC with input from the industry regarding usage of the subject standard.

Individuals or companies are invited to submit comments to IPC. All comments will be collected and dispersed to the appropriate committee(s).

If you can provide input, please complete this form and return to:

IPC
3000 Lakeside Drive, Suite 309S
Bannockburn, IL 60015-1249
Fax: 847 615.7105
E-mail: answers@ipc.org
www.ipc.org/standards-comment

1. I recommend changes to the following:

Requirement, paragraph number _____

Test Method number _____, paragraph number _____

The referenced paragraph number has proven to be:

Unclear Too Rigid In Error

Other _____

2. Recommendations for correction:

3. Other suggestions for document improvement:

Submitted by:

Name

Telephone

Company

E-mail

Address

City/State/Zip

Date



Association Connecting Electronics Industries



3000 Lakeside Drive, Suite 309 S

Bannockburn, IL 60015

847-615-7100 **tel**

847-615-7105 **fax**

www.ipc.org

ISBN #978-1-61193-111-2